



Web: https://ucaas.sgSupport: https://support.oco.toTel: +65 6804 9700

Powered by Yeastar

# Contents

About This Guide	1
Getting Started	2
Activate Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition	2
Initial Setup Using the Installation Wizard	3
Log in to PBX Web Portal	6
Change the Password of Super Administrator	9
Reset the Password of Super Administrator	10
Set up Company Information	
View System Information	12
Change Web Interface Language	13
Log out of PBX web portal	13
Dashboard	14
Dashboard Overview	14
Extension	18
Extension Overview	
Create Extensions	18
Create a SIP Extension	18
Bulk Create SIP Extensions	20
Set up Phones	22
Set up a SIP Phone	22
Extension Presence	23
Extension Presence Overview	23
Presence Settings	24
Manually Switch Extension Presence	27
Automatically Switch Extension Presence Based on Time	
Monitor Extension Status by BLF Key	29
Forward Incoming Calls to Another Destination	
Ring Office Phone and Mobile Phone Simultaneously	33
Extension Voicemail	34
Set up Extension Voicemail	

	Extension Features	36
	Handle Incoming Calls Based on Caller ID	36
	Set up Email Notifications for User Password Change	
	Allow Multiple Registrations for One Extension Number	37
	Set up Third-party Integration for Call Popup	39
	Extension Advanced Settings	41
	Advanced Settings of SIP Extension	41
	Extension Security	42
	Extension Security Overview	42
	Restrict Outbound Calls for an Extension	43
	Restrict Extension Registration Based on User Agent	44
	Restrict Extension Registration Based on IP Address	45
	Block Outbound Calls Outside Business Hours	
	Limit Call Duration of an Outbound Call	46
	Limit Outbound Call Frequency of an Extension	47
	Manage Extensions	48
	Edit Extensions	48
	Reset an Extension's User Password	49
	Export and Import SIP Extensions	
	Delete Extensions	50
	Extension Visibility Permission	50
	Set up Extension Visibility	50
	Manage Extension Visibility Rules	52
Con	itacts	53
	Contacts Overview	53
	Manage Company Contacts	54
	Manage Company Phonebooks	56
	Export and Import Company Contacts	57
	Identify Callers from Contacts	58
	Allow Users to Query Contacts on IP Phones	60
	Contact Visibility Permission	63
	Set up Contact Visibility	63
	Manage Contact Visibility Rules	64

LDAP Server	65
LDAP Server Overview	65
Set up Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition as an LDAP Server	67
Set up LDAP Client	69
Auto Provision LDAP for IP Phones	69
Manual Configuration Examples	72
Organization	78
Organization Overview	78
Enable or Disable Organization Management	80
Set up Organizations	81
Add Users to Organizations	83
Manage Users within Organizations	85
Manage Organizations	
Export and Import Organizations	
Extension Group	91
Extension Group Overview	91
Create an Extension Group	92
Manage Extension Groups	93
Assign a User Type to a Group Member	94
View or Change a Member's User Type in Multiple Groups	95
View or Change Permissions for Group Members	97
Auto Provisioning	99
Auto Provisioning Overview	99
Provision IP Phones	
Auto Provision IP Phones	100
Provision IP Phones on Multiple Servers	103
Manually Provision IP Phones	
Manage Provisioned Devices	107
Reboot Provisioned IP Phones	
Reassign an Extension to a Provisioned IP Phone	108
Release an Extension from a Provisioned IP Phone	
Remove IP Phones from Provisioning List	
Auto Provisioning Options	109

IP Phone Auto Provisioning Options	109
Auto Provision Function Keys for Phones	110
Modify a Provisioned Phone Settings	113
Manage Auto Provisioning Templates	113
Apply a New Template to a Provisioned IP Phone	113
View a Default Auto Provisioning Template	114
Update a Default Auto Provisioning Template	116
Create a Custom Auto Provisioning Template	117
Manage Custom Auto Provisioning Templates	119
Manage IP Phone Firmware	120
Update Phone Firmware via Auto Provisioning	120
Manage Device Firmware Files	121
Auto Provisioning - Supported Devices	122
Auto Provisioning - Variables in Templates	129
User Role	136
User Roles and Permissions	
Create a User Role	
Assign a Role to a User	138
Manage User Roles	139
User Role Permissions	140
Linkus Server	145
Linkus Overview	145
Enable Linkus Clients for Users	146
Configure Linkus Welcome Email	147
Send Linkus Welcome Emails	148
Enable or Disable Push Notifications for Linkus Mobile Client	
Operator Panel	
Manage Operator Panel	150
Trunk	
SIP Trunk	152
SIP Trunk Overview	152
Create a SIP Trunk	154
Manage SIP Trunks	

Export and Import SIP Trunks	161
SIP Trunk Settings	
Seize a Trunk to Call Out by BLF Key	171
Call Control	173
Emergency Calling	173
Emergency Calling Overview	173
Set up Basic Emergency Calling	175
Set up Enhanced Emergency Calling	176
Set up a Route for PSAP Callbacks	177
Manage Emergency Numbers	178
Export and Import Emergency Numbers	178
Emergency Notification Contacts	179
Business Hours and Holidays	
Overview of Business Hours and Holidays	182
Global Business Hours	183
Holidays	
Time Condition	
Time Condition Overview	
Allow Users to Override Time Condition by Feature Code	190
Allow Users to Override Time Condition on Operator Panel	191
Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls	193
Monitor Time Condition Status	197
Automatic Reset of Time Condition	203
Enable or Disable Automatic Reset of Time Condition	205
Inbound Route	207
Inbound Route Overview	207
Set up an Inbound Route	209
Time Based Inbound Routes	210
Caller ID/DID Based Inbound Routes	
Manage Inbound Routes	231
Export and Import Inbound Routes	
DID Pattern and Caller ID Pattern	233
Outbound Route	234

	Outbound Route Overview	234
	Set up an Outbound Route	235
	Restrict Outbound Calls by PIN Codes	237
	Manage Outbound Routes	238
	Export and Import Outbound Routes	239
	Outbound Dial Pattern	240
	Dial Pattern Examples	243
	AutoCLIP Route	244
	AutoCLIP Route Overview	244
	Route Inbound Calls to Original Extensions via AutoCLIP Route	245
	Delete AutoCLIP Records	247
	DID Number	
	DID Number Overview	
	Configure DID Numbers on a Trunk	249
	Export and Import Trunk DIDs/DDIs Numbers	250
	Caller ID	251
	Caller ID Overview	251
	Reformat Inbound Caller ID based on a Trunk	252
	Export and Import Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rules	
	Customize Outbound Caller IDs	254
	Export and Import Trunk Outbound Caller IDs	256
	Distinctive Ringtone	257
	Distinctive Ringtone Overview	257
	Set Distinctive Ringtones for Internal Calls	258
	Set Distinctive Ringtones for External Calls	
	Set Distinctive Ringtones for Queue Calls	261
	Set Distinctive Ringtones for Ring Group Calls	
	Set Distinctive Ringtones for IVR Calls	265
	Distinctive Caller ID Name	267
	Distinctive Caller ID Name Overview	267
	Enable or Disable Distinctive Caller ID Name	269
Call	Center	271
	Call Center Overview	271

Call Center Setup	272
Set up Queue Managers	272
Customize Queue Notification	272
Grant Queue Panel Permissions	273
Set up Service Level Agreement (SLA)	274
Call Center Report	
Call Center Reports Overview	275
Queue Performance reports	275
Agent Performance Report	
Call Features	286
Voicemail	286
Voicemail Overview	
Group Voicemail	288
Send and Receive Voicemail Messages	
Manage Voicemail Messages	295
Voicemail Security	
Voicemail Greetings	303
Voicemail Notifications	
Custom Voicemail Experience	312
Global Voicemail Settings	314
Voicemail Menu Options	315
Voicemail Capacity and Limitations	317
IVR	318
Interactive Voice Response (IVR) Overview	318
Set up an IVR	
Set up IVR Prompts	321
Allow Callers to Dial Extensions via IVR	
Allow Callers to Dial by Name via IVR	
Allow Callers to Dial Outbound Calls via IVR	327
Allow Callers to Change IVR Prompt Remotely	327
Forward Incoming Calls to an External Number via IVR	329
IVR Configuration Example	
Call Recording	333

	Call Recording Overview	333
	Set up Call Recording	335
	Set up Recording Prompts	336
	Allow Users to Switch Call Recording Status	337
	Monitor Call Recording Status on an IP phone	338
	Manage Call Recording Files	339
	Grant Manage Permission of Recording Files	341
	Restrict Users from Viewing Recording Files	341
Ring	g Group	342
	Ring Group Overview	342
	Create a Ring Group	343
	Manage Ring Groups	344
Call	Queue	344
	Call Queue Overview	344
	Create a Queue	346
	Manage Agent Status by Dialing a Feature Code	348
	Monitor and Switch Agent Status on an IP Phone	349
	Manage Call Queues	351
	Queue Preferences	352
Fea	ture Code	355
	Configure Feature Codes	355
	Feature Code Reference	356
Con	ıference	360
	Conference Overview	
	Create a Conference Room	360
	Join a Conference Call	361
	Invite Users to a Conference Call	
	Manage Conference Rooms	362
	Conference Voice Menu	363
Spe	ed Dial	363
	Speed Dial Overview	363
	Set up Speed Dial Prefix	364
	Add a Speed Dial Number	364

	Manage Speed Dial Numbers	365
	Export and Import Speed Dial Numbers	365
Call	Transfer	366
	Call Transfer Overview	366
	Set up Call Transfer	367
	Perform an Attended Transfer	368
	Perform a Blind Transfer	368
Call	Flip	369
	Call Flip Overview	369
	Enable or Disable 'Call Flip' Feature Code	370
	Flip an Active Call by Dialing a Feature Code	371
Call	Pickup	372
	Call Pickup Overview	372
	Pick up a Call for a Group Member	373
	Pick up a Call for a Specific Extension	374
Call	Parking	375
	Call Parking Overview	375
	Directed Call Parking	376
	Call Parking	377
	Set up Parking Timeout Destination	378
	Set up Parking Number	378
	Monitor a Parking Number on an IP Phone	379
Call	Monitoring	380
	Call Monitoring Overview	380
	Allow Users to Monitor a Call by Dialing a Feature Code	383
	Disallow Users to be Monitored by Others	384
Fax		385
	Fax Overview	385
	Receive Faxes by Email	386
	Set up Fax over IP (FoIP)	387
Pag	ing/Intercom	388
	Overview of Paging and Intercom	388
	Paging/Intercom Group	390

Scheduled Paging/Intercom Call	397
PIN List	398
Add a PIN List	
Blocked/Allowed Numbers	
Block Calls To or From a Phone Number	
Export and Import Blocked Numbers	401
Manage Blocked Numbers	402
Allow Calls To or From a Phone Number	403
Export and Import Allowed Numbers	405
Manage Allowed Numbers	406
PBX System	407
System Preferences	407
Voice Prompt	409
Voice Prompt Overview	409
System Prompt	411
Music on Hold	412
Custom Prompt	417
Convert Audio Files	419
Audio Files Requirements	
SIP Settings	423
Jitter Buffer	
Jitter Buffer Overview	428
Configure Jitter Buffer	429
Date and Time	430
Change System Time Manually	430
Email Server	431
Email Server Overview	431
Set up Default SMTP Server as an Email Server	432
Set up Gmail as an Email Server	432
Set up Outlook as an Email Server	435
Customize Email Templates	437
Email Sent Logs	437
Storage	438

Auto Cleanup Settings	438
Event Notification	
Event Notification Overview	442
Configure Event Notifications	447
Manage Notification Contacts	448
Manage Event Logs	449
Security	451
Security Overview	451
Allowed IPs	
Add an Allowed IP Address	452
Manage Allowed IP Addresses	452
Blocked IPs	453
Manage Blocked IP Addresses	453
Outbound Call Frequency Restriciton	
Add an 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rule	454
Manage 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rules	
Export and Import 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rules	455
Console/SSH Access	
Access the System via SSH	456
Allowed Country IPs	458
Restrict Specific Countries or Regions from Accessing Yeastar P-Series tion	
Check Allowed Country/Region IP	460
Allowed Country Codes	461
Restrict International Calls to Specific Countries or Regions	461
Block Outbound International Calls	463
Passwordless Login	
Allow Passwordless Login to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition	464
Disallow Passwordless Login to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition	465
Maintenance	
Upgrade	
Check for Available Firmware Updates	467
Backup and Restore	

Overview of Backup and Restore	
Create an On-Demand Backup	469
Set up an Automatic Backup Schedule	470
Restore Your System from a Backup	471
Reboot	471
Reboot Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition on Web Interface	471
Reset	472
Reset the System on Web Interface	472
Operation Logs	474
Operation Logs Overview	
Manage Operation Logs	475
Troubleshooting	
Capture Network Packet	476
Use IP Ping Tool to Diagnose Network Issues	476
Use Traceroute Tool to Diagnose Network Issues	478
System Logs	481
System Logs Overview	
Configure Log Level	481
Manage System Logs	
CDR and Reports	
CDR	
Call Detail Record (CDR) Overview	483
Manage CDR	484
Call Report	486
Call Reports Overview	486
Call Reports	
Scheduled Reports	
Call Accounting	
Call Accounting Overview	498
Call Rate	
Add a Call Rate Rule	499
Manage Call Rate Rules	501
Export and Import Call Rate Rules	502

Call Accounting Report	503
Extension Call Accounting Report	
Extension Call Accounting Details Report	505
Integration	507
Speech to Text (STT)	
Speech to Text (STT) Overview	
Integrate with Speech to Text (STT) API	508
Disconnect Speech to Text (STT) API Integration	514
Asterisk Manager Interface (AMI) Overview	514
Database Grant	515
Database Grant Overview	515
Get CDR Data from Database of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition	516
cdr Table in the PBX Database	519
Refereneces	
Import and Export Parameters Overview	522
Extension Parameters	
Organization Parameters	
Contacts Parameters	536
Speed Dial Number Parameters	537
Emergency Number Parameters	
Trunk Parameters	
Trunk DIDs/DDIs Parameters	548
Trunk Outbound Caller ID Parameters	549
Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rule Parameters	551
Inbound Route Parameters	551
Outbound Route Parameters	557
Outbound Call Frequency Restriction Rule Parameters	560
Rate Parameters	561
Allowed Numbers Parameters	562
Blocked Numbers Parameters	563

# About This Guide

In this guide, we describe every detail on the functionality and configuration of the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

# Audience

This guide is for administrators who need to prepare for, configure, and operate the PBX system. We begin by assuming that you are familiar with networking and other IT disciplines.

# **Getting Started**

# Activate Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

Before starting to use the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, you need to activate the PBX first. The activation credentials and PBX login URL are provided in the welcome email of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## Prerequisites

You have received the welcome email of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## Procedure

1. In the welcome email, click the PBX Activation URL to enter the PBX activation page.

Step 1: Activate Your PBX System
Please login to your PBX and use the activation code & activation URL listed below to activate your PBX and create a super administration account! Please
• PBX Login URL: https:// .yeastarcloud.com
PBX Activation Code: BWtGrDg9
PBX Activation URL:
https:// .yeastarcloud.com/activation?
code = 5G9YEzXzkhfPsDEOGNYIMfHIVSDaVRtXRcWKgUEhx6D2eoIJFGTr
U2n07qBtGK9u

2. In the Activation Code field, enter the PBX activation code provided in the welcome mail.

Note: The PBX activation code can only be used once.

<b>†</b> Yeastar	English v
	Activation Please enter the PBX activation code below. <u>Activation Code</u>
	Copyright © 2006-2021 Yeastar Information Technology Co., Ltd.

3. Click Confirm.

## Result

You are redirected to the Installation Wizard. For more information, see <u>Initial Setup Using</u> the Installation Wizard.

### lmportant:

Only when you finish the system initial configurations can the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition be activated successfully.

# Initial Setup Using the Installation Wizard

When you access the PBX web portal for the first time, you need to finish initial configurations for the system using the Installation Wizard.

## Prerequisites

You have accessed the PBX web portal and entered the Installation Wizard.

For more information about how to access the PBX web interface, see <u>Log in to PBX Web</u> <u>Portal</u>.

### 🔥 Warning:

The Installation Wizard only appears when you first configure the system with factory settings.

## Procedure

- Step1. Set up super administrator account
- Step2. Configure the system time
- Step3. Localize and customize the system
- <u>Step4. Check and confirm the configurations</u>

### Step1. Set up super administrator account

1. In the Basic section, enter the information of the super administrator account.

#### - Note:

- Do NOT forget the username and password of the super administrator account, or you need to reset your system to reconfigure the account and log in to the PBX.
- The super administrator has access to all features on the system, and the super administrator can assign administrator role to users. For more information, see <u>User Roles and Permissions</u>.
- Username: Specify the username that is used to log in to PBX web portal.
- Password: Specify the password that is used to log in to PBX web portal.
- Repeat the password: Repeat the password to confirm.
- Email Address: Enter the email address of the super administrator.

The email address can be used to receive system notifications, reset web login password, and log in to the administrator portal.

- Mobile Number: Enter the mobile number that can be used to receive system notifications.
- Prefix: Optional. Enter the prefix according to the dial pattern of the outbound route, so that the system can successfully send calls to the mobile number.

For more information of the prefix setting, see <u>Prefix and Dial Pattern</u>.

- In the Event Notifications section, configure event notifications for the super administrator.
  - Send Event Notification to PBX Administrator: Decide whether to enable notifications for the super administrator or not.
  - Contact Name: Enter the name of the super administrator.

### - Note:

This name helps you identify the super administrator from the Notification Contacts list.

- Notification Level: System notifications are divided into different levels according to importance. You can select notification levels to filter and receive the relevant notifications.
- Notification Method: Select method(s) to receive notifications.

For more information of event notifications, see **Event Notification Overview**.

3. Click Next.

Step2. Configure the system time

- 1. In the Date and Time section, configure the time zone and daylight saving time.
- 2. In the Display Format section, select the display format for date and time.
- 3. Click Next.

# Step3. Localize and customize the system

1. In the System Prompt Language section, select the radio button beside a system prompt to set it as the default system prompt.



Click Download Online Prompts to download more prompts.

- 2. In the Other Settingssection, adjust the following settings for your local installation.
  - Notification Email Language: Select which language of email contents to be received.
  - Device Name: Specify a name for the PBX system.
  - Name Display Format: Select the display format for Extension User's Name and Contact Name.
  - Tone Region: Select your country/region or the nearest neighboring country/region to enable the default dial tone, busy tone, ring tone for your region.
  - Enable Allowed Country/Region Code Dialing Protection: To restrict users from making international calls, enable this option. When enabled, users can not make international calls to any countries or regions.

## - Note:

To allow users to make international calls to specific countries or regions, you need to grant permission to desired users, and set the allowed countries or regions. For more information, see <u>Restrict International Calls to Specific Countries</u> tries or Regions.

 International Dialing Code: Enter the prefix of international call according to your country.

When a user tries to call a number starting with the prefix, the PBX's outbound route will identify this call as an international call.

3. Click Next to see the summary.

# Step4. Check and confirm the configurations

- 1. Check the all the configured settings on the Summary page.
- 2. To edit the configurations of a specific step, click  $\checkmark$  beside the step title.
- 3. To edit the configurations of the previous step, click Re-configure.

4. If all the configurations are confirmed, click Reboot to take effect.

### Result

All the configurations take effect after the system reboots.

You need to access the domain name of the PBX and log in to PBX web portal by the super administrator username and password.

# Log in to PBX Web Portal

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides two different web portals for users with different roles to quickly set up and manage the system. This topic describes the difference between them, and introduces how to log in to the PBX web portal.

## Web portals overview

	Та	b	le	1		
--	----	---	----	---	--	--

Web portal	Description
Administrator portal	Dedicated web portal for super administrator.
	Super administrator has the highest privileges. Once logged in, the super administrator can ac- cess and manage all the PBX system features, in- cluding creating extension accounts for users and granting privileges to the created user accounts.
	Login address: PBX domain name/admin.
	For more information, see <u>Log in to administrator</u> <u>portal</u> .
Management portal	The web portal for users with administrative privileges.
	Users who have a specific role assigned by the super administrator can log in through this por- tal. Once logged in, users can only access and manage the specific PBX system features that are granted to their roles.
	Login address: PBX domain name.
	For more information, see <u>Log in to management</u> <u>portal</u> .

## Log in to administrator portal

### Prerequisite

An operation and maintenance terminal (a PC) is available. The PC must meet the following requirements:

• Have a web browser installed. The following table shows the compatible browsers.

Table 2.

Web Browser	Version
Google Chrome (recommended)	Chrome 87 or later
Microsoft Edge	Edge 87 or later
Opera	Opera 72 or later

• Support the resolution of 1366 x 768 or higher.

### Procedure

- 1. Open the web browser, enter the domain name in the address bar, followed by a forward slash and the word "admin", i.e. PBX domain name/ admin, and press Enter.
- 2. Enter the credentials of super administrator account, and click LOG IN.
  - Username: The username or email address of super administrator account that you have configured in the Installation Wizard.
  - Password: The password of the super administrator account.

English V
Loginan .
P-Series Cloud Edition
Welcome to the Administrator Portal
Q Username
A Password Ø
Forgot Password?
LOG IN
Copyright © 2006-2022 Yeastar Information Technology Co., Ltd.

Log in to management portal

Prerequisite

An operation and maintenance terminal (a PC) is available. The PC must meet the following requirements:

• Have a web browser installed. The following table shows the compatible browsers.

Web Browser	Version
Google Chrome (recommended)	Chrome 87 or later
Microsoft Edge	Edge 87 or later
Opera	Opera 72 or later

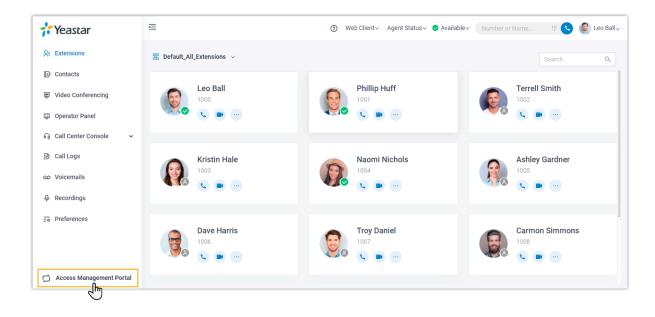
• Support the resolution of 1366 x 768 or higher.

Procedure

- 1. Open a web browser, enter the domain name of your PBX in the address bar, and press Enter.
- 2. Enter the credential of the user account, click LOG IN.
  - Username: The email address of the user account.
  - Password: The password of the user account.



3. In the bottom left corner, click Access Management Portal.

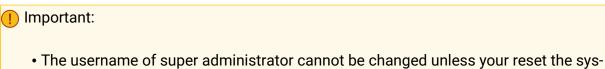


# Change the Password of Super Administrator

If you know the current password of super administrator, you can log in to the PBX administrator portal and follow the steps to change the super administrator's password.

## **Background information**

The username and password of super administrator are configured in Installation Wizard.



- tem. • If you forget the password of super administrator, you can reset the password. For
- If you forget the password of super administrator, you can reset the password. Fo more information, see <u>Reset the Password of Super Administrator</u>.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX administrator portal.
- 2. At the top-right corner of the web page, click  $^{\circ}$  and select Change Password.
- 3. On the pop-up window, enter the old password and new password.
- 4. Click Save.

## Result

The password is reset, you will be logged out of the web page automatically. To log in to PBX administrator portal, enter the new password.

# Reset the Password of Super Administrator

As a super administrator, you can reset your web login password if you forget the password.

### Prerequisites

• You need to provide both username and email address, or you cannot reset your password.

Important: If you forget the username of super administrator, you need to reset the system to reconfigure a new username.

## Procedure

1. Access the PBX web login page, click Forgot Password? to enter the Forget Password page.

* Yeastar	Administrator English V	
	P-Series Cloud Edition Welcome to the Administrator Portal	
	Password Ø	
	LOG IN	
	Copyright © 2006-2022 Yeastar Information Technology Co., Ltd.	

- 2. On the Forget Password page, enter the following information:
  - Username: The username of super administrator.
  - Email Address: The email address that is associated with the super administrator.

<b>†</b> Yeastar	English V
	Forget Password Hease enter the username and the email address associated with the extension. When done, follow the reset instruction sent to the email address.
	Email Address  Cancel Send
	Copyright © 2006-2021 Yeastar Information Technology Co., Ltd.

3. Click Send.

A password reset email is sent to super administrator's email address.

4. Check the password reset email, and click the link provided in the email to enter the Reset Password page.



This link is valid for 30 minutes and can only be used once.

5. On the Reset Password page, enter your new password twice, and click Save.

## Result

The password of super administrator is changed. You need to log in to PBX administrator portal by the new password next time.

# Set up Company Information

Company information contains basic information about your company, including company name, company phone number, and company address. This topic describes how to set up company information.

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal.
- 2. At the top-right corner of the web page, click  $\bigotimes$  and select Company Information.
- 3. In the pop-up window, do as follows:

Company Name		
Yeastar		
Company Phone		
+86-592-5503301		
Company Address		
Building C09, Softw	ware Park Phase III, Xiamen 361024, Fujian, Chi	na

a. Configure the name, the phone number, and the address of your company as needed.

- Note:

If you enable Organization Management feature on the system, the Company Name is required and will be used as the root organization name. For more information, see <u>Enable or Disable Organization Management</u>.

b. Click Save.

# **View System Information**

This topic describes how to view a summary of information about your system firmware and network.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Dashboard.
- 2. At the top-right corner of Dashboard, click Information.

·三	r\$ (	⑦ 📩 🔗 PBXadmin1∨
Dashboard		(i) Information
Active Calls	Plan	
0/10	Enterprise Plan (EP)	09/17/2021

The following information is displayed:

- Device Name
- Product Model
- Serial Number
- Firmware Version
- System Time
- Uptime
- Maximum Extensions
- Maximum Concurrent Calls

# Change Web Interface Language

The default web interface language of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is English, the interface can be easily switched to the language of your choice.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal.
- 2. At the top-right conner of the web page, click  $^{\circ}$ .
- 3. Select Language and select your desired language.

The web interface is switched to the selected language immediately.

# Log out of PBX web portal

When you're ready to quit the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, simply close the web page or follow the steps below to log out of the PBX web portal.

Procedure

- 1. At the top-right conner of the web page, click  $^{\circ}$ .
- 2. Select Log out.

# Dashboard

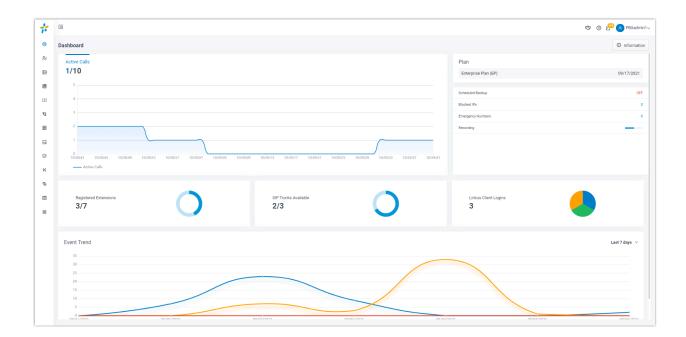
# **Dashboard Overview**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition Dashboard gives you a historical and real-time view of what is happening on the PBX. This topic describes all the widgets on the Dashboard.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition Dashboard provides widgets to help you monitor system performance in real time, and allows you to quickly access specific PBX features by simple click on headings.

The supported widgets are as follows:

- System performance
- System information
- Plan
- System status
- Event trend
- 1. System performance
- 2. System information
- 3. <u>Plan</u>
- 4. System interface
- 5. System status
- 6. Event trend
- 1. System performance
- 2. System information
- 3. <u>Plan</u>
- 4. System interface
- 5. System status
- 6. Event trend

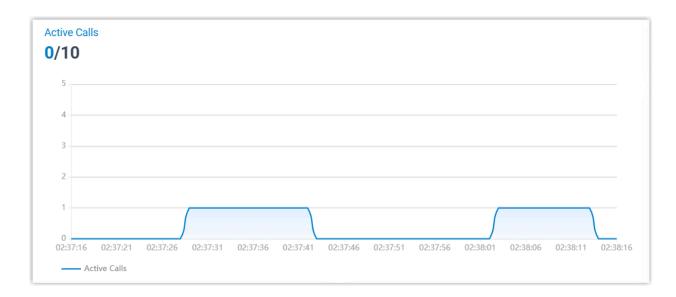


- 1. System performance
- 2. System information
- 3. <u>Plan</u>
- 4. System status
- 5. System status
- 6. Event trend

# System performance

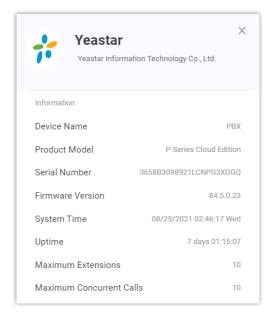
System performance displays the following information:

• Active Calls: The real-time and the supported concurrent calls.



# System information

Click Information at the top-right corner. System information displays the PBX's basic information.



# Plan

Plan displays your subscribed plan and expiration date.

Enterprise Plan (EP)	09/17/2021

## System status

System status displays the following information:

- Registered Extensions: The number of registered extensions and created extensions.
- SIP Trunks Available: The number of available trunks and created trunks.
- Linkus Client Logins: The number of Linkus clients where users has logged.



- Scheduled Backup: Whether scheduled backup feature is enabled or not. If enabled, the system displays the last time when a backup file was created.
- Blocked IPs: Display the following information:

• The number of IP address and account that were blocked by the PBX.

• The last time when an IP address or an account was blocked by the PBX.

- Emergency Numbers: The number of created emergency numbers.
- Recording: How much storage space for recording has been used.

Scheduled Backup	OFF
Blocked IPs	0
Emergency Numbers	0
Recording	

# Event trend

Event trend provides historical and real-time view of system events. You can track frequency of events that were triggered during the last 7 days, 15 days, or 30 days.



# Extension

# **Extension Overview**

An extension is a short internal number. Extensions allow users to make and receive calls. You can assign extensions to every employee in your organization.

# Extension types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports SIP extension, which is based on SIP protocol.

To use a SIP extension to make or receive calls, you need to register the extension on an IP phone or a softphone.

For more information, see Create a SIP Extension and Set up a SIP Phone.

## **Online status**

Online status allows you to view status of phone endpoints and Linkus clients.

Phone endpoints

• 🔲 indicates that the SIP extension is registered and ready for use.

Hover your mouse over To view the IP addresses of SIP phones where the extension is registered.

## Linkus clients

 $\circ$   $\Box$  indicates that Linkus Desktop Client is ready for use.

• indicates that Linkus Mobile Client is ready for use.

• 📇 indicates that Linkus Web Client is ready for use.

# **Create Extensions**

# Create a SIP Extension

This topic describes how to create a SIP extension and configure relevant settings.

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, click Add and select Add.
- 2. In the User Information section, configure user information as follows:

- First Name: Enter the user's first name.
- Last Name: Enter the user's last name.
- Email Address: Enter the user's email address. The user can log in to PBX web portal and Linkus clients, receive voicemail messages and PBX notifications via the email address.

#### 🚽 Note:

An email address is exclusive to a user.

- Mobile Number: Enter the user's mobile number. The user can receive calls or PBX notifications on this mobile number.
- User Password: Enter a user password. The user can use the password to log in to Linkus clients.

### - Note:

The password is randomly generated by default. To change user password, a minimum of 10 characters with number, upper case, and lower case are required.

• User Role: Assign a role to the user to determine whether the user can manage specific PBX features.

The default value is None, which means that the user can not manage specific PBX features.

#### Note:

The system has default user roles with <u>pre-configured permissions</u>. You can also <u>Create a User Role</u>.

• Organization: Select one or more organizations to which the extension belongs.

#### Pote:

This option is available only when you enable the Organization Management feature.

• Job Title: Enter a job title for the user, which will be displayed on Linkus clients.

- 3. In the Extension Information section, configure extension information as follows:
  - Extension Number: Enter an extension number.
  - Caller ID: Enter a caller ID number. The caller ID will be displayed on the callee's device.
  - Registration Name: Enter a name that is used to register the SIP extension. The default registration name is randomly generated.
  - Registration Password: Enter a password that is used to register the SIP extension. The default registration password is randomly generated.

#### Note:

For security reasons, we recommend that you set a strong password.

• IP Phone Concurrent Registrations: Select a value from the drop-down list.

This option defines how many SIP endpoints are allowed to register with the extension.

## Note:

- The maximum number of concurrent registration is 3.
- Concurrent Registration setting only limits the registration number of non-Linkus SIP endpoints. The registration number of Linkus clients is not counted.
- 4. Optional: Click other tabs to configure other settings according to your needs.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

The SIP extension is created.

### What to do next

• To set up a SIP phone, see <u>Set up a SIP Phone</u>.

# Bulk Create SIP Extensions

This topic describes how to bulk create SIP extensions.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, click Add and select Bulk Add.
- 2. Configure basic settings for the extensions as follows.

a. In the User Information section, configure user information as follows:

• Start Extension Number: Enter the start extension number.

The system will bulk create extensions starting with the extension number.

• Create Number: Enter the number of extensions that will be created.

### 🚽 Note:

Only an integer ranging from 1 to 999 is allowed.

• User Role: Assign a role to the extensions to determine whether these users can manage specific PBX features.

The default value is None, which means that these users can not manage specific PBX features.

## PNote:

The system has default user roles with <u>pre-configured permissions</u>. You can also <u>Create a User Role</u>.

• Organization: Select one or more organizations to which the extensions belong.

### - Note:

This option is available only when you enable the Organization Management feature.

- Job Title: Enter a job title for the extensions, which will be displayed on Linkus clients.
- b. In the Extension Information section, configure extension registration information as follows.
  - Registration Name: Choose how to configure registration name.
    - Generate Randomly: Registration name will be randomly generated for each extension.
    - Prefix + Extension Number: If you choose the type, enter a prefix in the Name Prefix field.
    - $^{\circ}$  Extension Number + Suffix: If you choose the type, enter a suffix in the Name Suffix field.
    - Fixed Name: If you choose the type, enter a fixed name in the Fixed Name field.
    - $^\circ$  Extension Number: If you choose the type, extension number will be the registration name of each extension.
  - IP Phone Concurrent Registrations: Select a value from the drop-down list. This option defines how many SIP phones are allowed to register with each extension.

## Note:

- The maximum number of concurrent registration is 3.
- Concurrent Registration setting only limits the registration number of non-Linkus SIP endpoints. The registration number of Linkus clients is not counted.
- 3. Optional: Click other tabs to configure other settings for the extensions.
  - Presence: Configure presence settings.
  - Voicemail: Turn on Enable Voicemail, choose a password type from the dropdown list of Voicemail PIN Authentication.

# 7 Tip:

Configure voicemail notifications and play options according to your needs.

- $^{\circ}$  Generate Randomly: A PIN code will be randomly generated for each extension.
- Prefix + Extension Number: If you choose the type, enter a prefix in the PIN Prefix field.
- Extension Number + Suffix: If you choose the type, enter a suffix in the PIN Suffix field.

- Fixed Password: If you choose the type, enter a PIN code in the Fixed PIN Code field.
- $^{\circ}$  Extension Number: If you choose the type, extension number will be set to PIN code for each extension.
- Disabled: No PIN code is required when accessing voicemails.
- Features: Configure email notifications, time-conditional presence auto switch, call handling rules, call recording, etc.
- Advanced: Configure advanced settings.
- Security: Configure SIP security settings and call restriction settings.
- Linkus Clients: Enable Linkus clients for the extensions.
- Function Keys: Provision function keys.

When the extensions are bound with phones through auto provisioning, the function keys associated with the extensions will be applied to phones.

4. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

- The extensions are created.
- The registration passwords and user passwords of these extensions are generated randomly.
- The system prompts you the number of created extensions, and the associated extension numbers.

## What to do next

• To set up a SIP phone, see <u>Set up a SIP Phone</u>.

# Set up Phones

# Set up a SIP Phone

This topic describes how to register a SIP extension on a SIP phone.

## Prerequisites

• You have created a SIP extension.

## Procedure

 Gather information of extension registration. For most SIP phones, the following credentials are needed in order to register with Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

- The domain name of PBX
- SIP registration port: The default port is 5060 on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.
- Transport protocol (Path: Extension and Trunk > Extension > Advanced > Transport)
- Extension information (Path: Extension and Trunk > Extension > User):
  - $\circ$  Extension number
  - Registration name
  - Registration password
  - Caller ID name
- 2. Register the extension on a phone.

Log in to the phone's web interface, fill in and save the required items to register the SIP extension.

- 3. Confirm the extension's registration status in one of the following ways:
  - On the phone's web interface, check if the extension is registered.
  - Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, check if the endpoint icon displays in the Online Status column.

## Result

The SIP phone is ready for use. Users can use the SIP phone to make and receive calls.

# **Extension Presence**

## **Extension Presence Overview**

This topic describes what is extension presence and how presence benefits a user's work.

## What is presence

Presence indicates a user's current status. By default, anyone in your organization using Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can see if other users are available.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following status:

- Available: The user is online and ready for communication.
- Away: The user is away from desk.
- Business Trip: The user is on a business trip.
- Do Not Disturb: The user doesn't want to be disturbed, and he or she won't receive any calls.
- Lunch Break: The user is currently on lunch break.
- Off Work: The user is currently off work.

## How presence benefits a user's work

Presence is associated with the following settings. You can configure the following settings for each presence. When a user's presence changes, the following settings will change accordingly.

- Presence information: Details about current presence.
- Call forwarding: Route internal and external calls to different destinations based on extension presence.
- Ring strategy: Adjust endpoints' ring strategy based on extension presence.
- Ring timeout: Adjust endpoints' ring timeout based on extension presence except Do Not Disturb status.
- Ring the Mobile Number Simultaneously: Whether to simultaneously ring mobile phone when a call reaches the extension number.
- Accept push notifications: Whether to receive Linkus push notifications on Linkus Mobile Client, such as missed calls, voicemails, etc.
- Agent Status Auto Switch: Adjust agent status automatically if the user is in a queue.
- Voicemail greetings: Adjust voicemail greetings based on extension presence.

For more information, see <u>Presence Settings</u> and <u>Change Voicemail Greetings</u>.

## Presence switch

There are two ways to switch extension presence:

• Switch presence manually: Extension users can switch their own presence on Linkus clients or by dialing a feature code; an administrator can also switch extension presence for specific users on PBX management portal.

For more information, see <u>Switch Presence on Linkus Client</u> and <u>Manually Switch Ex-</u> tension Presence.

• Switch presence automatically: Presence is switched based on <u>Business Hours and</u> <u>Holidays</u>.

For more information, see <u>Auto Switch Presence Status based on Business Hours and</u> <u>Holidays</u>.

## **Presence Settings**

This topic describes presence settings.

## **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports to configure presence settings under each presence for all the users. When a user's presence changes, presence settings will change accordingly.

Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension in the Presence tab.

- Presence Information
- <u>Call Forwarding</u>
- <u>Ring Strategy</u>
- <u>Ring Timeout</u>
- Options

### Presence Information

Table 4.

Setting	Description
	Add a note to the current presence. The note will be displayed on Linkus clients.

## **Call Forwarding**

Call forwarding rules help forward incoming calls to a specific destination when the user is unavailable. You can set different destinations for incoming calls based on extension presence.

Table 5.

Setting	Description			
Types of incoming calls	<ul> <li>Internal Calls: Set a call forwarding rule for incoming calls from colleagues.</li> <li>External Calls: Set a call forwarding rule for incoming calls from external users.</li> </ul>			
Forwarding condition	<ul> <li>Select a forwarding condition and configure a destination.</li> <li>Always: Forward all incoming calls to the designated destination.</li> <li>No Answer: Only forward unanswered calls to the designated destination.</li> <li>When Busy: Only forward the calls that come in while the user is talking on the phone to the designated destination.</li> </ul>			

## **Ring Strategy**

Ring strategy allows you to decide in which order incoming calls are distributed to the endpoints where the user's extension is registered.

- Extension Endpoint: The IP phone or softphone to which the user's extension has logged in.
- Linkus Mobile Client

- Linkus Desktop Client (Softphone Only)
- Linkus Web Client (Web Client Mode Only)

Table 6.

Setting	Description
Ring First	Set which endpoint will ring first.
Ring Secondly	Set which endpoint will ring secondly.

## **Ring Timeout**

To prevent callers from waiting for a long time, you can configure ring timeout. If the call is not answered during the time period, it will be routed to the destination of No Answer.

Table 7.

Setting	Description
Ring Timeout	Enter a value or select a value from the drop-down list.
	Note: The valid range is from 5 to 300.

## Options

Ring the Mobile Number Simultaneously

To simultaneously ring both extension and the associated mobile number when anyone calls in the extension number, you can configure a simultaneous ring strategy.

F, Note:
The feature is unavailable in Do Not Disturb status.

Table 8.

Setting	Description
Ring the Mobile Number Simultaneously	Check the option to enable this feature, and configure the user's mobile number.
Prefix	Enter the <u>prefix of outbound route</u> so that PBX can successfully send calls out.

Accept Push Notifications

By default, the user can receive push notifications on Linkus Mobile Client anywhere and anytime, such as missed calls, new voicemail messages and so on.

Table 9.

Setting	Description
	Enable or disable push notifications on Linkus Mobile Client.

#### Agent Status Auto Switch

If the user is a dynamic agent who needs to frequently log in to or out of a queue, you can associate queue status with extension presence. The user's status in a queue will automatically change along with his or her extension presence.

_				-	
Та	hl	ρ	1	Ω	
ıu	<b>N</b>			υ.	

Setting	Description
Login	Log in to a queue.
	Note: The option is available ONLY in Available status.
Logout	Log out of a queue.
Pause	Pause receiving queue calls.
Do Nothing	Retain current status.

## Manually Switch Extension Presence

This topic describes how to switch an extension's presence manually.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. On Extension list, find the desired extension.
- 3. In the Presence column, select a status from the drop-down list.

nsion a	and Trunk / Exte	nsion				
⊕ Ad	id 🗸 🖉 Edit	Export	t E Linkus Server	Welcome Email 🗇 Delete	Search	Q
	Online Status	Presence 👙	Extension Number	Caller ID \$\phi\$ User Role Email Address \$	Mobile Number	Operations
			1000 <b>n</b>	Leo Ball Administrator		2 🗇
	12 🖵 . 😁	Available Away	1001	Phillip Huff	13590123459	2
	13 🖵 . 🖴	Business Trip Do Not Disturb	1002	Terrell Smith		2 🖻
	18 🖵 🛛 📟	Lunch Break Off Work	1003	Kristin Hale		2 🗇
	<b>12 - - -</b>	Available	1004	Naomi Nichols		2 🗓

- 4. On the current page, click a blank space.
- 5. Click Apply.

### Result

New presence is synchronized on Linkus clients; <u>presence settings</u> related with the status take effect.

**Related information** 

Automatically Switch Extension Presence Based on Time

## Automatically Switch Extension Presence Based on Time

This topic gives a configuration example to describe how to configure presence auto switch based on Business Hours and Holidays for specific extension users.

## **Background information**

Assume that you have set Business Hours and Holidays on the PBX system, and you want the presence of extensions to be automatically switched according to the following time schedule:

Business Hours and Holidays	Time-based Presence
Business Hours: 09:00-12:00 and 14:00-18:00 from Monday to Friday.	Available
Break Hours: 12:00-14:00 from Monday to Friday.	Lunch Break
Holidays: December 25 to January 5.	Off Work
Outside Business Hours: The time periods that are not defined as Busi- ness Hours, Break Hours, or Holidays.	Off Work

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the extensions that need to switch presence status automatically based on the time schedule.
- 2. Click the Features tab, and go to Time-conditional Presence Auto Switch section.
- 3. Configure the following presence based on the time:
  - Business Hours: Select a status to be displayed during office hours.
    - In this scenario, select Available.
  - Break Hours: Select a status to be displayed during break time.

In this scenario, select Lunch Break.

• Holidays: Select a status to be displayed during holiday.

In this scenario, select Off Work.

• Outside Business Hours: Select a status to be displayed during non-office hours.

In this scenario, select Off Work.

4. Click Save.

#### Note:

The priority of presence switching at different times is: Holidays > Break Hours > Business Hours > Outside Business Hours.

### Result

Presence status will be switched automatically based on time.

For example, after 18:00, the presence displayed on Linkus client will be switched to Off Work.

#### Note:

If someone overrides time condition for the system, the presence status will be switched accordingly.

For example, time condition is overridden to Business Hours, the presence status will be force switched to Available.

#### **Related information**

Overview of Business Hours and Holidays Manually Switch Extension Presence

## Monitor Extension Status by BLF Key

This topic describes how to configure a BLF key on your IP phone via Auto Provisioning to monitor extension call status and DND (Do Not Disturb) presence.

### Prerequisites

The phone is connected to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition via Auto Provisioning, and has been assigned with an extension.

For more information, see Auto Provision IP Phones.

## Procedure

- Step1. Set up a function key for extension monitoring
- <u>Step2. Apply the configuration to the IP phone</u>

Step1. Set up a function key for extension monitoring

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the extension that is assigned to the phone.
- 2. Click the Function Keys tab.
- 3. Configure a function key to monitor the status of an extension.

The following figure shows a configuration example of monitoring the extension 1004.

User	Presence	Voicemail	Features	Advanced	Security	Linkus Clients	Phone	Function Keys	
Function H	Key	Туре			Value			Label	Operations
Key 1		BLF			1004-1004			1004	団

- Type: Select BLF.
- Value: Select the extension to be monitored from the drop-down list. In this example, select 1004.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- 4. Click Save.

Step2. Apply the configuration to the IP phone

1. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones, click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the desired phone.

The system prompts you whether to reprovision the phone.

2. In the pop-up window, click OK.

## Result

- The LED of the BLF key shows the real-time status of extension 1004:
  - Solid Green: The extension is being monitored, and the status is idle.
  - Solid Red: The extension is sending a call or is in a call; or the extension presence is DND (Do-Not-Disturb).
  - Blinking Red: The extension is ringing.

- LED off: The BLF key configuration failed.
- You can press the BLF key on the phone to achieve the followings:
  - Place a call to the monitored extension.
  - Pick up the monitored extension's incoming calls.

#### **Related information**

<u>Pick up a Call for a Group Member</u> <u>Pick up a Call for a Specific Extension</u> <u>Linkus Web Client Guide - Configure Function Keys</u>

## Forward Incoming Calls to Another Destination

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports status-based call forwarding, which allows users to forward incoming calls to different destinations based on their presence status. This topic describes how to preconfigure call forwarding rules for extension users on PBX, and how to enable and configure feature code so that extension users can make immediate changes to call forwarding destinations by dialing a feature code when needed.

### Set up call forwarding (destination preset)

For each presence status of an extension, you can define a different destination to which the incoming calls will be forwarded. Every time the presence status changes, the incoming calls will be forwarded to the corresponding destination.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Presence tab.
- 3. In the status bar, select a status to which the call forwarding rule will be applied.

< User	Presence	Voicemail	Features	Advanced
Available	Away Busir	ess Trip Do Not Dist	urb Lunch Break	Off Work

4. In the Internal Calls and External Calls section, select a forwarding action and specify a destination.

Call Forwarding				
Internal Calls				
Always				
<ul> <li>No Answer</li> </ul>	Voicemail	$\sim$		
✓ When Busy	Voicemail	$\vee$		
External Calls				
Always				
<ul> <li>No Answer</li> </ul>	IVR	$\sim$	6200-6200	$\vee$
Vhen Busy	Voicemail	~		

5. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

When a call reaches the extension number, the system will check the user's presence, identify whether it originates from an internal caller or external caller, and then route the call to the specified destination.

### Enable feature code for call forwarding (destination immediate change)

Extension users can change the preset call forwarding destinations on Linkus Web Client. For users with no access to Linkus Web Client, you can enable feature codes for call forwarding, so that these users can dial a feature code on their phones to change the call forwarding destinations.

Restrictions

- Be it internal calls or external calls, all the incoming calls received under the same forwarding type (Always, No Answer, and When Busy) will be routed to the same destination.
- Extension users can only change the call forwarding destination of their current presence status.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. In the Call Forwarding section, enable and configure the feature codes for call forwarding as needed.

Call	Forwarding		
	Enable "Forward All Calls"		Disable "Forward All Calls"
	*31		*031
	Enable "Forward When Busy"		Disable "Forward When Busy"
	*32		*032
	Enable "Forward No Answer"		Disable "Forward No Answer"
	*33	Solution	*033

• Enable "Forward All Calls"/"Forward When Busy"/"Forward No Answer": Select the checkbox, then configure a feature code.

Extension users can dial the feature code to forward calls to voicemail or a specific number. For more information, see <u>Call Forwarding Feature Code</u>.

• Disable "Forward All Calls"/"Forward When Busy"/"Forward No Answer": Select the checkbox, then configure a feature code.

Extension users can dial the feature code to disable automatic call forwarding.

3. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

When an extension user dials the feature code, incoming calls received under the current presence status will be routed to the specified destination.

#### 🚽 Note:

Forwarding type No Answer and When Busy are not supported under Do Not Disturb presence status, which means that even if extension users dial the corresponding feature code, the configuration will not work.

## **Ring Office Phone and Mobile Phone Simultaneously**

This topic describes how to achieve simultaneous ring on office phone and mobile phone.

## Scenario

A user may miss important calls when he or she is away from desk or on a business trip. In this case, you can enable simultaneous ring for the user. When a call reaches the user's extension number, both mobile phone and office phone with the extension number logged in will simultaneously ring.

## Prerequisites

- You have set a mobile number for the extension.
- At least one outbound route is ready for use.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Presence tab.
- 3. In the status bar, select a status to which the strategy of simultaneous ring will be applied.

- 4. In the Options section, configure the following settings.
  - a. Select the checkbox of Ring the Mobile Number Simultaneously.
  - b. Click  $\checkmark$  to configure mobile number.
  - c. Optional: In the Prefix field, enter the <u>prefix of outbound route</u> so that PBX can successfully send calls to your phone.
    - If the Strip of outbound route is not set, you don't have to set the Prefix.
    - If the Strip of outbound route is set, you need to set the Prefix according to the Patterns of outbound route.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

If a call reaches the user's extension number when he or she is in the specified presence, both office phones and mobile phone will ring simultaneously.

# **Extension Voicemail**

## Set up Extension Voicemail

This topic introduces voicemail feature and describes how to set up voicemail for an extension.

## **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports voicemail feature, which helps users receive audio messages when they are unavailable to answer calls. When you create an extension, the voicemail feature is enabled by default, and a 4-digit PIN code is randomly generated for accessing voicemail.

You can retain default settings, or change the following settings according to your needs.

- Enable or disable voicemail feature
- <u>Voicemail PIN Authentication</u>
- Notification methods and play options of voicemails
- <u>Voicemail greetings</u>

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab, turn on the option Enable Voicemail.
- 3. Optional: Configure voicemail PIN settings.
  - Voicemail PIN Authentication: Set whether a PIN code is required when the user accesses voicemail.

- Enabled
- Disabled
- Voicemail Access PIN: Retain the default PIN code or change it according to your needs.

🛃 Note:

The PIN code must be number, and the length must be 3-15 digits.

- 4. Optional: Configure notification settings for new voicemails.
  - New Voicemail Notification: Set whether to notify the user or not when receiving a new voicemail, and how to notify.
    - Do not Send Email Notifications: Disable email notification.
    - Send Email Notifications with Attachment: Send a notification email with the new voicemail message attached as a .wav file.
    - Send Email Notifications without Attachment: Send a notification email as soon as receiving a new voicemail message in mailbox.
  - After Notification: Set how to deal with voicemails after sending emails to inform the user.
    - Make as Read: Keep the voicemail messages in mailbox as read to prevent users from repeatedly receiving reminders on their phones.
    - Delete Voicemail: Delete the voicemail message to avoid mailbox being filled up.

## PNote:

We recommend that you select this option only when the extension user has received a notification email with voicemail message attachment.

- Do Nothing: Keep the voicemail messages in mailbox as unread.
- 5. Optional: Set whether to play the following messages when playing a voicemail.
  - Play Date and Time
  - Play Caller ID
  - Play Message Duration
- 6. Optional: To customize voicemail greetings that will be played to callers when they reach the user's voice mailbox, see <u>Record or Upload Voicemail Greetings</u>.
- 7. Click Save and Apply.

## **Related information**

Forward Voicemail Messages to Email Check Voicemail Messages

# **Extension Features**

## Handle Incoming Calls Based on Caller ID

This topic describes how to create a call handling rule for a specific user to handle incoming calls (calls from colleagues and external contacts) based on incoming Caller ID.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Features tab.
- 3. In the Call Handling Based on Caller ID section, set up one or more rules according to your needs.
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. In the Caller ID field, enter a specific number or a number pattern.
    - To apply the rule to a specific number, enter a specific number.

For example, enter 10086 to handle incoming calls with Caller ID 10086 based on the rule.

• To apply the rule to a number pattern, enter a wildcard pattern.

For example, enter 9011. to handle incoming calls with any Caller ID starting with 9011 based on the rule.

For more information, see <u>Caller ID Pattern</u>.

- c. In the Action drop-down list, set how to deal with incoming calls with the Caller ID.
  - Hang Up
  - Extension
  - Voicemail
  - IVR
  - Play Greeting then Hang up
  - Accept Call

## 🚽 Note:

By default, all incoming calls are allowed to reach the extension. If there is a call-handling rule to prevent spam calls (eg.728373XX) from reaching the extension, but the extension user wants to accept calls from a specific number (eg.72837300), you can create another rule to accept calls from 72837300.

- d. Click Save.
- e. Optional: To add more rules, repeat step a-d.
- f. Optional: In the Move column, adjust the rules' order. The rules take effect from the top down.

## PNote:

For example, set the rule "Accept calls from 72837300" to a higher priority than the rule "Reject calls from numbers starting with 728373". In this way, when receiving calls from 72837300, the system will send calls to the extension user. For other incoming calls from number starting with 728373, the system will hang up directly.

4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

When incoming calls reach the extension, the system will handle the calls based on Caller IDs.

## Set up Email Notifications for User Password Change

To remind an extension user of user password change, you can set up email notifications of user password change for the extension user.

## Prerequisites

- System email server is set up.
- An email address is associated with a desired extension.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Features tab.
- 3. In the Notifications section, select the checkbox of Send email notification when the User Password is changed.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

If the extension user's user password has been changed, system will send notification emails to the user's mailbox.

## Allow Multiple Registrations for One Extension Number

Registering one extension number to multiple SIP endpoints allows the employees to handle calls on any devices. This topic describes how to set the maximum concurrent registrations for an extension.

## **Background information**

For employees who work flexibly anywhere, they can register their extensions on multiple SIP endpoints, such as an IP phone in their office, a softphone on computer, or a SIP client on mobile phone. In this way, an incoming call can ring all endpoints at the same time, and users can handle calls at anywhere on any devices.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- In the Extension Information section, set the maximum endpoints allowed to register the extension in the IP Phone Concurrent Registrations field. In this example, set the concurrent registrations to 3.

=	Note
	NOIC

- The maximum number of concurrent registration is 3.
- Concurrent Registration setting only limits the registration number of non-Linkus SIP endpoints. The registration number of Linkus clients is not counted.

Extension Information		
* Extension Number	* Caller ID	
2000	2000	
* Registration Name	* Registration Password	
4o7nxjETmH		¥ 🖻 🖸
IP Phone Concurrent Registrations		
3 ~		

3. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

In addition to being registered on Linkus clients, the extension can also be registered on 3 other SIP endpoints.

When the extension receives a call, all the endpoints will ring. The extension user can handle the calls on any endpoint.

#### PNote:

By default, when the extension is busy in a call and a new call reaches, all the endpoints (Linkus and other SIP endpoints) can still ring.

To prevent other endpoints from receiving a new incoming call when an endpoint is busy, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > Features > Call to enable All Busy Mode for Endpoints for the extension.

## Set up Third-party Integration for Call Popup

Yeastar Popup URL allows a lightweight integration with a third-party application (such as CRM system, ERP system, etc.) to achieve call popup. When an extension receives a call, the PBX calls the URL of the third-party application and retrieves relevant customer data to display on the pop-up web page.

## Restrictions and requirements

#### Restrictions

The feature only works when Linkus Web Client is logged in.

#### Requirements

- Third-party application:
  - Web-based.
  - Support to provide a URL that can identify callers via Caller ID and Caller ID Name.

### Procedure

Follow the instructions below to set up popup URL for extensions in bulk. You can also customize it for a specific extension.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. Select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, click Edit.
- 3. Under the Features tab, select the checkbox of Bulk Edit and turn on the option Popup URL.

Popup URL	
Bulk Edit	
Popup URL	
Supported Variables:	
· {{.CallerNumber}} – Incoming Caller ID · {{.CallerDisplayName}} – Incoming Caller ID Name	
* Popup URL	
http://example.com/somepage.php?number={{.CallerNumber}}&name=	{{.CallerDisplayName}}
* Communication Type	* Trigger Event
Inbound ×	Ringing

4. Set up the third-party integration via Popup URL.

Table TT.	
Settings	Descriptions
Popup URL	Enter the third-party URL, followed by the variables that you want to pass. Supported variables: • .{{.CallerNumber}}: Incoming Caller ID. • .{{.CallerDisplayName}}: Incoming Caller ID Name.
	Take Solve360 CRM as an example: https://web/solve.360- .com/{{.CallerNumber}}&{{.CallerDisplayName}}
Communication Type	<ul> <li>Select which types of calls will trigger the call popup.</li> <li>Inbound: Inbound calls from external users.</li> <li>Internal: Internal calls from colleagues.</li> </ul>
Trigger Event	<ul> <li>Set when the call popup will be automatically triggered.</li> <li>Ringing: An incoming call reaches.</li> <li>Answered: An incoming call is answered.</li> <li>Call End: An incoming call is ended.</li> </ul>

5. Click Save.

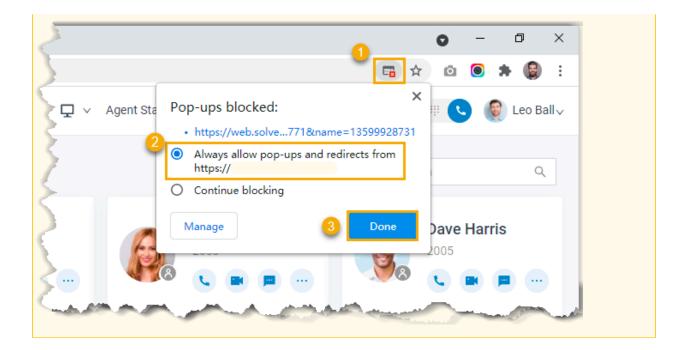
## Result

When an incoming call reaches the extensions on Linkus Web Client, a pop-up screen automatically appears in the web browser and displays relevant customer data.

## Important:

For the first-time use, users need to allow pop-ups and redirection from Linkus Web Client, or the pop-up screen can NOT be opened automatically.

Та	ble	11
	DIC	



# **Extension Advanced Settings**

## Advanced Settings of SIP Extension

This topic describes the advanced settings of a SIP extension.

## 🚽 Note:

The SIP configurations require professional knowledge of SIP protocol. Incorrect configurations may cause calling issues on the SIP extension.

## Table 12.

Setting	Description
DTMF Mode	Set the mode for sending DTMF tones.
	<ul> <li>RFC4733 (RFC2833): DTMF will be carried in the RTP stream in different RTP packets.</li> <li>Info: DTMF will be carried in the SIP info messages.</li> <li>Inband: DTMF will be carried in the audio signal.</li> <li>Auto: If the device supports RFC4733 (RFC2833), PBX will choose RFC4733 (RFC2833), otherwise the PBX will choose Inband.</li> </ul>
Transport	Set the transport protocol.

#### Table 12. (continued)

Setting	Description
	• UDP • TCP • TLS
	Note: If you change the transport protocol, you must re-register the ex- tension.
Qualify	Enable this option to send SIP OPTION packet to SIP device to check if the device is up.
T.38 Support	Enable or disable T.38 fax for the extension. Note: Enabling T.38 will add performance cost. We recommend that you disable T.38.
SRTP	Enable SRTP for voice encryption.

# **Extension Security**

## **Extension Security Overview**

This topic describes security options to prevent Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition from unauthorized SIP registrations and abused outbound calls.

## SIP security options

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides the following options to prevent unauthorized SIP registrations.

SIP User Agent Identification

By default, PBX allows phones to register extensions without user agent limit. To enhance extension security, you can restrict which user agent is allowed to register an extension.

When a phone is trying to register the extension, the phone will send SIP packets containing user agent. If the prefix of the user agent does not match the specified value, the registration will fail.

SIP Registration IP Restriction

By default, PBX allows SIP registrations without the limit of IP address.

To enhance extension security, you can specify which IP address or IP section is allowed to register an extension.

### Call restrictions options

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides the following options to prevent abused outbound calls.

**Disable Outbound Calls** 

Restrict users from making outbound calls.

Disable Outbound Calls outside Business Hours

Restrict users from making outbound calls during off-duty time and holidays.

**Disallow International Calls** 

Restrict users from making international calls.

- Note:

The option works only when you have enabled Enable Allowed Country/Region Code Dialaing Protection. For more information, see <u>Block Outbound Interna-</u> tional Calls.

Max Outbound Call Duration (s)

When the user is in an outbound call and the call duration reaches the limit, the system would end the call.

**Outbound Call Frequency Restriction** 

When an extension makes outbound calls and the number of calls exceeds the outbound call frequency restriction within specified time period, the system would restrict the extension from making outbound calls. For more information, see Limit Outbound Call Frequency of an Extension.

#### **Outbound Route Permission**

Specify the outbound routes that an extension is allowed to use.

#### 🚽 Note:

If this extension belongs to an organization or an extension group that has permission to use a specific outbound route, then you can't change the extension's permission to the outbound route here.

## Restrict Outbound Calls for an Extension

Toll fraud is a global problem in telecommunication industry. It happens when hackers access your PBX system and make expensive phone calls from existing accounts. To prevent toll fraud, you can restrict outbound calls for an extension.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit a desired extension.
- 2. Click Security tab.
- 3. In the Call Restrictions section, select the checkbox of Disable Outbound Calls.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

• Users cannot make outbound calls even if the extensions are selected in outbound routes.

Pote:

Emergency Calls like 911 is not restricted.

• On Extension list,  $^{f A}$  is displayed in front of the extension.

🚽 Note:

To cancel the restriction of outbound calls, click 🖄 to edit the extension, go to Security tab and unselect the checkbox of Disable Outbound Calls in the Call Restrictions section.

⊕ Add	✓ 🖉 Edit	Export	E Linkus Server	Welcome Email 🛅 Delete	Search
	Online Status	Presence 🔶	Extension Number	Caller ID Aame  \$ User Role Email Address \$	Mobile Number  \$ Operation
		Available	1000	Leo Ball Administrato r	2 🖻
		Available	1001	Phillip Huff	13590123459 🖉 📋
		Available	1002	Terrell Smith	2 🖻
	IS 🖵 .) 📼	Available	1003	Kristin Hale	<b>2</b> 🗎

## **Restrict Extension Registration Based on User Agent**

This topic describes how to restrict extension registration based on user agent.

## Background information

SIP is a peer-to-peer protocol. The peers in a session are called User Agents (UAs). A user agent can play one of the following roles:

- User Agent Client (UAC): A client application that initiates a SIP request, such as IN-VITE, ACK, OPTIONS, BYE, CANCEL, and REGISTER.
- User Agent Server (UAS): A server application that receives the SIP request from a UAC, and returns a response to the request back to the UAC.

When a SIP endpoint tries to register an extension to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, the SIP endpoint working as UAC sends packets containing user agent string to the PBX. By default, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows registrations from any UAC without authenticating user agent. For security reasons, you can restrict extension registration based on user agent.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Security tab.
- 3. In the SIP Security section, select the checkbox of Enable User Agent Registration Authorization.
- 4. Set the user agent.
  - a. Click Add User Agent.
  - b. In the User Agent field, enter a value.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

When a phone is trying to register an extension, the phone will send SIP packets containing a user agent, such as phone manufacturer, phone model, etc. If the prefix of the user agent does not match the specified value, the registration will fail.

## **Restrict Extension Registration Based on IP Address**

This topic describes how to allow devices with a specific IP address or in a specific IP section to register extensions on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## **Background information**

By default, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows SIP registrations without the limit of IP address. In case hackers remotely register extensions and make expensive phone calls, you can restrict that only devices with a specific IP address or in a specific IP section can register extensions on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Security tab.
- 3. In the SIP Security section, select the checkbox of Enable IP Restriction.
- 4. Set which IP address or IP section is allowed to register the extension.
  - a. Click Add IP.
  - b. In the Permitted IP and Subnet Mask fields, set the allowed IP address or IP section.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

Only device with the IP address or in the IP section can register the extension.

## Block Outbound Calls Outside Business Hours

This topic describes how to restrict an extension from making outbound calls outside business hours.

## Prerequisites

You have set global business hours.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Security tab.
- 3. In the Call Restrictions section, select the checkbox of Disable Outbound Calls outside Business Hours.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

The user can NOT make outbound calls during off-duty time and holidays.

## Limit Call Duration of an Outbound Call

This topic describes how to limit call duration of an outbound call.

## Procedure

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.

- 2. Click Security tab.
- 3. In the Call Restrictions section, select a value from the drop-down list of Max Outbound Call Duration (s), or enter a value according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

When the user is in an outbound call and call duration reaches the Max Outbound Call Duration (s), the system would end the call.

## Limit Outbound Call Frequency of an Extension

To secure enterprise communications and reduce the economic loss if the PBX system has been hacked, we recommended that you set up rules to restrict the extension outbound call frequency.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Security tab.
- 3. Scroll down to the Call Restrictions section, in the Outbound Call Frequency Restriction drop-down list, select the desired rule (s).

#### - Note:

The PBX has a default rule Default\_Ext\_Outbound Call Frequency, which limits extension users to make maximum 5 outbound calls in 1 second. You can add new rules according to your need. For more information, see <u>Add an 'Outbound Call Frequency</u> <u>Restriction' Rule</u>.

4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

If an extension has exceeded the outbound call frequency restriction, the following things would happen.

• Users cannot make outbound calls even if the extensions are selected in outbound routes.

Note: Emergency Calls like 911 is not restricted.

• On Extension list,  $^{f A}$  is displayed in front of the extension.

- Note:

To cancel the restriction of outbound calls, click 🖉 to edit the extension, go to Security tab and unselect the checkbox of Disable Outbound Calls in the Call Restrictions section.

€ Add	✓ 🖉 Edit	Import 🗧 Export	E Linkus Server	Welcome Email	Search
	Online Status	Presence 🖕	Extension Number	Caller ID \$\$ User Role Email Name	I Address  Mobile Number 💠 Operation
		Available	1000	Leo Ball Administrato	2 💼
		Available	1001	Phillip Huff	13590123459 🖉 📋
		Available	1002	Terrell Smith	<b>2</b>   🖻
	is 🖵 . 📟	Available	1003	Kristin Hale	2 🖻

• The system sends a notification to inform the notification contacts of an <u>Outbound</u> <u>Call Frequency Exceeded</u> event.

# Manage Extensions

## **Edit Extensions**

This topic describes how to edit an extension, or edit extensions in bulk.

Edit an extension

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. On Extension list, select the desired extension, click  $\mathbb{Z}$ .
- 3. Change extension settings according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Bulk edit extensions

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. On Extension list, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, click Edit.
- 3. Select the checkbox of the desired feature, change extension settings according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Reset an Extension's User Password

An extension's user password is used to log in to PBX web portal and Linkus clients. As an administrator, you can reset an extension's user password if the user forgets password.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. Search and select the desired extension, click  $\angle$ .
- 3. In the User Information section, delete the value in the User Password field, and enter a new password.
- 4. Click Save.

## Result

The extension's user password is changed. You need to inform the user of the new password.

## Export and Import SIP Extensions

The SIP extensions configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired extension information in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import SIP extensions.

## PNote:

Only system super administrator can import SIP extensions.

## Export all extensions

You can export all the SIP extensions to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see Extension Parameters.

## Import SIP extensions

We recommend that you export extension data to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

🚽 Note:

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information, see <u>Extension Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The extension data in the CSV file will be displayed in the Extension list.

## **Delete Extensions**

This topic describes how to delete an extension or delete extensions in bulk.

### Delete an extension

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. On Extension list, select the desired extension, click  $\square$ .
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.
- 4. Click Apply.

#### Bulk delete extensions

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. On Extension list, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, click Delete.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.
- 4. Click Apply.

# **Extension Visibility Permission**

## Set up Extension Visibility

By default, all the users can view all departments or the default extension group on Linkus clients, depending on whether you have enabled the organization management feature. To restrict users from viewing specific extensions, departments, or extension groups, you can set up extension visibility as the instructions provided in this topic.

### Procedure

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Client Permission > Extension Visibility Permission.

The default extension visibility rule is displayed.

			+ Add rule		
	All extensions	Allow view	Default_All_Ext	$\forall \mid \lor \mid \leftthreetimes \mid \forall$	<b>2</b>   D
gar	nization Management Ena	abled Permission Type	* Objects	Move	Operations
rgar	nization Management Ena	abled Permission Type	* Objects + Add rule	Move	Operations

- 2. Click Add rule to create an extension visibility rule.
- 3. Set up the rule:

* Extension/Organization	* Permission Type	* Objects	Move	Operations
		+ Add rule		
۷	Disallow view $\lor$		◢ ⊼   ^   ~	± Save   Cancel

a. Select desired values from the drop-down lists.

- Extension/Extension Group/Organization: Click  $\checkmark$  to select desired extensions, extension groups, or departments, for which you want to grant or restrict the viewing permission.
- Permission Type: Select an option from the drop-down list to define the permission.
  - Allow view: Allow to view the extensions, extension groups, or departments, which are selected in the <u>Objects</u>.
  - Disallow view: Disallow to view the extensions, extension groups, or departments, which are selected in the <u>Objects</u>.
- Objects: Click *desired* extensions, extension groups, or departments, which are allowed or disallowed to be viewed.

#### - Note:

By default, when you select a department, its associated sub-departments are selected. Be careful when selecting departments.

- b. Click Save.
- 4. Optional: To adjust the rules order, click  $\overline{\uparrow}$  ,  $\uparrow$  ,  $\checkmark$  , or  $\underline{\checkmark}$  .

- Note:

The priority of extension visibility rules is from the top down. When encountering permission conflicts, the permission is subject to the visibility rule with the higher priority.

### Result

On Linkus Mobile Client and Linkus Web Client, users can view the extensions, extension groups, or departments that are visible to them.

### 🚽 Note:

Users can NOT make calls to the extensions that they can not view.

## Manage Extension Visibility Rules

This topic describes how to edit and delete extension visibility rules.

### Edit an extension visibility rule

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Client Permission > Extension Visibility Permission.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside a desired extension visibility rule.
- 3. Edit the rule as needed.
- 4. Click Save.

#### Delete extension visibility rules

#### 🚽 Note:

Be careful when deleting extension visibility rules. If you delete all the extension visibility rules, all the internal calls would fail, as users can NOT make calls to the extensions invisible to them.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Client Permission > Extension Visibility Permission.
- 2. To delete an extension visibility rule, do as follows:
  - a. Click ៉ beside a desired rule.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.
- 3. To bulk delete extension visibility rules, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of desired rules, click Delete.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.

# Contacts

# **Contacts Overview**

Yeastar Contacts feature allows users to store external contacts outside of your company on PBX, access and call those contacts on endpoints (IP phone and Linkus clients) where their extensions have registered. This topic describes terminologies, requirements, key features, and limits of Yeastar Contacts feature.

#### Terminologies

Before using Yeastar Contacts feature, familiarize yourself with the following terminologies:

Personal Contacts

Personal Contacts is exclusive to each extension user, which allows users to store a number of personal contacts, such as direct customers.

- Note:

Each user's Personal Contacts is only visible to himself or herself.

#### **Company Contacts**

Company Contacts is shared among authorized users, which allows authorized users to store a number of company shared contacts, such as company's customers, resellers, and partners.

#### Phonebooks

Phonebooks is a value-added service for Company Contacts, which allows authorized users to group company contacts into phonebooks, and implement robust control over access to each phonebook.

### Key features

Group company contacts into phonebooks

Group company contacts into organized phonebooks and access them securely with robust permission control.

Sync contacts across Linkus clients

Sync contacts across Linkus Web Client and Linkus Mobile Client and allow you to make changes on either client.

#### Sync contacts from integrated CRMs

Sync contacts from Customer Relationship Management (CRM) systems that are integrated with Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

Identify incoming calls

When receiving an incoming call from a personal contact or a company contact, callee's phone screen will display the contact name. By knowing who is calling, users can handle calls efficiently.

For more information, see Identify Callers from Contacts.

Maximum Number of Extensions (N)	N ≤50	50 < N ≤ 200	N > 200
Company contacts (total)	50,000	200,000	500,000
Company phonebooks	100	200	500
Personal contacts (per exten- sion)	100	200	300

#### **Related information**

Manage Company Contacts Manage Company Phonebooks Export and Import Company Contacts Identify Callers from Contacts Set up Contact Visibility Allow Users to Query Contacts on IP Phones

# Manage Company Contacts

This topic describes how to add, edit, or delete company contacts on PBX management portal.

## **Operation permissions**

The authorized users can view and manage company contacts on Linkus clients, or view company contacts on an IP phone.

To grant users Company Contacts permissions, see Set up Contact Visibility.

To manage contacts on Linkus clients or an IP phone, see the following topics:

- Linkus Web Client User Guide
- Use Contacts on an IP Phone

The following table shows what operations can be done on different endpoints.

Table 13.

Permission

Linkus Clients

	Web Client	Mobile Client	Desktop Client	
View company contacts	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	×	$\checkmark$
Add company con- tacts	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	×	×
Edit company con- tacts	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	×	×
Delete company contacts	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	×	×
Import company contacts	×	×	×	×
Export company contacts	×	×	×	×

#### Table 13. (continued)

## Add a company contact

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal.
- 2. Go to Contacts > Company Contacts, click Add.
- 3. Enter contact information.
- 4. Optional: In the Phonebook List drop-down list, select one more phonebooks where you want the contact to be grouped.

#### Note:

• A newly created contact will be added to the default phonebook 'All Company Contacts\_Phonebook', if any.

## 5. Click Save.

The contact is stored in Company Contacts and synchronized to users' endpoints (IP phones and Linkus clients).

## Edit a company contact

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal.
- 2. Go to Contacts > Company Contacts, click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired contact.
- 3. Edit contact information.
- 4. Click Save.

Changes of the contact are synchronized to users' endpoints (IP phones and Linkus clients).

## Delete company contacts

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Contacts > Company Contacts.
- 2. To delete a company contact, select the desired contact, click  $\stackrel{[]}{=}$  and OK.
- 3. To delete company contacts in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired contacts, click Delete and OK.

The contacts are removed from Company Contacts and users' endpoints (IP phones and Linkus clients).

# Manage Company Phonebooks

This topic describes how to add, edit, and delete company phonebooks.

## **Background information**

Yeastar Phonebooks feature allows you to create phonebooks to group company contacts in an organized way and implement robust control over users' access to each phonebook.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports two kinds of company phonebook:

- PBX native company phonebook: A phonebook that stores company contacts that are created on PBX web portal and Linkus Clients.
- CRM-synchronized company phonebook: A phonebook that stores company contacts that are synced from the integrated CRM. The phonebook will be marked with an iden-

tifier 'CRM' ( CRM ).

🚽 Note:

Phonebooks synchronized from CRM can NOT be edited or deleted.

## Group company contacts into phonebooks

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal.
- 2. Go to Contacts > Phonebooks, click Add.
- 3. In the Phonebook Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 4. In the Members section, select desired company contacts.
  - To define a All Contacts phonebook:
    - a. Select All Company Contacts from the drop-down list of Select Contacts.



Any time you add a company contact, the contact will be automatically added to the phonebook.

• To group contacts into a phonebook:

- a. Select Specific Company Contacts from the drop-down list of Select Contacts.
- b. Click Add to select the desired company contacts.
- c. Click Confirm.
- 5. Click Save.

### Edit company phonebooks

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal.
- 2. Go to Contacts > Phonebooks, click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired phonebook.
- 3. Edit phonebook name, add or delete company contacts from the phonebook according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save.

Changes of the phonebook are synchronized to users' Linkus clients.

#### Delete company phonebooks

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Contacts > Phonebooks.
- 2. To delete a phonebook, select the desired phonebook, click  $\square$  and OK.
- 3. To delete phonebooks in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired phonebooks, click Delete and OK.

The phonebooks are removed from PBX server and users' Linkus clients.

#### 🚽 Note:

Company contacts in the phonebook are still kept in the system.

#### **Related information**

<u>Contacts Overview</u> <u>Set up Contact Visibility</u> <u>Manage Company Contacts</u> <u>Identify Callers from Contacts</u> Allow Users to Query Contacts on IP Phones

# **Export and Import Company Contacts**

The company contacts configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired contacts in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import company contacts.

### Export company contacts

You can export all company contacts to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Contacts > Company Contacts.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Company Contacts Parameters</u>.

#### Import company contacts

We recommend that you export company contacts data to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 300 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Company Contacts Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Contacts > Company Contacts.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The company contacts in the CSV file will be displayed in the Contacts list.

#### **Related information**

Linkus Web Client Guide - Export personal contacts Linkus Web Client Guide - Import personal contacts

# Identify Callers from Contacts

This topic describes how to configure Caller ID match to help users identify callers whose information is stored in Yeastar Contacts.

#### Background information

Caller ID match is supported on all kinds of endpoints, including Linkus clients, desk phones, or softphones. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows users to identify callers from Company Contacts and Personal Contacts.

Identify callers from Company Contacts

Support for authorized extension users who have permissions to view or manage company contacts.

For more information about how to grant permissions to users, see <u>Set up</u> <u>Contact Visibility</u>.

Identify callers from Personal Contacts

Support for each extension user.

#### Priority of Caller ID match

If an incoming number is stored in Company Contacts, Personal Contacts, mobile phone directory, and IP phone directory at the same time, the priority of Caller ID match from high to low is as follows:

- Mobile Phone Directory/IP Phone Directory
- Personal Contacts
- Company Contacts

#### Configure Caller ID match

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Contacts > Company Contacts.
- 2. Configure Caller ID match.
  - a. On the Company Contacts page, click Options.
  - b. Choose how to match incoming Caller ID.
    - Do Not Match: Display original incoming Caller ID.
    - Exact Match: Display contact name when an incoming Caller ID exactly matches existing number.
    - Match the last {number} digits: Display contact name based on the digits of incoming Caller ID.
      - If the digit length of an incoming Caller ID is shorter than or equal to the specified value, contact name will be displayed only when the incoming Caller ID exactly matches existing number.
      - If the digit length of an incoming Caller ID is longer than the specified value, contact name will be displayed when the last few digits of the incoming Caller ID matches that of existing number.

#### - Note:

The default value is 7. To change the value, enter a number between 4 and 31.

c. Click Save.

#### Caller ID match example

A contact Dora whose phone number is 12345678 is stored in Company Contacts; the system receives an incoming call from Dora.

- Do Not Match is selected:
  - When Dora calls in, the contact name "Dora" will not be displayed.
- Exact Match is selected:
  - If the incoming Caller ID is 12345678, the contact name "Dora" will be displayed.
  - If the incoming Caller ID is +012345678, the contact name "Dora" will NOT be displayed.
- Match the last 9 digits is configured:
  - If the incoming Caller ID is 12345678, the contact name "Dora" will be displayed.
  - If the incoming Caller ID is 15212345678, the contact name "Dora" will NOT be displayed.

**Related information** 

Route Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts

### Allow Users to Query Contacts on IP Phones

To allow users to query contacts on IP phones, you need to auto provision IP phones. This topic describes how to allow users to query contacts on IP phones.

#### Requirements

IP Phone

Use Yealink phones of the required model and version. For more information, see <u>Yealink phones</u>.

🚽 Note:

- Yealink conference phones and DECT bases are NOT supported.
- A maximum of 1000 company contacts and 300 personal contacts can be displayed on an Yealink phone.

#### Procedure

1. Grant permission for users to access company contacts.

For more information, see Set up Contact Visibility.

#### PNote:

By default, all the users have access to their own personal contacts, but no access to shared company contacts.

- 2. Synchronize contacts data to users' IP phones via Auto Provisioning.
  - If users' extensions haven't been associated with phones, see <u>Auto Provision IP</u> <u>Phones</u> to bind phones with the extensions.
  - If users' extensions have been associated with phones, reprovision the phones to take effect.
    - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
    - b. Select the checkboxes of the desired phones, click Reprovision.

#### Result

Contacts data are synchronized to IP phones' remote phonebooks. Users can query and place calls to contacts from the remote phonebook.

#### 🚽 Note:

Two remote phonebooks from the PBX server are displayed on the IP phone:

• Company\_Contacts: Saves all the company shared contacts that you can view.

- Note:

Company contacts on IP phones can NOT be grouped into phonebooks.

• Personal\_Contacts\_{extension\_number}: Saves all your personal contacts.

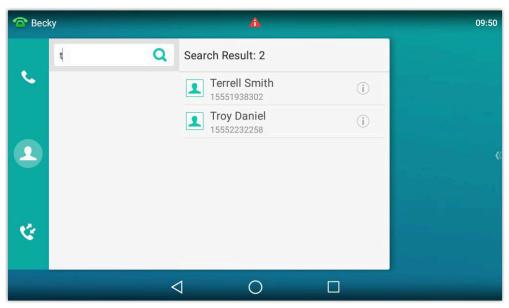
Example: Query contacts on Yealink T56A IP phone

1. Tap 👤 > Remote Phonebook.

The directories that the user is allowed to view are displayed on the page.

🕿 Beck	ky		A		10:02
	Q Search	<b>S</b> etting	Remote Phone Book(8)	G	
<b>C</b>	Local Dire	ectory	Lompany_Contacts	> E F	
	• Remote F	Phone Book	A Personal_Contacts_100	H	
2	<ul> <li>Blacklist</li> </ul>			K L N N	
				O P Q R	
				S T U	
<b>V</b>				W X Y	
				z	

- 2. Tap Search.
- 3. In the search box, enter contact name or number. The system will query contact from Contacts.



4. Select a contact, tap the contact number to quickly dial out.

### **Contact Visibility Permission**

### Set up Contact Visibility

By default, all the users can neither manage nor view company contacts. To allow specific users to manage or view company contacts, you can set up company contacts visibility as the instructions provided in this topic.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Client Permission > Contact Visibility Permission.
- 2. Click Add rule to create a contact visibility rule.
- 3. Set up the rule:

el
Canc

a. Select desired values from the drop-down lists.

- Extension/Extension Group/Organization: Click 2 to select desired extensions, extension groups, or departments, for which you want to grant the viewing permission or management permission.
- Permission Type: Select an option from the drop-down list to define the permission.
  - Allow view: Allow to view the phonebooks that are selected in <u>Objects</u>.
  - Allow manage: Allow to view, add, edit, or delete the phonebooks that are selected in <u>Objects</u>.
- Objects: Click *desired* phonebooks that are allowed to be viewed or managed.
- b. Click Save.

#### Result

- On Linkus clients, the authorized users can view or manage company contacts.
- On auto-provisioned Yealink IP phones, the authorized users can view company contacts.

For more information, see Allow Users to Query Contacts on IP Phones.

### Manage Contact Visibility Rules

This topic describes how to edit and delete contact visibility rules.

#### Edit a contact visibility rule

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Client Permission > Contact Visibility Permission.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside a desired contact visibility rule.
- 3. Edit the rule as needed.
- 4. Click Save.

Delete contact visibility rules

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Client Permission > Contact Visibility Permission.
- 2. To delete a contact visibility rule, do as follows:
  - a. Click 🛄 beside a desired rule.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.
- 3. To bulk delete contact visibility rules, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of desired rules, click Delete.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.

## LDAP Server

### LDAP Server Overview

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be set as an LDAP Server, which provides centralized phonebook management. With this feature, you can store the contact information on the PBX, and quickly launch calls without wasting time finding a contact's number and subsequently entering it on your phone, thus greatly improving work efficiency.

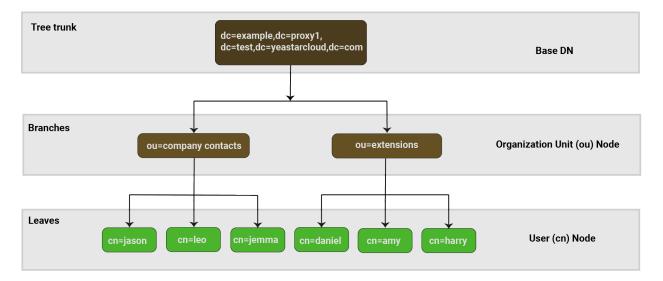
#### LDAP introduction

LDAP stands for Lightweight Directory Access Protocol, which is an application protocol for accessing and maintaining information services for the distributed directory over an IP network.

The LDAP directory server is based on the client/server mode. The LDAP Server contains directory data. An LDAP Client connects to the LDAP Server, and sends a request to obtain directory data from the LDAP Server, thus implementing global directory data management.

#### LDAP directory structure

The LDAP Server is a type of network database based on entries, which is a collection of information about an entity. In LDAP, directory entries are arranged in a hierarchical tree-like structure. The following figure shows an example of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition LDAP directory tree.



#### LDAP terminologies

An LDAP entry is a collection of information about an entity. Each entry consists of three primary components: a distinguished name, a collection of attributes, and a collection of object classes. Distinguished Name (DN)

A globally-unique entry's distinguished name, which uniquely identifies the entry and its position in the directory information tree hierarchy.

A DN usually consists of three components.

- dc: Domain Component, usually refers to a component of the domain name.
- ou: Organization Unit, usually refers to a name of a group object.
- cn: Common Name, usually refers to a user name.

The DN of an LDAP entry is much like the path to a file on a filesystem. For example, cn=amy,ou=extensions,dc=example,dc=proxyl,dc=test,dc=yeastarcloud,dc=com is like a file path of com/yeastarcloud/test/proxyl/example/extensions/amy.

The Base DN is the root of the LDAP directory tree, which is the starting point of LDAP search. For example, dc=example, dc=proxy1,dc=test,dc=yeastar-cloud,dc=com.

#### Attributes

Each entry can have multiple attributes. Each attribute has an attribute type and a set of values that comprise the actual data.

The syntax of values depends on the attribute type. The following table gives examples of attributes when ou=company contacs.

Attribute	Information details	Example			
cn	Contact ID	Leo			
displayName	Display Name	Leo Ball			
givenName	First Name	Leo			
sn	Last Name	Ball			
mail	Email Address	leoball@example.com			
company	Company	Yeastar			
telephoneNumber	Business number	+86-592-5503301			
mobile	Mobile Number	12345678902			
homePhone	Home Number	12345678902			
facsimileTelephone- Number	Fax Number	+86-592-5503301			

Ta	bl	e	1	4.
1 0	~	<b>U</b>		•••

Attribute	Information details	Example
postalCode	Zip Code	361024
I	City	Xiamen
st	Street	Software Park Phase
со	Country	China

#### Table 14. (continued)

#### **Object Classes**

Object Class defines collections of attribute types which may be used in entries containing that class, and which of those attribute types will be required rather than optional. Every entry has a structural object class, which indicates what kind of object an entry represents (e.g., whether it is information about a person, a group, a device, a service, etc.), and may also have zero or more auxiliary object classes that suggest additional characteristics for that entry.

For example, if the objectclass is person, then the required attributes are givenName and sn, the optional attributes are description, seeAlso, etc.

#### **Related information**

Set up Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition as an LDAP Server

# Set up Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition as an LDAP Server

This topic describes how to set up Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition as an LDAP Server. In this way, you can store the contacts information on PBX and query from IP phones directly.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Contacts > LDAP Server.
- 2. On the top of the page, turn on LDAP Server.
- 3. Click the LDAP Server Settings tab to check the LDAP Server settings .

LDAP Nodes	LDAP Server Settings	LDAP Credentials		
LDAP Host			LDAP Mode	
example.proxy1.tes	t.yeastarcloud.com		LDAP & LDAPs	
LDAP Port		LDAPs Port		
15011			15019	
Base DN				
dc=example,dc=pro	xy1,dc=test,dc=yeastarcloud,dc	=com		

#### Table 15.

Setting	Description	
LDAP Host	The LDAP Server address of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.	
	LDAP Client connects to the LDAP Server via the ad- dress.	
LDAP Mode	The connection protocol used between the LDAP Server and the LDAP Clients.	
LDAP Port	The LDAP port of the LDAP Server.	
LDAPs Port	The LDAPs port of the LDAP Server.	
Base DN The Base DN is based on the LDAP Host add Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.		

4. Click the LDAP Nodes tab, enable or disable the nodes according to your needs.

Node Name	Node DN	Operations	Details
Company Contacts	ou=Company Contacts,dc=example,dc=proxy1,dc=test,dc=yeastarcloud,dc=com	-•	R
Extensions	ou= Extensions ,dc=example,dc=proxy1,dc=test,dc=yeastarcloud,dc=com		

If a node is disabled, you can not query the information under this node.

#### Result

The Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is now working as an LDAP Server. You can store contact information in the PBX directly. Users can connect an IP phone to PBX via LDAP, and query the contact information from IP phone directly.

### Set up LDAP Client

### Auto Provision LDAP for IP Phones

You can configure the LDAP for IP phone via Auto Provisioning, which is more convenient and easy to operate.

#### Supported IP phones

This topic can be applied to the IP phones listed in Auto Provisioning - Supported Devices.

#### Prerequisites

- Make sure the PBX version is 84.6.0.24 or later.
- The phone is connected to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition via Auto Provisioning, and has been assigned with an extension.

For more information, see Auto Provision IP Phones.

• You have granted the Company Contact viewing permission for extension users. For more information, see <u>Set up Contact Visibility</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones, click 🧿 to edit the phone.
- 2. Under Phone tab, scroll down to the LDAP Directory section, set up the LDAP feature according to your needs.

LDAP Directory	
Enable LDAP Directory	Directory Name
Enable V	PBX_Contacts
LDAP Server Address	LDAP Mode
example.proxy1.test.yeastarcloud.com	LDAPs v
LDAP Name Filter	LDAP Number Filter
(l(displayName=%)(givenName=%)(sn=%)(mail=%)(company=%))	(i(telephoneNumber=%)(mobile=%)(homePhone=%)(facsimileTelephoneNumber=%))
LDAP Name Attributes	LDAP Number Attributes
displayName	company mail telephoneNumber mobile homePhone facsimileTelephoneNumber
LDAP Display Name	Max Number of Search Results
%displayName	50
* LDAP Lookup for Incoming Calls	LDAP Lookup for Dialing
Enable	Enable
* LDAP Sorting Results	
Disable V	

Tab	le 1	16.	

Setting	Description	Example
Enable LDAP Direc- tory	Enable or disable the LDAP directo- ry feature.	Enable
Directory Name	Specify a name for the LDAP direc- tory.	PBX_Contacts
LDAP Server Ad- dress	Enter the LDAP Server address of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.	example.proxy1- .test.yeastarcloud- .com
LDAP Mode	Select the connection mode be- tween the LDAP Server and the IP phone.	LDAPs
LDAP Name Filter	Specify the name attributes for LDAP contact name lookup.	( (displayName=%) (givenName=%)
	<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>The * symbol in the filter stands for any character.</li> <li>The * symbol in the filter stands for the entering string used as the prefix of the filter condition.</li> </ul>	(sn=%)(mail=%) (company=%))
LDAP Number Filter	Specify the number attributes for LDAP searching.	( (telephoneNum- ber=%)(mobile=%)
	<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>The * symbol in the filter stands for any character.</li> <li>The % symbol in the filter stands for the entering string used as the prefix of the filter condition.</li> </ul>	(homePhone=%) (facsimileTelepho- neNumber=%))
LDAP Name Attrib- utes	Specify the name attributes of each record to be returned by the LDAP Server. The user can configure mul- tiple name attributes separated by space.	displayName
LDAP Number At- tributes	Specify the number attributes of each record to be returned by the	telephoneNumber mobile homePhone

Setting	Description	Example
	LDAP Server. The user can config- ure multiple number attributes.	
LDAP Display Name	Specify the display name of the contact record displayed on the LCD screen.	%displayName
	Note: This parameter must start with % symbol.	
Max Number of Search Results	Specify the maximum number of search results to be returned by the LDAP Server.	50
LDAP Lookup for In- coming Call	Enable or disable IP phone to per- form an LDAP search when receiv- ing an incoming call.	Enabled
LDAP Lookup for Callout	Enable or disable IP phone to per- form an LDAP search when placing a call.	Enabled
LDAP Sorting Re- sults	Enable or disable IP phone to sort out search results in alphabetical and numerical order.	Enabled

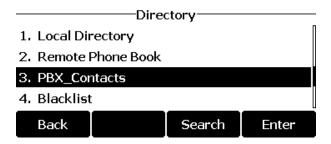
#### 3. Click Save.

The page returns to Auto Provisioning > Phones.

- 4. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone to reprovision the settings.
- 5. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.

#### Result

You can now query the contact information from IP phone on Menu > Directory.



#### **Related information**

Auto Provision Function Keys for Phones

### Manual Configuration Examples

### LDAP Configurations on Yealink Phones

This topic takes the Yealink SIP-T53W IP phone with a firmware version of 93.85.0.5 to describe how to configure LDAP on Yealink IP phones.

#### Configuration example

The example configurations are set according to default settings of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition LDAP Server. You can use the following settings as a starting point and adjust the filter and display attributes according to your needs.

#### Prerequisites

You have granted the Company Contact viewing permission for extension users. For more information, see <u>Set up Contact Visibility</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Yealink phone web interface, go to Directory > LDAP.
- 2. Turn on the LDAP Enable feature switch, and enter the desired values in the corresponding fields.

Yealink   15	53W			
<ol> <li>Status</li> </ol>	~	LDAP Label	PBX_Contacts	0
👤 Account	~	LDAP Name Filter	(l(displayName=%)(givenName=%)	?
Network	~	LDAP Number Filter	( (telephoneNumber=%)(mobile=%)	2
🕕 Dsskey	~	LDAP TLS Mode	LDAPS 💌	0
Features	~	LDAP Server Address	example.proxy1.test.yeastarcloud.c	Port 15019
🔅 Settings	~	LDAP Username	cn=5566,ou=users,dc=example,dc=	0
L Directory	^	LDAP Password	••••••	0
Local Directory		LDAP Base	dc=example,dc=proxy1,dc=test,dc=	0
Remote Phone Book		Max Hits (1~1000)	50	0
Phone Call Info		LDAP Name Attributes	displayName	0
Google Contacts		LDAP Number Attributes	telephoneNumber mobile homePho	0
LDAP		LDAP Display Name	%displayName	0
Multicast IP		Protocol	Version 3	0
Settings		LDAP Lookup for Incoming Call	ON	0
Security	~	LDAP Lookup for Callout	ON	0
		LDAP Sorting Results		0

Table 17.		
Setting	Description	Example
LDAP Label	Specify the name of LDAP phonebook.	PBX_Contacts
LDAP Name Filter	Specify the name attribut- es for LDAP contact name lookup.	( (displayName=%) (givenName=%) (sn=%)(mail=%) (company=%))
	<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>The * symbol in the filter stands for any character.</li> <li>The % symbol in the filter stands for the entering string used as the prefix of the filter condition.</li> </ul>	
LDAP Num- ber Filter	Specify the number attribut- es for LDAP searching.	( (telephoneNum- ber=%)(mobile=%)
	<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>The * symbol in the filter stands for any character.</li> <li>The % symbol in the filter stands for the entering string used as the prefix of the filter condition.</li> </ul>	(homePhone=%) (facsimileTelepho- neNumber=%))
LDAP TLS Mode	Specify the connection mode between the LDAP Server and the IP Phone.	LDAPS
LDAP Server Address	Enter the LDAP Server ad- dress of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.	example.proxy1.test- .yeastarcloud.com
Port	Enter the LDAP Server port.	15019
LDAP User- name	Enter the username to log in to the LDAP Server.	cn=5566,ou=users,d- c=example,dc=prox- y1,dc=test,dc=yeast-
	PNote:	arcloud,dc=com

Setting	Description	Example
	Obtain the username from PBX on Contacts > LDAP Server > LDAP Credentials > LDAP Account Username.	
LDAP Pass- word	Enter the password to log in to the LDAP Server.	Regpwd123
	Note: The password is the registra- tion password of the user ex- tension.	
LDAP Base	Enter the Base DN obtained from PBX, which is used as the LDAP search base.	dc=example,d- c=proxy1,dc=test,d- c=yeastarcloud,d- c=com
Max Hits (1~1000)	Specify the maximum num- ber of search results to be re- turned by the LDAP Server.	50
LDAP Name Attributes	Specify the name attribut- es of each record to be re- turned by the LDAP Server. The user can configure multi- ple name attributes separat- ed by space.	displayName
LDAP Num- ber Attribut- es	Specify the number attribut- es of each record to be re- turned by the LDAP Server. The user can configure multi- ple number attributes.	telephoneNumber mobile homePhone
LDAP Dis- play Name	Specify the display name of the contact record displayed on the LCD screen.	%displayName
	F Note: This parameter must start with % symbol.	
Protocol	The LDAP protocol version. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edi- tion uses Version 3.	Version 3

Setting	Description	Example
LDAP Lookup for Incoming Call	Enable or disable IP phone to perform an LDAP search when receiving an incoming call.	Enabled
LDAP Lookup for Callout	Enable or disable IP phone to perform an LDAP search when placing a call.	Enabled
LDAP Sort- ing Results	Enable or disable IP phone to sort out search results in al- phabetical and numerical or- der.	Enabled

3. Click Confirm to apply the changes.

#### Result

Now you can directly check the contact information stored in the PBX from the IP phone.

#### Search contacts via Directory

Enable LDAP directory on Yealink phone

- 1. Log in to the Yealink phone web interface, go to Directory > Settings.
- 2. In the Directory section, add LDAP from the Disabled box to the Enabled box.

Directory ?			
Disabled	1/3	Enabled 2	
History		Local Directory	
🗹 LDAP 🚺		Remote Phone Book	
Blacklist		<	^
			~

3. Optional: In the Search Source List In Dialing section, add LDAP from the Disabled box to the Enabled box.

Search S	ource List In Dialing	?				
	Disabled	1/1			Enabled	3
	LDAP 1				Local Directory	
_					History	
			<		Remote Phone Book	
				2		

4. Click Confirm.

#### Search LDAP Contacts

1. On the IP phone, press Directory and enter the LDAP phonebook.

Directory	3/3
1. Local Directory	
2. Remote Phone Book	
3. PBX_Contacts	
Back	Enter

2. Search the contact name or number using the keypad.

The contacts whose name or phone number matching the characters entered will appear on the phone screen.

٩	8/18	
Troy Daniel troy@sample.com		
Kristin Hale	kristin@sample.com	
Naomi Nichols	naomi@sample.com	
Ashley Gardner	ashley@sample.com	
Back	Option Send	

- 3. Press the navigation key to select the desired contact.
- 4. Press Send to call the contact.

#### Search contacts via LDAP key

Set an LDAP Key on Yealink Phone

1. Log in to the Yealink phone web interface, go to DssKey > Line Key to configure a line key.

2. In the drop-down list of Type, select LDAP.



3. Click Confirm.

#### Search LDAP Contacts

1. Press the LDAP key to access the LDAP phonebook.

LDAP			
	11:3		
	Sat, Jan 08		
Leo Ball			
History	Directory	DND	Menu

2. Search the contact name or number using the keypad.

The contacts whose name or phone number matching the characters entered will appear on the phone screen.

۹	8/18		
Troy Daniel	troy@sample.com		
Kristin Hale	kristin@sample.com		
Naomi Nichols	naomi@sample.com		
Ashley Gardner	ashley@sample.com		
Back	Option Send		

- 3. Press the navigation key to select the desired contact.
- 4. Press Send to call the contact.

# Organization

### **Organization Overview**

Organizational structure is the group of rules, roles, relationships, and responsibilities that outline how your company's activities are directed to meet its goals. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides Organization feature to help you organize employees by department based on their specific skills and corresponding function in the company, and enjoy easier administration with department-level control.

#### Organization vs Extension Group

Yeastar provides Organization feature and Extension Group feature to help you categorize and manage extensions.

The following contents compare the advantages and differences between the two features.

#### Organization

Organization feature is used to define a hierarchy within a company, ideal for large companies with many departments and for those companies that attach more importance to separation of duties.

Organization feature helps you achieve the followings:

- Multi-layer departments, displayed in hierarchical tree structure.
- Flexible adjustments for departments, adapting to a changing business environment.
- Clear-cut reporting structure, clarifying the reporting relationships across the company and every individual's role and responsibilities.

#### **Extension Group**

Extension Group feature is used to categorize extensions with common function or purpose into the same group, ideal for companies that attach more importance to call management.

Extension Group feature helps you achieve the followings:

- Same-layer groups, displayed in strict alphabetical order.
- Group permission presets, realizing granular control over users' call permission.

• Preset permission on a per group basis: Preset different permissions for groups with different calling needs.

 Preset permission on a per user role basis: Split users into Manager/User/Custom roles and implement role-based permission assignment.

For more information about extension group, see Extension Group Overview.

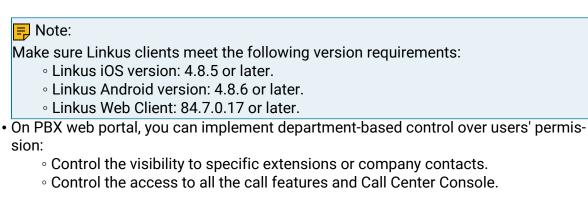
We provide the following figures to visualize the difference between Organization and Extension Group in display:



#### Organization application

After you enable Organization feature and set up departments, the followings can be achieved:

• On Linkus clients, extension users can search for and find colleagues by departments.





The access to Operator Panel is under the control of Extension Group, be the Organization feature enabled or not.

#### **Related information**

Enable or Disable Organization Management

### **Enable or Disable Organization Management**

You can enable or disable organization management feature based on your plan for company structure.

#### Enable organization management

To group extension users into departments, you need to enable the Organization Management feature.

Prerequisites

The version of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is 84.7.0.17 or later.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Preferences.
- 2. Turn on the option Organization Management.



3. In the Company Name field, enter your company name. The name will be used as the root organization.

Note:

If you have set up <u>company information</u>, the pre-defined company name is automatically synchronized here.

4. Click Save and Apply.

Result

The Organization Management feature is enabled.

What to do next

Create departments.

#### Disable organization management

#### Procedure

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Preferences.

2. Turn off the option Organization Management.



3. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

The Organization Management feature is disabled, which bring changes to the way that extensions are displayed and permissions that extensions have.

- On PBX web portal, the organizational tree and organizational configuration page are hidden; On Linkus clients, extension users are arranged in extension groups.
- Extension users have no access to the features that are granted to organizations.

### Set up Organizations

Organizational structure helps your company stay organized, improve communication and collaboration productively. This topic describes how to set up organizations.

Limits

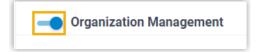
Maximum Number of Extensions (N)	N ≤50	50 < N ≤ 200	N > 200
Layers of Departments	15	15	15
Number of Departments	50	200	500

#### Prerequisites

The version of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is 84.7.0.17 or later.

#### Step 1. Enable Organization Management

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Preferences.
- 2. Turn on the option Organization Management.



3. In the Company Name field, enter your company name. The name will be used as the root organization.

Note:

If you have set up <u>company information</u>, the pre-defined company name is automatically synchronized here.

4. Click Save and Apply.

#### Step 2. Create departments

1. Go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > Organization.

The root organization (namely the company name) is displayed.

User Organization				
⊕ Add      ☐ Import     € Export     ☐ Delete			Search	Q
Name	Total Extensions	Sub-department	Operations	
Veastar	16 .		<b>∠</b>   +   ···	

2. Click + beside the root organization.

3. In the pop-up window, configure the following information, then click Save.

Add Department	Х
* Department Name	
Marketing Center	
* Parent Organization Layer	
Yeastar	$\sim$
	× Cancel 🔒 Save

- Department Name: Enter a department name.
- Parent Organization Layer: The root organization is automatically filled in.

#### Result

• The department is created. You can create more departments as the instructions provided above. In this way, the parent organization is auto filled instead of manually selected.

#### i Tip:

To select parent organization at you will when creating departments, you can click Add to create departments.

User	Organi	zation	
① Add	Himport	Export	Delete
Name			
•	Yeastar		

 On Linkus clients, users can see all the departments. To restrict users from viewing specific departments, see <u>Set up Extension Visibility</u>.

#### What to do next

Add Users to Organizations.

### Add Users to Organizations

After setting up organizations, you need to group users into departments. This topic describes how to add users to departments.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > User.
- 2. To add existing users to an organization, do as follows:

	User Organiza	ation				
	Search	Q	☲	Yeasta	ar 216 🗌 (	Check Only Direct Members
a	Yeastar	1		⊕ Ad	d 🗸 🖉 Edit	☐ Import         ☐ Export         ☐ Linkus Server         ☑ Welcome Email         ⓓ Delete
	<ul> <li>Marketing Center</li> </ul>	:			Online Status	P, C ≤ Bulk Edit
	<ul> <li>Research and De</li> </ul>	. :				Organizations
			b		17 =	Veastar
						Marketing Center     Research and Development Center
						• · · · · · ·
						G Save X Cancel

- a. On the left organizational tree, click root organization.
- b. On user list, select the checkboxes of desired extensions, then click Edit.
- c. In the User Information section, select the checkbox of Bulk Edit for organizations, then select desired departments.
- d. Click Save and Apply.
- 3. To add new users to an organization, do as follows:

User Organization	_							
Search Q E	Support Team 🙈 😋	User	Presence	Voicemail	Features	Advanced	Security	Linkus Clients
🔹 Yeastar 🛛 🗄 🕒	🕀 Add 🗸 🖉 Edit	Basic						
<ul> <li>Marketing Center</li> </ul>	Add Status		Trans					
a Support Team :	Bulk Add	Extension SIP Exte						~
Training Team :								
Marketing Team		User Info	ormation					
Research and De :		First Nam	e					
			Sandoval					
		Email Add	ress					
		tiffany@	sample.com					
		* User Pa	ssword					
		* Organiza Suppor	t Team ×					
		Extensio	n Information					
		* Extension	on Number					
	d	🕞 Save	× Cancel					

- a. On the left organizational tree, click a department.
- b. Click Add, then select Add to add an extension.
- c. Configure the extension as needed.

- Note:

Organization is auto filled with the one that you have selected.

d. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

Users are added to the specified departments. You can click a department to check all the associated members.

🚽 Note:

By default, when you click on a department, all the users within the department are displayed, be they belong to the parent department or the sub-departments. To hide the users of sub-departments, select the checkbox of Check Only Direct Members.

User	Organization		
Search	Q	Yeastar 🖄 🛃 C	check Only Direct Members
▼ Yeastar	:	🕀 Add \vee 🖉 Edit	Export

### Manage Users within Organizations

This topic describes how to change users' departments or remove users from departments when there are job changes of employees.

Change users' departments

You can change users' departments when some of them transfer jobs at your company.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > User.
- 2. To change a user's department, do as follows:

User Organization										
Search Q E	Marketin	g Center 🔗	9 🗌 Check On	y Direct Members						
▼ Yeastar :	(+) Add	🖌 🖉 Edit	E Linkus Serv	er 🕅 Welcome Email	뉍 Delete					Q
A Marketing Center :     Research and De :	c	Online Status	Presence 👙	Extension Number	Caller ID Name	Email Address 💠 🕴	Mobile Number 👙	Organization	Operation	s 🍸
· Research and be ;		ë 🖵 ]. 🚍	Available	2000	👰 Leo Ball	leo@sample.com		Support Team	∠ ₫	
			Lunch	* Organization Support Team ×				Support Team	2 🖻	
				Yeastar     Marketing Center     Marketing Center     Research and Device     Extension Number     2000     Registration Name     2000     IP Phone Concurrent Regi     1     Save × Cancel						

a. On the left organizational tree, click a desired department.

All the extensions within the department are displayed.

- b. Click desired extension.
  c. In the Organization field , change department as needed.

Note:

An extension must be associated with at least one department.

- d. Click Save and Apply.
- 3. To change multiple users' departments, do as follows:

#### - Note:

This is suitable for changing multiple users to the same department. To change multiple users to different departments, you need to proceed one by one as step2 instructs.

Search	Q	<u>ج</u> ۱	/easta	ar 2816 🗌 (	Check Only Direct Members
Yeastar	÷		(+) Ad	d 🗸 🖉 Edit	☐ Import ☐ Export ☐ Linkus Server ☑ Welcome Email
<ul> <li>Marketing Center</li> </ul>				Online Status	
<ul> <li>Research and De</li> </ul>	:				Organizations
		b		/2 🖵 . 📼	Veastar 😕
					Marketing Center
					Research and Development Center
					•

a. On the left organizational tree, click the root organization.

All the extensions within the organization are displayed.

b. Select the checkboxes of desired extensions, then click Edit.

The departments to which the extensions belong are cleared.

- c. Select the checkbox of Bulk Edit for organization, then reselect departments.
- d. Click Save and Apply.

#### Remove users from departments

You can remove users from departments when some of them leave their jobs.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > User.
- 2. To remove users from the same department, do as follows:

User Organization									
Search Q E	Suppo	rt Team 🙈 4	Check Only Direct Mer	nbers					
▼ Yeastar :	⊕ Ad	d ∨ 🖉 Edit	E Linkus Server	Welcome Er 🕝 🗇 Delete					Q
Marketing Center :     Support Team :		Online Status	Presence 👙	Extension Number   Caller ID Name	Email Address $\Leftrightarrow$ Mobile Number $\Leftrightarrow$	Organizat	ion	Operations	Y
Training Team		ie 🖵 . 🖴	Available		leo@sample.com	Support T	eam	2 🖻	
Marketing Team 🚦			Unch Break	? Are you sure to delete Terrell Smith, Dave Harris?	phillip@sample.com	Support T	eam	2 🗎	
Research and De			Available	х Са d v ок	terrell@sample.com	Support T	eam	2 🗇	
			Available	2003 🧕 Dave Harris	dave@sample.com	Support T	eam	2 🗇	

a. On the left organizational tree, click a desired department.

All the extensions within the department are displayed.

- b. Select the checkboxes of desired extensions, then click Delete.
- c. In the pop-up window, click OK.
- d. Click Apply.

The selected extensions are deleted from the system.

3. To remove users from different departments, do as follows:

User Organiza	ition									
Search	Q	<u>ج</u> ۱	Yeasta	ir &16 🗌 (	Check Only Direct Member	5				
Yeastar	÷		⊕ Ad	d 🗸 🖉 Edit	E Linkus Server	Welcome En	<b>茴</b> Delete		Search	م
<ul> <li>Marketing Center</li> <li>Support Team</li> </ul>				Online Status	Presence 👙	Extension Number	Caller ID Name	Email Address $\protect$ Mobile Number $\protect$	Organization	Operations <b>Y</b>
Training Team		b		II 🖓 . 🖽	Available	2000	👰 Leo Ball	leo@sample.com	Support Team	2 🗇
Marketing Tean	n :				Lunch Break			phillip@sample.com	Support Team	2 🗇
<ul> <li>Research and De</li> </ul>	. :				Available	? Are	rou sure to delete Leo Ball,Troy Daniel?	terreli@sample.com	Support Team	2
					Available		× Cat d v o	dave@sample.com	Support Team	2
					Unch Break	2004	🚱 Troy Daniel	troy@sample.com	Training Team	2 🖻
				i =	Available	2005	Kristin Hale	kristin@sample.com	Training Team	2 🖻

a. On the left organizational tree, click the root organization.

All the extensions within the organization are displayed.

b. Select the checkboxes of desired extensions, then click Delete.

- c. In the pop-up window, click OK.
- d. Click Apply.

The selected extensions are deleted from the system.

### Manage Organizations

To remain competitive or adapt to changes in the company, you may change organizational structure. This topic describes how to manage the organizations on PBX web portal.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > Organization.
- 2. To rename department or change parent organization, do as follows:

Name		Total Extensions	Sub-department	Operations
▼ □ Yeastar		16	Marketing Cente Research and De	∠ + +
▼		9	Support Team Training Team Marketing Team	⊿   +   …
Support Team	Edit (Support Team)		×	∠ +
(	Department Name Support Team Parent Organization Layer Marketing Center	× c4 <mark>0</mark> 🕞	Save	

- a. Click 🖉 beside the desired department.
- b. In the pop-up window, rename department or change parent organization layer. c. Click Save.
- 3. To adjust the order of departments, click • •, then select Move Up or Move Down to adjust the order.

Name	Total Extensions	Sub-department	Operations
▼ □ Yeastar	16	Marketing Cente Research and De	∠   <del>†</del>  …
▼ □ Marketing Center	9	Support Team Training Team Marketing Team	∠   +  …
Support Team	3		∠ + +
Training Team	3		<b>Z</b> + ····
Marketing Team	3		Move up     A  A     A
Research and Development Center	6	Testing Team Product and Des	业 Move down      ⊡ Delete Department

On PBX web portal and Linkus clients, departments are displayed in the new order. 4. To delete departments, do as follows:

#### - Note:

 If there are sub-departments under the departments that you want to delete, you need to delete the sub-departments first.

- After you delete departments, the extensions within the departments will not be deleted, but they have no access to the features that are granted to the departments, and they will be grouped into root organization if they only belong to the departments deleted.
- a. Select the checkboxes of desired departments, then click Delete.
- b. In the pop-up window, click OK.

Add 🕞 Import 🗧 Exp 🕑 🗇 Delete				
lame		Total Extensions	Sub-department	Operations
Yeastar		16	Marketing Cente Research and De	∠   +   …
▼		9	Support Team Training Team Marketing Team	∠   +   …
a Support Team	Are you sure to delete Support Team, Tr	aining		∠   +   …
Training Team	Team?	unnig		∠ + +
Marketing Team	× Car	<u> ок</u>		∠ + + + …
Research and Development Center		6	Testing Team Product and Des	/ + ····

### **Export and Import Organizations**

The organizations configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired organization information in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import organizations.

#### Export all organizations

You can export all the organizations to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > Organization.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Organization Parameters</u>.

#### Import organizations

We recommend that you export organization data to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters

• Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information, see <u>Organization Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension > Organization.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The organization data in the CSV file will be displayed in the Organization list.

# **Extension Group**

### **Extension Group Overview**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports to add specific extensions to a group, assign user types to these extensions, and grant permissions to extension users with different user types.

#### What is Extension Group

Extension group is a group that contains a number of extensions with a common function or purpose. Extension group is displayed on Linkus clients, which allows users to easily find a colleague within a group, and makes it possible for authorized users to control calls of members within a specific group on Linkus Web Client.

#### User types in an extension group

A user type is a permission set, which allows you to control users' access to and usage of Operator Panel. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides 3 user types. You can grant permissions to each user type and assign user types to group members.

Default user types

- Manager: Assign the user type to a leader, so that he or she can manage members' calls.
- User: Assign the user type to ordinary members. Any time you add members to a group, they are assigned with the user type by default.

The following table displays default permissions for Manager and User, you can change the permissions according to your needs. For more information, see <u>View or change permissions for managers and users</u>.

Module	Permission	Manager	User
	Switch group members' pres- ence	$\checkmark$	×
Operator Panel	Call distribution manage- ment (Redirect, Transfer, Drag and Drop operation)	$\checkmark$	×
	Pick up or hang up other ex- tensions' calls	$\checkmark$	×
	Call monitoring operations (Listen, Whisper, Barge-in)	$\checkmark$	×

Module	Permission	Manager	User
	Call parking operations (Park, Retrieve)	$\checkmark$	×
	Route calls directly from IVR regardless of the IVR menu	$\checkmark$	×
	Switch Business Hours and Holidays status	×	×
	Switch extension's recording status	×	×

#### Custom user type

Custom: If you want to grant permissions to a specific member, you can assign the user type to a desired member, and customize permissions.

For more information, see <u>View or change permissions for a member with custom user type</u>.

#### Default extension group

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition has a built-in group Default\_All\_Extensions that contains all the extensions on the PBX. Any time you create an extension, the extension will be automatically added to the extension group. You can delete the group, or create one or more groups according to your needs.

For more information, see <u>Create an Extension Group</u>.

### Create an Extension Group

This topic describes how to create an extension group.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group, click Add.
- 2. Configure basic settings for the extension group.
  - a. In the Name field, enter a group name to help you identify it.
  - b. In the Select Members drop-down list, set which extensions will be added to the group.
    - All Extensions: If you choose the option, all the extensions will be moved to the Selected box.

#### PNote:

ONLY one group that contains all the extensions is allowed.

• Specific extensions: If you choose the option, select the desired extensions from Available box to Selected box.

2 items		Available	6 items			Selecte
Search here		Q	Search here			Q
Extension Number	CallerID Name		Extension N	CallerID Na	User Type	Operations
1006	Nicole		1000	Becky	User	
3333	Sunmy Yeah		1001	Jerry	User	R

c. Assign user types for group members.

#### - Note:

Users of different user types have different permissions. For more information, see <u>User types in an extension group</u>.

- i. In the Selected box, click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired member.
- ii. In the pop-up window, configure the User Type and permissions.
  - If you select Manager or User, the member has all the permissions that are granted to the user type.

#### Note:

The permissions of Manager and User are pre-defined. To change the permissions, see <u>View or change permissions for managers and</u> <u>users</u>.

- If you select Custom, select the checkboxes of the desired permissions.
- iii. Click Save.
- 3. Click Save.

#### Result

- The extension group is displayed on Extension Group list.
- No one can view the group on Linkus clients. To allow specific users to view the group, see <u>Set up Extension Visibility</u>.

### Manage Extension Groups

This topic describes how to edit or delete extension groups.

#### Edit an extension group

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group, click *d* beside the desired group.
- 2. Change group settings according to your needs.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

Delete extension groups

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group.
- 2. To delete an extension group, do as follows:
  - a. Click 🛄 beside the desired group.
  - b. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.
  - c. Click Apply.
- 3. To delete extension groups in bulk, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the desired groups, click Delete.
  - b. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.
  - c. Click Apply.

The groups are removed from Extension Group list and are not displayed on Linkus clients.

### Assign a User Type to a Group Member

Members of different user types have different permissions. You can control members' access to specific features by assigning different user types in an extension group. This topic describes how to assign a user type to a group member.

#### Assign a default user type to a group member

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides two default user types: Manager and User, each of them has preset permissions. By assigning the two user types to members, you can bulk grant permissions to multiple members who share common responsibilities.

Prerequisites

Familiarize yourself with permissions of Manager and User in the desired group and change permissions according to your needs.

For more information, see <u>View or change permissions for managers and</u> <u>users</u>.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group, edit the desired extension group.
- 2. Assign Manager or User to a group member.
  - a. In the Members section, click  $\swarrow$  beside the desired member.
  - b. In the User Type drop-down list, select Manager or User according to your needs.
  - c. Click Confirm.

Result

The member's user type and permissions in the group are updated.

#### Assign a custom user type to a group member

If you want a member to have different permissions from members with default user types, you can assign a custom user type to a desired member, and customize permissions.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group, edit the desired extension group.
- 2. Assign Custom to a group member, and grant permissions to the member according to your needs.
  - a. In the Members section, click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired member.
  - b. In the User Type drop-down list, select Custom.
  - c. Select the checkboxes of the desired permissions.
  - d. Click Confirm.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

Result

The member's user type and permissions in the group are updated.

# View or Change a Member's User Type in Multiple Groups

If an extension user plays different roles in different extension groups, you can quickly view or change multiple user types of the extension user without having to go to each group to view or assign the user types. This topic describes how to view or change a member's user type in multiple groups.

## View a member's user type in multiple groups

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, click 🖉 beside desired extension.
- 2. Click Linkus Clients tab.
- 3. In the Operator Panelsection, you can see all the groups to which the extension user belongs. Check the user's user type in each group in User Type column.

User	Presence	Voicemail	Features	Advanced	Security	Linkus Clients	Phone	Function Keys		
-• Li	inkus Mobile (	Client								闘 Login QR Cod
- Li	inkus Desktop	Client								
- Li	inkus Web Clie	ent								
Operator										
		Extension Group				User Type			Operations	
		Default_All_Extension	s			Manager			2	
		R&D				User			2 💼	

## Change a member's user type in multiple groups

The permissions of Manager and User vary from one group to another. Make sure you change permissions for the right group.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, click
  - beside desired extension.
- 2. Click Linkus Clients tab.
- 3. In the Operator Panel section, change the extension user's user type in a group.
  - a. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired extension group.
  - b. In the User Type drop-down list, select a user type.
    - If you select Manager or User, the user has all the permissions that are granted to the user type.
    - If you select Custom, select the checkboxes of the desired permissions.

			able∨		🗏 💽 💽 Leo
	Add	Х			
ension and Trunk					
	* Extension Group				
< User	Sales Team	$\sim$	1	Linkus Clients	Phone >
	* User Type				
- Linku	Manager	~			朙 Login QR Code
	Manager				
- Linku	User				Contraction Link
- Linku	Custom	1)			
	Pick up or hang up other extensions' calls				
Operator Par	Call monitoring operations (Listen, Whisper, Barge-in)				
(+) Add	Call parking operations (Park, Retrieve)				
	Route calls directly from IVR regardless of the IVR menu			Operatio	ne
	Switch Business Hours and Holidays status				110
	Switch extensions' recording status			2	
	× Cancel	Save		// 品	

c. Click Confirm.

- 4. Repeat Step4 to assign user types for the extension in more groups.
- 5. Click Save.

#### Result

The user's user types and permissions in different groups are updated accordingly.

#### **Related information**

Assign a User Type to a Group Member

# View or Change Permissions for Group Members

This topic describes how to view or change permissions for group members.

View or change permissions for managers and users

If members are assigned Manager or User in a group, all the members with the same user type have the same permissions. You can view the permissions of managers and users within a specific group, and change permissions according to your needs.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group, edit the desired extension group.
- 2. Click Group Permissions tab.

You can view the permissions that are granted to Manager and User in the group.

- 3. To change permissions, do as follows:
  - a. Select or unselect the checkboxes of corresponding permissions for Manager and User.

b. Click Save and Apply.

Result

The permissions of all the managers and users in the group are updated in a batch.

What to do next

If you want to change members' user types to Manager or User in the group, see <u>Assign a default user type to a group member</u>.

View or change permissions for a member with custom user type

For members with Custom user type assigned, permissions may vary from one member to another. You can view or change permissions for a specific member according to your needs.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group, edit the desired extension group.
- 2. In the Members section, click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired member whose user type is Custom.

Basic Group Permissions				
Members				
* Select Members				
Specific Extensions		$\vee$		
11 items	Available		5 items	Selected
11 items Search here	Available		5 items Search here	Selected
				Q

- a. In the pop-up window, select or unselect the checkboxes of the desired permissions for the user.
- b. Click Confirm.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

The member's permissions are updated.

# **Auto Provisioning**

# Auto Provisioning Overview

Auto Provisioning is a time-saving feature that helps you to manage and deploy IP phones centrally on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. The process of configuring and managing IP phones is simplified, which makes deployment and management of devices fast and convenient.

## Auto Provisioning supported devices

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports various models for Auto Provisioning.

Find the <u>Auto Provisioning - Supported Devices</u> before you start deploying devices.

#### Auto Provisioning methods

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports an RPS method to help you provision your IP phones.

RPS

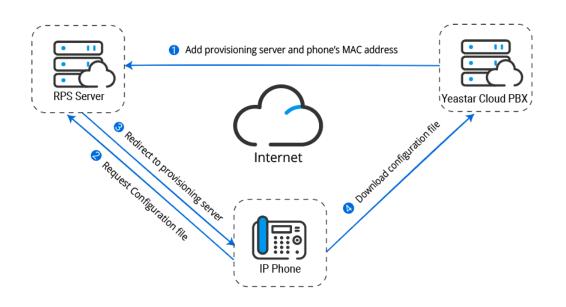
RPS method supports auto provisioning remote IP phones

For more information, see Auto Provision IP Phones.

## How Auto Provisioning works

This section introduces how the RPS Auto Provisioning method works with IP phones and the PBX, which can help you understand the operating principle and locate the Auto Provisioning problem rapidly.

**RPS** Provisioning



- 1. After you add a phone's MAC address to the PBX, the phone's MAC address and provisioning server (PBX) are automatically added to the phone manufacture's RPS server.
- 2. When the IP phone boots up, it sends a request to the RPS server, asking for a configuration file.
- 3. The RPS server redirects the phone to visit the provisioning server (PBX).
- 4. The IP phone downloads its configuration file from the provisioning server (PBX), and applies the configuration.

# **Provision IP Phones**

# Auto Provision IP Phones

This topic introduces how to deploy and update IP phones via auto provisioning, which can greatly save time and cost in mass deployment.

#### Supported IP phones

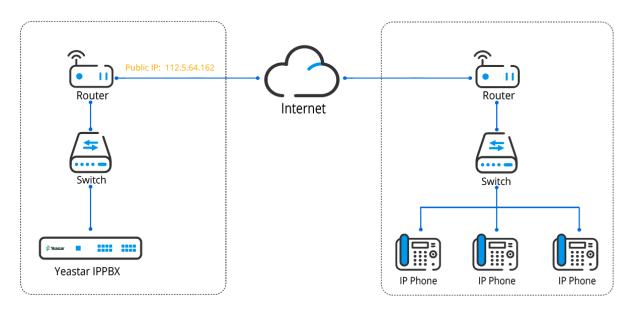
This topic can be applied to all the IP phones listed in <u>Auto Provisioning - Supported De-</u><u>vices</u>.

#### Prerequisites

• Gather information of IP phone, including Vendor, Model, and MAC address.

## Scenario

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition and IP phones are deployed in different networks. The PBX is behind a router and port forwarding is configured on the router.



## Procedure

<u>Step1. Generate configuration file for an IP phone on the PBX</u> Step2. Reboot the IP phone to obtain the configuration file

Step1. Generate configuration file for an IP phone on the PBX

- 1. RESET the phone if it is previously used.
- 2. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- 3. Click Add to add an IP phone.
- 4. In the IP Phone section, configure phone information as follows:
  - Vendor: Select a phone vendor.
  - Model: Select a phone model.
  - MAC Address: Enter MAC address of the phone.
- 5. In the Options section, configure the following settings.
  - Template: Select a desired template from the drop-down list.

## PNote:

The template provides configurations except extension assignment. You can select the default template corresponding to the phone model, or customize your own template. For more information, see <u>Create a Custom Auto Provision-ing Template</u>.

Troubleshooting:

- Provisioning Link: A provisioning server URL is generated automatically and displayed on the web page.
- Authentication for the First-time Auto Provisioning: If enabled, users are requested to fill in authentication information on the IP phones before triggering the first-time provisioning.

#### Pote:

We recommend that you keep this option selected for security purpose. 6. In the Assign Extension section, assign an extension to the phone.

#### 👔 Tip:

If your desired extension is not listed in the drop-down list, you can check if the extension has been associated with other IP phone.

- To release the previous phone, see <u>Release an Extension from a Provisioned IP</u> <u>Phone</u>.
- To associate an extension with multiple IP phones, see <u>Allow Multiple Registra-</u> tions for One Extension Number.
- 7. Click Save.

A configuration file for the phone is generated in the PBX.

The PBX will send an event notification of RPS Request Success, which means that the phone MAC is added automatically to the RPS server.

Step2. Reboot the IP phone to obtain the configuration file

- 1. Reboot the IP phone.
- 2. If you have enabled Authentication for the First-time Auto Provisioning on the PBX, enter the authentication credential on the IP phone to finish phone provisioning.

Invalid	l Provisio	oning Cred	lential
Username	:		
Password			
Back	2aB	Delete	ОК

- Username: Enter the extension number that is assigned to the phone.
- Password: Enter the extension's Voicemail Access PIN.

#### - Note:

Check the Voicemail Access PIN in the Voicemail tab on the extension configuration page.

#### Result

The extension registration status of provisioned phones is displayed on Auto Provisioning > Phones.

- $\stackrel{\text{Q}}{\sim}$ : The assigned extension is registered on the phone.
- $\overset{\mathsf{O}}{\leftarrow}$ : The assigned extension is unregistered on the phone.

(+) Add	🖌 🖉 Edit	O Reprovision	Reboot     A Firmw	vare Upgrade 🛅 Delete							Search		٩
	Status	Extension	Name	Vendor 💠	Model \$	IP Address 👙	Phone Password	Template	Firmware Version	Address	ess ¢	Operations	Y
	2	1002	1002	Yealink	SIP-T53W		-	Docs_Test	-	80:5e:c0:4	c:ab:0c	<b>2</b>   <b>0</b>   <b>0</b>	~

# **Provision IP Phones on Multiple Servers**

When you want to conduct IP phone diagnostics and manage the IP phones on the Yealink device management platform, and assign extension, supply configuration files and upgrade device firmware for the IP phones on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, you can provision the IP phones on both servers.

#### **Applications**

This topic is applied to the remote deployment of Yealink IP phones.

#### Prerequisites

You have an account of the Yealink Device Management Platform.

#### Procedure

Step1. Add IP phones on Yealink Device Management Platform

#### 🚽 Note:

If the IP phone is already added to the PBX, you need to remove it from PBX first.

- Step2. Add IP phones on the PBX
- <u>Step3. Configure global Auto Provisioning URL on Yealink Device Management Plat-</u> form

## Add IP phones on Yealink device management platform

- 1. Log in to the <u>Yealink Device Management Platform</u>.
- 2. Go to Device Management > Phone Device, click Add device to add a phone.
  - a. Complete the following configurations.

Device Na	ame:	
my_ip_p	hone1	
* Site:		
DM_Tes	ting	$\sim$
* Model:		
SIP-T53	W	$\sim$
* MAC:		
805ec04	4cab0c	
* Machine	9 ID: ①	
201087		
20100/1	8013200547	
201007	8013200547	
	0013200547	
	punt (Up to 0)	
Bind Acco	punt (Up to 0) Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC	
Bind Acco	ount (Up to 0)	
Bind Acco	punt (Up to 0) Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC	
Bind Acco	punt (Up to 0) Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC	
Bind Acco	Dunt (Up to 0) Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC ize to RPS: ①	
Bind Accc + Add Synchroni	punt (Up to 0) Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC ize to RPS: ①	~
Bind Accc + Add Synchroni	punt (Up to 0) Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC ize to RPS: ①	~
Bind Accc + Add Synchroni Server na Please s	punt (Up to 0) Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC ize to RPS: ①	~
Bind Acco + Add Synchroni Server na Please s Unique Se	elect	~
Bind Acco + Add Synchroni Server na Please s Unique Se	Dunt (Up to 0)   Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC   ize to RPS: ①    me:  relect enver URL:	~
Bind Acco + Add Synchroni Server na Please s Unique Se	Dunt (Up to 0)   Before you add account, please enter the correct MAC   ize to RPS: ① me: elect enver URL: enver URL:	~

- Device Name: Specify a device name.
- Site: Select a site in the drop-down list.
- Model: Select the phone model in the drop-down list.

- MAC: Enter the MAC address of the IP phone.
- Machine ID: Enter the serial number of the IP phone.
- Synchronize to RPS: Enable this feature to synchronize the IP phone to RPS server.

b. Click OK.

3. Reboot the IP phone.

The phone is connected to the Device Management Platform, and the status displays "Online" on the platform.

Γ	0 sele	cted Delete Site Settings	Update Configuration File	Update Firmware	Update Resource File	Auto Update Diagons	stics 🔻 More			
		MAC \$	Model ‡ 🗸	Public IP	Private IP	Firmware Version $\Rightarrow$ $\sim$	Status 🗸	Account Status $\smallsetminus$	Site $\sim$	Operation T
		805ec04cab0c	SIP-T53W	112.5.64.162	192.168.66.59	96.85.0.5	Online		DM_Testing	R 2 0

Configure global Auto Provisioning URL on Yealink Device Management Platform

- 1. Log in to <u>'Yealink Device Management Platform</u>.
- 2. Go to Device Configuration > Global Parameter Settings.
- 3. Paste the PBX provisioning link in the Auto Provisioning URL.

Options		Yeastar Cloud PBX Auto Provisioning page
* Template		Provisioning Link
YSDP_YealinkT5	$\vee$	https:// .yeastarcloud.com:443/api/autoprovision/cXgpdRRjv0LtKs74
Authentication for the First-time Auto Provisioning	Global Paramete	r Settings
	Auto Provisioning L https://docs.test.ye	JRL estarcloud.com:443/api/autoprovision/cXgpdRRjyOLtKs74

- 4. Click Save and update.
- 5. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK to update the settings.

## Manually Provision IP Phones

If you fail to auto provision IP phones, you can manually add the provisioning link into the phone's web interface.

#### Supported IP phones

This topic can be applied to all the IP phones listed in <u>Auto Provisioning - Supported De-</u><u>vices</u>.

#### Prerequisites

- Gather information of IP phone, including Vendor, Model, and MAC address.
- RESET the phones if they are previously used.

## Procedure

- <u>Step1. Add phone's MAC address on the PBX</u>
- Step2. Configure provisioning server address on the phone

#### Step1. Add phone's MAC address on the PBX

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- 2. Click Add to add phone(s) to the PBX.
- 3. In the IP Phone section, configure phone information as follows:
  - Vendor: Select a phone vendor.
  - Model: Select a phone model.
  - MAC Address: Enter MAC address of each phone. Each on a separate line.
- 4. In the Options section, configure the auto provision settings.
  - Template: Select a desired template from the drop-down list.

#### - Note:

The template provides configurations except extension assignment. You can select the default template corresponding to the phone model, or customize your own template. For more information, see <u>Create a Custom Auto Provisioning Template</u>.

• Provisioning Link: A provisioning server URL is generated automatically and displayed on the web page.

#### PNote:

Take note of the generated provisioning link, you will use it later.

5. In the Assign Extension section, assign an extension to each phone.

#### i Tip:

If your desired extension is not listed in the drop-down list, you can check if the extension has been associated with other IP phone.

- To release the previous phone, see <u>Release an Extension from a Provisioned IP</u> <u>Phone</u>.
- To associate an extension with multiple IP phones, see <u>Allow Multiple Registra-</u> tions for One Extension Number.
- 6. Click Save.

A configuration file for the phone is generated in the PBX.

Step2. Configure provisioning server address on the phone

Here takes the Yealink SIP-T53W IP phone as an example.

1. On the IP phone, go to Menu > Status, check the IP address of the IP phone on the IPv4 field.

- 2. Log in to the IP phone web page by the IP address, go to Settings > Auto Provision.
- 3. In the Server URL field, paste the PBX provisioning link, followed by the configuration file for the phone.

For example, https://docs.test.yeastarcloud.com:443/api/autoprovision/cXg-pdRRjv0LtKs74/805ec04cab0c.cfg

(2)	Network	~				
	Notion			Oefault password is in use. Please change!		
•	Dsskey	~	,	Auto Provision		
ų	Features	~		PNP Active		?
٥	Settings	^		DHCP Active		?
	Preference			IPv4 Custom Option		?
	Time&Date			IPv4 DHCP Option Value	yealink	?
	Call Display			IPv6 Custom Option		?
	Upgrade			Server URL	https://docs.test.yeastarcloud.com:4	0
	Auto Provision			Username		?
	Configuration					

- 4. Scroll down to the bottom, click Auto Provision Now.
- 5. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK to auto provision the IP phone.

#### Result

The IP phone downloads the configuration file from the PBX, and applies the configurations automatically.

# Manage Provisioned Devices

## **Reboot Provisioned IP Phones**

For some settings that need a device reboot to take effect, you can reboot the device remotely on PBX web portal if these devices have been auto provisioned on PBX.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- 2. Reboot phones according to your needs:

- To reboot a phone, hover your mouse over  $\checkmark$  beside the desired phone, and click Reboot.
- To reboot phones in bulk, select the checkboxes of desired phones, and click Reboot.

The system prompts you whether to reboot the phones.

3. Click OK.

# Reassign an Extension to a Provisioned IP Phone

If a phone is previously provisioned but the phone owner has been changed, you can reassign an extension to the provisioned phone.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones, edit the desired phone.
- 2. In the Assign Extension section, select a desired extension.

🕡 Tip:

If your desired extension is not listed in the drop-down list, you can check if the extension has been associated with other IP phone.

- To release the previous phone, see <u>Release an Extension from a Provisioned IP</u> <u>Phone</u>.
- To associate an extension with multiple IP phones, see <u>Allow Multiple Registra-</u> tions for One Extension Number.
- 3. Click Save.

## Result

The extension is automatically registered on the phone, and configurations in the selected template are applied to the phone.

# Release an Extension from a Provisioned IP Phone

When an employee resigns or doesn't need the device that is currently bound with the employee's extension, you can release the employee's extension from the device. This topic describes how to release an extension from a provisioned device.

## Procedure

- 1. Release the extension from previous phone.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit a desired extension.
  - b. Click the Phone tab.
  - c. Click Release From Phone and Yes.

d. Click Save.

The extension is released from the phone.

2. Reprovision the phone to de-register the extension.

Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones, click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone from which you want to release extension.

## **Remove IP Phones from Provisioning List**

The provisioning list always displays all the devices that are discovered. For the out-of-use devices, you can remove them from the phone provisioning list manually.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- 2. Remove phones according to your needs:
  - To remove a phone, hover your mouse over  $\stackrel{\checkmark}{}$  beside the desired phone, and click Delete.
  - To remove phones in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired phones, and click Delete.
- 3. Click OK.

#### Result

The system erases all configuration files for the phone and releases the assigned extension.

# **Auto Provisioning Options**

# **IP Phone Auto Provisioning Options**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides a variety of Auto Provisioning options for IP phones that can meet general needs for end users. This topic introduces the settings that can be configured via Auto Provisioning.

#### General settings (preferences & codecs)

General settings provide the most common needs for extension users, such as phone language, date and time, etc. These settings can be auto provisioned by a template, so that the settings can be applied to multiple devices globally.

For more information, see <u>Apply a New Template to a Provisioned IP Phone</u>.

## Extension registration

An extension will be registered on the device after Auto Provisioning. If you change extension registration settings (such as registration password, registration name), you need to reprovision your devices.

#### PNote:

Limit of extension registration

- For IP phone: Only one extension can be assigned to a phone via Auto Provisioning.
- For DECT phone: Each handset registers with an extension via Auto Provisioning.

For more information, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> and <u>Reassign an Extension to a Provi</u>sioned IP Phone.

## Function key

Various function keys are available for you to customize for each extension user, such as BLF, speed dial, etc. The function keys are associated with extensions, and can be applied when auto provisioning phones.

For more information about the function keys, see Auto Provision Function Keys for Phones.

#### Device firmware

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to update the device firmware in bulk by Auto Provisioning.

For more information about firmware update, see <u>Update Phone Firmware via Auto Provisioning</u>.

## Additional settings

In addition to the above settings, if you need to configure additional settings for the devices, you can also customize a template with additional parameters, and provision devices globally to apply the additional settings.

For more information, see Create a Custom Auto Provisioning Template.

# Auto Provision Function Keys for Phones

Each extension user can set his or her own function keys. These function keys can be applied to auto-provisioned IP phones, Linkus Web Client, and Chrome extension 'Yeastar Linkus for Google'. This topic describes how to provision function keys for extension users.

## Supported key types

The following table lists the function keys that you can assign for an extension user:

Key type	Function					
N/A	No functionality.					
Line	Configure line keys for IP phone.					
	Note: The key type Line is only available for IP phones.					
BLF	<ul> <li>Extension         <ul> <li>Monitor the call status of a specific extension.</li> <li>Monitor the DND (Do Not Disturb) presence of a specific extension.</li> <li>Place a call to the monitored extension.</li> <li>Pick up calls ringing on the monitored extension.</li> </ul> </li> <li>For more information about configuration, see Monitor Extension Status by BLF Key.</li> <li>Trunk</li> </ul>					
	<ul> <li>Monitor the status of a specific trunk.</li> <li>Place an outbound call through the monitored trunk.</li> <li>For more information about configuration, see <u>Seize a</u> <u>Trunk to Call Out by BLF Key</u>.</li> </ul>					
Speed Dial	Place a call to the most commonly dialed numbers or extensions.					
Check Voicemail	<ul> <li>Monitor the status of voicemail.</li> <li>Check voicemail messages.</li> </ul>					
Check Group Voice- mail	<ul> <li>Monitor the status of group voicemail in shared mode.</li> <li>Check group voicemail messages.</li> </ul>					
Park & Retrieve	<ul> <li>Monitor the status of a specific parking number.</li> <li>Park a call on a specific parking number.</li> <li>Retrieve a parked call from a specific parking number.</li> </ul>					
Intercom	Place an intercom call to the monitored extension to make an announcement.					
DTMF	Send DTMF signals directly instead of manually entering the numbers each time.					
Agent Login/Lo- gout	<ul> <li>Monitor login status in a specific queue.</li> <li>Log in to or log out of a specific queue.</li> </ul>					
Agent Pause/Un- pause	<ul> <li>Monitor service status in a specific queue.</li> <li>Pause or unpause receiving a call from a specific queue.</li> </ul>					
LDAP Directory	Quickly access the LDAP phonebook to query contact informa- tion on IP phones.					

Key type	Function
	Note: The key type LDAP Directory is only available for IP phones.

#### Procedure

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for a specific extension user, click  $\swarrow$  beside the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for multiple extensions, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, and click Edit.
  - b. Click the Function Keys tab.
  - c. Configure function keys.

## Pote:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

- Type: Select a key type.
- Value: Configure a desired value based on the key type, such as parking number, queue, or extension.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- d. Click Save.
- 2. If the extensions haven't been associated with phones, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> to bind phones with the extensions.
- 3. If the extensions have been associated with phones, reprovision the phones to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. To reprovision a phone, click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension user.
  - c. To reprovision multiple phones, select the checkboxes of the desired phones, click Reprovision.

## Result

The phone automatically applies the changes. Check the function key status on the phone to see if the changes are applied.

# Modify a Provisioned Phone Settings

Centralized provisioning enables you to configure phones with the same settings, you can also customize settings for a specific phone after provisioning. This topic describes how to modify general settings for an IP phone and a DECT phone.

#### Modify settings of a provisioned IP phone

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Modify the phone that is associated with the extension.
  - a. Click the Phone tab.
  - b. Modify phone settings in the Preference and Codecs sections.
  - c. Click Save.

#### - Note:

If you want to change other settings, click the phone IP address displayed on the provisioning list to access the phone web interface, and change the configurations as your need.

- 3. Reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.

b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to the extension user.

The phone automatically applies the changes.

## Modify settings of a provisioned DECT phone

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones, edit a desired DECT phone.
- 2. Modify phone settings in the Preference and Codecs sections, and click Save.
- 3. On the phone provisioning list, click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the desired DECT phone to reprovision the phone.

The phone automatically applies the changes.

# Manage Auto Provisioning Templates

# Apply a New Template to a Provisioned IP Phone

If you want to customize a device, you can create a custom template and apply the new template to the IP phone.

## Prerequisites

Create a custom Auto Provisioning template.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones, edit the desired phones.
- 2. In the Options section, select a desired template from the Template drop-down list.
- 3. Click Save.

## Result

The configurations in the new template will be applied automatically to the phone.

**Related information** 

Update Auto Provisioning template(s) to all applicable devices

# View a Default Auto Provisioning Template

The default template of different models contains different parameters, you can view what configurations are included in the default template. This topic describes how to search and view a default template.

#### **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides various default templates for each supported device. Devices of different models may share the same template. For example, the template <code>YSDP\_YealinkT5xS</code> of Yealink applies to Yealink T52S and T54S.

The value of default template

The default template contains general settings that are pre-defined based on device model. There are two types of parameter value in the template: variables and absolute value.

- Variables: Variables are attributes to which various values can be assigned. A variable starts with {{ ., and ends with }}. For example, {{.PhoneWebLanguage}} means a variable of Phone Web Language setting. The phone web language varies on each phone according to specific phone configuration.
- Absolute value: Absolute is a fixed value that applies to all devices that use this template. For example, features.dtmf.hide\_delay = 1 means setting the parameter value to 1 (Enabled).

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository.
- 2. Select a device vendor or enter a keyword.

You can search the template by vendor, provisioning template name, or device model. The search results are displayed automatically on the web page.

Default Templ	ates Custom Tem	plates Device Fi	rmware		
🛱 Check for Ne	ew Template			Vendor	∨ Search C
Vendor 💠	Template Name 👙	Online Version 👙	Local Version 👙	Supported Model 👙	Operations
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT5	1.0.3 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T53 SIP-T53W SIP-T5	54W 🛃   🗘   🖯
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT29	1.0.1 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T29G	$\overline{\mathbb{R}} \mid \phi \mid \Theta$
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT3	1.0.1 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T30 SIP-T30P SIP-T3	1 🖳 🖓 🖓
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT4	1.0.1 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T41S SIP-T42S SIP-T	46S 💽 🗘 🖸
Yealink	YSDP_FanvilX3U	1.0.0	1.0.0	X1S X1SG X3SG	$\mathbf{R} \mid \Diamond \mid \mathbf{O}$

- 3. Click 🗟 beside the desired template to view the default configurations. The following figure shows a default template of Yealink T56A. The default template consists of two parts:
  - Configuration parameters in Default Template: The pre-defined configuration parameters in this template are displayed in the first text box.
  - Function keys of device model: The pre-defined function keys supported by the device model are displayed in the second text box.

You can click the device model tab to view the supported keys.

figuration	Parameters in	Default Templa	ate			
ocal_time.s ocal_time.r ocal_time.t ocal_time.t ocal_time.t ransfer.dss eatures.dtr eatures.dtr	summer_time = htp_server1 = { htp_server2 = { time_format = date_format = skey_deal_type	= {{.DaylightSan {{.PrimaryNtpSe {{.SecondaryNt {{.TimeFormat} {{.DateFormat} {{.DateFormat} = = {{.TransferM ppressDtmfDis = 1	ving l ime}} erver}} pServer}} } } } lodeViaDsskey	/}}		
configurat		rs below are us emplate: {{.Fun SIP-T46S	<u> </u>	2	s, which will de SIP-T42U	fine the value SIP-T43U
IP-T46U	SIP-T48U	]				
inekey.1.lin	pe = {{.Functione = {.Functione = {Functione = {F			onkeyValue_1}	}	

#### **Related information**

<u>Create a Custom Auto Provisioning Template</u> <u>Manage Custom Auto Provisioning Templates</u>

# Update a Default Auto Provisioning Template

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition regularly provides new template versions to release new features and fix bugs. You can check if a new template is available, and decide whether to update the default template. This topic describes how to update a default template.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository.
- 2. Click Check for New Template to obtain the new template.
- 3. If a new template is detected, click  $\bigcirc$  to download the new template.

Default Templ	ates Custom Tem	plates Device Fi	irmware			
🔁 Check for Ne	ew Template			Vendor	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	Search C
Vendor 💠	Template Name 👙	Online Version 👙	Local Version 👙	Supported Model 👙		Operations
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT5	1.0.3 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T53 SIP-T53W	SIP-T54W	
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT29	1.0.1 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T29G		$\overline{\mathbb{R}} \mid \Phi \mid \Theta$
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT3	1.0.1 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T30 SIP-T30P	SIP-T31	
Yealink	YSDP_YealinkT4	1.0.1 New!	1.0.0	SIP-T41S SIP-T42S	SIP-T46S	■ 0
Yealink	YSDP_FanvilX3U	1.0.0	1.0.0	X1S X1SG X3SG		R   4   0

4. Click  $\overline{\mathbf{a}}$  beside the desired template to view the default configurations.

For more information, see <u>View a Default Auto Provisioning Template</u>.

#### What to do next

To apply the new template to the devices that have been auto provisioned by the same template with previous version, click  $\Theta$ .

# Create a Custom Auto Provisioning Template

If you want to customize the general settings defined in a default provisioning template, or you want to add custom parameters, you can create a custom Auto Provisioning template. This topic describes how to create a custom Auto Provisioning template.

#### **Background information**

Custom template allows you to customize device settings. You can easily modify and apply the custom template to a group of devices, or an individual device.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides two types of custom template:

- Basic Custom Template: Allow you to customize the parameters provided in the default template.
- Advanced Custom Template: Allow you to customize parameters provided in the default template, and add additional parameters for the desired phones.

Note:

Contact your vendor to make sure that the added parameters are supported.

#### Create a Auto Provisioning basic template

If you want to customize the settings that are defined in a default provisioning template, you can create a basic Auto Provisioning template.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Custom Templates.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. In the Basic section, set basic information.
  - Template Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Source Default Template: Select a default provisioning template to customize.
  - Template Type: Select Basic.

The general settings that the source default template provides will be displayed in the Preference, Distinctive Ringtone, and Codecs sections.

- Remark: Optional. Enter a short description about this template.
- 4. In the Preference section, modify the preference settings that are provided by the source default template.
- 5. In the Codecs section, select a desired codec according to your needs.
- 6. Click Save.

#### Create an advanced Auto Provisioning template

If the settings that you want to configure for your devices are not defined in the default provisioning template, you can create an advanced Auto Provisioning template.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Custom Templates.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. In the Basic section, set the basic information.
  - Template Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Source Default Template: Select a default template to customize.
  - Template Type: Select Advanced.

The general settings that the source default template provides will be displayed in the Preference, Distinctive Ringtone, and Codecs sections; A text box containing all configuration parameters will be displayed in the Customize Configuration Parameters In Text section.

- Remark: Optional. Enter a short description about this template.
- 4. In the Preference section, modify the preference settings that are provided by the source default template.
- 5. In the Codecs section, select a desired codec according to your needs.
- 6. Add additional parameters that are not provided by the source default template.

- Note:

The general settings defined in source default template are assigned with variables. The variable that starts with { { . and ends with } } is associated with the configuration that can be configured on Preference, Codecs, and <u>Function Keys</u> sections. Please don't change the variable if you want to modify the settings from PBX web portal.

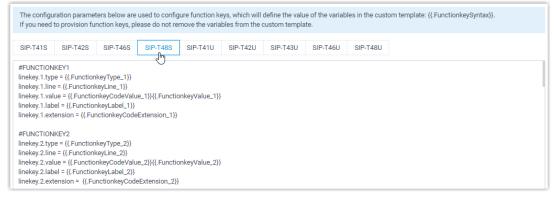
a. In the Customize Configuration Parameters In Text section, add your configuration parameters in the first text box.

#### Note:

Contact your vendor to make sure that the parameters are supported for the device model.

b. In the second text box, select which function keys to be applied according to the phone model.

You can also add your function key parameters in the second text box.



#### 7. Click Save.

#### **Related information**

Edit a custom Auto Provisioning template Update Auto Provisioning template(s) to all applicable devices

## Manage Custom Auto Provisioning Templates

This topic describes how to edit or delete custom Auto Provisioning templates.

#### Edit a custom Auto Provisioning template

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Custom Templates.
- 2. Click *d* beside a desired custom template.
- 3. Modify the device settings.
- 4. Click Save.

The system prompts you whether to update the new configurations to devices that use this template.

- Yes: The system generates new configuration files and immediately triggers provisioning for all devices that use this template.
- No: The system saves the changes to this template, and generates new configuration files for all devices that use this template. You can trigger provisioning manually for specific devices later.

Delete custom Auto Provisioning templates

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Custom Templates.
- 2. Delete custom templates according to your needs.
  - To delete a custom template, click  $\stackrel{[]}{=}$  beside the desired template.
  - To delete custom templates in bulk, select the checkboxes of desired templates, click Delete.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click Yes.

If the template is in use, you need to release it from the devices that use the template first.

Update Auto Provisioning template(s) to all applicable devices

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Custom Templates.
- 2. Update the configurations to the devices:
  - To update the configuration of a specific template, click  $^{\bigcirc}$  beside the desired template.
  - To update the configuration of multiple templates, select the checkboxes of desired templates, click Update to Device.
- 3. Click Yes to trigger phone provisioning.

# Manage IP Phone Firmware

# Update Phone Firmware via Auto Provisioning

This topic describes how to update phone firmware via Auto Provisioning.

## Prerequisites

Upload the desired phone firmware to PBX. For more information, see <u>Add a device</u> <u>firmware</u>.

#### Update firmware to all applicable phones

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Device Firmware.
- 2. Click  $^{\bigcirc}$  beside the desired firmware.
- 3. Click Yes to upgrade the phones.

#### Update firmware to specific phones

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- 2. Select the checkboxes of the desired phones.
- 3. Click Firmware Upgrade.
- 4. Select the firmware that you want to upgrade, click Upgrade Now.

#### Result

The phones automatically reboot and update their firmwares to the new version.

# Manage Device Firmware Files

This topic describes how to manage device firmwares, including add, edit, and delete device firmware files.

## Add a device firmware file

You can upload up to three device firmware files to PBX server.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Device Firmware, click Add.
- 2. In the Device section, select a firmware vendor and device model.
- 3. In the Firmware section, upload the firmware.
  - Firmware Version: Enter a name (firmware version) to help you identify it.
  - Upload Firmware File: Click Browse and select the corresponding firmware.
  - Remark: Optional. Enter a short description about the firmware.
- 4. Click Save.

The uploaded firmware is displayed on the Device Firmware list. When you update phone firmware, the uploaded firmware can be detected and displayed for you to choose.

#### Edit a device firmware file

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Device Firmware.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired firmware.

- 3. In the Firmware section, edit the firmware information or update the firmware file.
  - Firmware Version: Enter a name (firmware version) to help you identify it.
  - Upload: Click Browse and select the corresponding firmware.
  - Remark: Optional. Edit the note.
- 4. Click Save.

Delete device firmware files

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Auto Provisioning > Resource Repository > Device Firmware.
- 2. Delete device firmware files.
  - To delete a device firmware, click  $\overline{\square}$  beside the desired firmware.
  - To delete device firmwares in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired firmware, and click Delete.
- 3. Click OK.

# Auto Provisioning - Supported Devices

This topic lists the devices that are currently supported for Auto Provisioning by Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
SIP-T19P_E2	53.84.0.125 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T21P_E2	52.84.0.125 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T21_E2	52.84.0.125 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T23P	44.84.0.125 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T23G	44.84.0.125 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T27G	69.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T29G	46.83.0.120 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T30	124.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T30P	124.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T31	124.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T31P	124.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T31G	124.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later

Yealink phones

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
SIP-T33P	124.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T33G	124.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T40P	54.84.0.125 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T40G	76.84.0.125 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T41P	36.83.0.120 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T42G	29.83.0.120 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T46G	28.83.0.120 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T48G	35.83.0.120 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T41S	66.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T42S	66.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T46S	66.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T48S	66.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T41U	108.85.0.39 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T42U	108.85.0.39 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T43U	108.85.0.39 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T46U	108.85.0.39 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T48U	108.85.0.39 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T52S	70.84.0.70 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T54S	70.84.0.70 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T53	96.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T53W	96.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T54W	96.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T57W	96.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T56A	58.83.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T58	58.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-T58W	150.86.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
VP59	91.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
W80B	W80DM-103.83.0.80	84.5.0.86 or later

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
W60B (W53P, W41P, W60P, CP930W-Base)	77.83.0.85 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
W70B (W79P, W76P, W73P)	146.85.0.20 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
W90DM	130.85.0.15 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
CP960	73.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
CP965	143.86.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
CP920	78.85.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
CP925	148.86.0.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
SIP-CP935W	149.86.0.5 or later	84.6.0.24 or later

# Fanvil phones

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
X1S / X1SP	2.2.12 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X1SG	2.2.12 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3SG	2.2.12 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3U	2.2.12 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X2/X2P	2.14.0.7386 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X2C/X2CP	2.14.0.7386 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3S/X3SP/X3G	2.14.0.7386 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X4/X4G	2.14.0.7386 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X4U	2.2.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X4U-V2	2.12.1 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
X5U	2.2.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X5U-V2	2.12.1 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
X5S	2.2.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X6	2.2.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X6U	2.2.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X6U-V2	2.12.1 or later	84.6.0.24 or later

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
Х7	2.2.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X7C	2.2.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
Х7А	2.2.0.229 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
A32	2.6.0.408 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
A32i	2.6.0.408 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X210	2.2.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X210i	2.2.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X7-V2	2.12.1.3 or later	84.7.0.17 or later
X7C-V2	2.12.1.3 or later	84.7.0.17 or later
X210-V2	2.12.1.3 or later	84.7.0.17 or later
X210i-V2	2.12.1.3 or later	84.7.0.17 or later
V65	2.12.2.4 or later	84.7.0.17 or later
X3S Lite / X3SP Lite	2.4.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3S Pro / X3SP Pro	2.4.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3SW	2.4.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3SG Lite	2.4.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3SG Pro	2.4.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
X3U Pro	2.4.5 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
V62	2.4.10 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
V64	2.4.10 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
V67	2.6.0 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
Н3	2.12.1.7334 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
H5	2.12.1.7334 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
H2U	2.4.7 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
H2U-V2	2.4.7.6 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
H3W	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
H5W	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i56A	0.3.0.21 or later	84.5.0.86 or later

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
i55A	1.0.0.45 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
i57A	1.0.0.46 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
i51	2.8.13 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i52	2.8.13 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i53	2.8.13 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i51W	2.8.13 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i52W	2.8.13 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i53W	2.8.13 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i10	1.2.7 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i10V	1.2.7 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i10D	1.2.7 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i10S	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i10SV	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i10SD	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i11S	1.2.7 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i11SV	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i12	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i16V	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i16S	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i16SV	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i18S	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i20S	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i23S	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i30	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i31S	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i32V	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i33V	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i33VF	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
i61	2.4.0 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
i62	2.4.0 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
i63	2.4.0 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
i64	2.4.0 or later	84.6.0.24 or later
PA2	2.8.2.7009 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
PA2S	2.8.11 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
PA3	2.4.4 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
i68	2.8.40.22 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
X301(P)	0.0.16 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
X303(P)	0.0.16 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
X301G	0.0.16 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
X303G	0.0.16 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
X301W	0.0.16 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
X303W	0.0.16 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
W611W	pvt-2.8 or later	84.8.0.25 or later

# Htek phones

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
UC902	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC902S	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC903	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC912	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC912G	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC912E	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC921	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC921G	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC923	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC923U	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC924	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
UC924E	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC924U	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC924W	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC926	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC926E	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
UC926U	2.0.4.8.18 or later	84.5.0.86 or later

# Gigaset phones

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
N870 IP PRO	2.38.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
N870 VI PRO	2.38.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
N670 IP PRO	2.38.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
N610 IP PRO (Coming soon)	N/A	84.5.0.86 or later
Maxwell Basic PRO	3.18.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
Maxwell 2 PRO	3.18.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
Maxwell 3 PRO	3.18.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
Maxwell 4 PRO	3.18.1 or later	84.5.0.86 or later

# Snom phones

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
D120	10.1.54.13 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
D315	10.1.73.16 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
D335	10.1.73.16 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
D385	10.1.73.16 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
D713	10.1.73.16 or later 84.6.0.46 or later	
D717	10.1.73.16 or later 84.5.0.86 or later	
D735	10.1.73.16 or later	84.5.0.86 or later
D785	10.1.73.16 or later	84.5.0.86 or later

Model	Phone Requirement PBX Requireme	
M300	BSV530B2 or later	84.8.0.25 or later
M400	00 BSV610B5 or later 84.8.0.25 or later	
M900	BSV530B7 or later	84.8.0.25 or later

## FlyingVoice phones

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
FIP10	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP11C	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP12WP	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP13G	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP14G	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP15G	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP15G Plus	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP16	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later
FIP16 Plus	0.7.23.1 or higher	84.8.0.25 or later

## **Tiptel phones**

Table 18.

Model	Phone Requirement	PBX Requirement
3310	2.42.6.5.55 or later	84.7.0.17 or later
3320	2.42.6.5.55 or later	84.7.0.17 or later
3330	2.42.6.5.55 or later 84.7.0.17 or later	
3340	2.42.6.5.55 or later	84.7.0.17 or later

# Auto Provisioning - Variables in Templates

The provision templates make use of a set of variables that are replaced by the actual value when a device is provisioned. This topic shows you the variables used in the provisioning templates.

Variable	Description	
Preference settings		
{{.PhoneWebLanguage}}	The language configured on phone web inter- face.	
{{.PhoneLanguage}}	The language configured on phone interface.	
{{.Tones}}	The default ringtone of the phone.	
{{.CallWaiting}}	Enable or disable call waiting feature.	
{{.PhoneUser}}	The user name for logging in to the phone web interface.	
{{.PhonePassword}}	The password for logging in to the phone web interface.	
{{.TimeZone}}	The time zone.	
{{.TimeZoneName}}	The time zone name.	
{{.DaylightSavingTime}}	The daylight saving time.	
{{.PrimaryNtpServer}}	The primary NTP server address.	
{{.SecondaryNtpServer}}	The second NTP server address.	
{{.TimeFormat}}	The time format.	
{{.DateFormat}}	The date format.	
{{.DateSeparatorFormat}}	The date separator format.	
{{.TransferModeViaDsskey}}	The transfer mode for function key.	
{{.SuppressDtmfDisplay}}	Enable or disable the IP phone to suppress the display of DTMF digits.	
{{.AutoProvisionServerUrl}}	The URL of provision server.	
{{.AutoProvisionServerUrlWithout- Protocol}}	The URL of provision server without transport protocol.	
{{.ProvisioningFile}}	The name of configuration file.	
{{.FirmwareUrl}}	The URL of firmware.	
{{.FirmwareUrlWithoutProtocol}}	The URL of firmware without transport protocol.	
{{.FirmwareFile}}	The name of firmware.	
{{.FirmwareVersion}}	The version of firmware.	
{{.EnableUacsta}}	Enable or disable uaCSTA.	

Variable	Description
{{.AlertInfoText_X}}	The alert info text to trigger the IP phone to play a specific ring tone.
{{.AlertInfoRingtone_X}}	The specific ring tone corresponding to Alert in- fo.
Contact settings for Yealink phones	
Note: Contact settings are not available fo CP920 phones.	r VP59, W80B, W60B, W90DM, CP960, and
{{.CompanyPbUrl}}	The URL of company contact file.
{{.CompanyPbName}}	The name of company contact.
{{.PersonalPbUrl}}	The URL of personal contact file.
{{.PersonalPbName}}	The name of personal contact.
Account settings for IP phones	
{{.EnbAccount}}	Enable or disable extension registration.
{{.AccountLabel}}	The extension label.
{{.AccountDisplayName}}	The display name of extension.
{{.AccountRegistrationName}}	The registration name of extension.
{{.AccountRegistrationExtNumber}}	The registration number of extension.
{{.AccountRegistrationPassword}}	The registration password of extension.
{{.AccountSipServerAddr}}	The URL of PBX server for extension registra- tion.
{{.AccountSipServerPort}}	The port of PBX server for extension registra- tion.
{{.AccountSipServerTransport- Type}}	The type of transport protocol for extension reg- istration.
{{.AutoAnswer}}	Enable or disable auto answer feature.
{{.CheckVoicemail}}	The voicemail feature code.
Account settings for DECT phones(x	is the handset ID)
{{.EnbAccount_x}}	Enable or disable extension registration.
{{.SRTP_x}}	Enable or disable extension SRTP feature.

Variable	Description
{{.AccountLabel_x}}	The extension label.
{{.AccountDisplayName_x}}	The display name of extension.
{{.AccountRegistrationName_x}}	The registration name of extension.
{{.AccountRegistrationExtNumber x}}	The registration number of extension.
{{.AccountRegistrationPassword x}}	The registration password of extension.
{{.AccountSipServerAddr_x}}	The URL of provisioning server for extension registration.
{{.AccountSipServerPort_x}}	The port of provisioning server for extension registration.
{{.AccountSipServerTransport- Type_x}}	The type of transport protocol for extension reg- istration.
{{.CheckVoicemail_x}}	The voicemail feature code.
SIP server template for Yealink W80I	B(x is the template ID, X=1, 2 or 3)
{{.TemplateNamex}}	The template name.
{{.TemplateServerAddrx}}	The URL of PBX server for extension registra- tion.
{{.TemplateServerPortx}}	The port of PBX server for extension registra- tion.
{{.AcountSipServerTemplate}}	The type of transport protocol for extension reg- istration.
Audio codec(x is the codec priority, X	K=1, 2, 3 or 4)
{{.AccountAudioCodec_X}}	The priority of the audio codec.
{{.AudioCodecsPriorities}}	The priority of the audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecPcmu}}	Enable or disable PCMU audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecPcmu_Priority}}	The priority of the PCMU audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecPcma}}	Enable or disable PCMA audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecPcma_Priority}}	The priority of the PCMA audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecIlbc}}	Enable or disable iLBC audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecIIbc_Priority}}	The priority of the iLBC audio codec.

Variable	Description
{{.AccountCodecIlbc_15_2_Kbps}}	Enable or disable iLBC_15_2 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecIlbc_15_2_Kbps Priority}}	The priority of the iLBC_15_2 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecllbc_13_33_Kbps}}	Enable or disable iLBC_13_33 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecIlbc_13_33_Kbps Priority}}	The priority of the iLBC_13_33 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecG722}}	Enable or disable G722 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecG722_Priority}}	The priority of the G722 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecG729}}	Enable or disable G729 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecG729_Priority}}	The priority of the G729 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecG726_32}}	Enable or disable G726_32 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecG726_32_Priority}}	The priority of the G726_32 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecSpeex}}	Enable or disable Speex audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecSpeex_Priority}}	The priority of the Speex audio codec.
{{.AccountAdpcmCodec}}	Enable or disable Adpcm audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecAdpcm_Priority}}	The priority of the Adpcm audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecMpeg4}}	Enable or disable Mpeg4 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecMpeg4_Priority}}	The priority of the Mpeg4 audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecGsm}}	Enable or disable GSM audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecGsm_Priority}}	The priority of the GSM audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecOpus}}	Enable or disable Opus audio codec.
{{.AccountCodecOpus_Priority}}	The priority of the Opus audio codec.
Video codec(x is the codec priority, $\lambda$	(=1, 2, 3 or 4)
{{.AccountVideoCodec_X}}	The priority of the video codec.
{{.AccountCodecH264}}	Enable or disable H264 codec.
{{.AccountCodecH264_Priority}}	The priority of the H264 codec.
{{.AccountCodecH264_Hp}}	Enable or disable H264_Hp codec.
{{.AccountCodecH264_Hp_Priority}}	The priority of the H264_Hp codec.
{{.AccountCodecH263}}	Enable or disable H263 codec.

Variable	Description	
{{.AccountCodecH263_Priority}}	The priority of the H263 codec.	
{{.AccountCodecH263_P}}	Enable or disable H263_P codec.	
{{.AccountCodecH263_P_Priority}}	The priority of the H263_P codec.	
{{.AccountCodecVp8}}	Enable or disable Vp8 codec.	
{{.AccountCodecVp8_Priority}}	The priority of the Vp8 codec.	
Function key (x is the function key ID	))	
{{.FunctionkeyType_x}}	The type of function key.	
{{.FunctionkeyType2_x}}	The type of function key (for Dynamic VPK).	
{{.FunctionkeySubtype_x}}	The subtype of function key.	
{{.FunctionkeyLine_x}}	The extension to which function key applies.	
{{.FunctionkeyCodeValue_x}}	The feature code of function key.	
{{.FunctionkeyValue_x}}	The object of function key.	
{{.FunctionkeyExtension_x}}	The number where the call can be picked up by function key.	
{{.FunctionkeyCodeExtension_x}}	The pickup code applied for function key.	
{{.FunctionkeyLabel_x}}	The label of function key that is displayed on phone screen.	
LDAP Directory (x is the template ID, X=1, 2 or 3)		
{{.EnableLdap_X}}	Enable LDAP directory.	
{{.LdapName_X}}	Specify the name of LDAP directory.	
{{.LdapMode_X}}	Set up the LDAP mode.	
{{.LdapHost_X}}	The address of LDAP Server.	
{{.LdapNameFilter_X}}	The LDAP name filter.	
{{.LdapNumFilter_X}}	The LDAP number filter.	
{{.LdapNameAttr_X}}	The name attribute returned by LDAP Server.	
{{.LdapNumAttr_X}}	The number attribute returned by LDAP Server.	
{{.LdapDisplayName_X}}	The name of the search results displayed on IP phones.	
{{.LdapMaxHit_X}}	The maximum number of search results to be returned by LDAP Server.	

Variable	Description
{{.LdapIncomingLookup_X}}	Enable or disable IP phone to perform an LDAP search when receiving an incoming call.
{{.LdapDialLookup_X}}	Enable or disable IP phone to perform an LDAP search when placing a call.
{{.LdapSort_X}}	Enable or disable IP phone to sort out search re- sults in alphabetical and numerical order.
{{.LdapPort_X}}	The port of LDAP Server.
{{.LdapBase_X}}	The base entry of the LDAP directory.
{{.LdapUser_X}}	The user accessing the LDAP Server.
{{.LdapPassword_X}}	The password for accessing to the LDAP Server.
Others	
{{.MacAddress}}	The MAC address of phone.
	📮 Note:
	Here the value does not need a separator of :. For example, 09139876900e.

# **User Role**

## **User Roles and Permissions**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows super administrator to have a role-based control over the PBX features that are accessible and manageable on users' web portals. This topic describes what is a user role, and introduces the pre-defined user roles and their permissions.

### What is a user role

A user role includes a set of permissions, which allows super administrator to control what PBX features users can manage on users' web portals.

Super administrator can assign user roles to employees based on their job duties, each user role has different permissions. For example, you can assign Operator to an employee who is responsible for security of PBX server and network; assign Human Resource to an employee who is responsible for dealing with employee profiles.

### Pre-defined user roles

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition has pre-defined user roles that cover the most common permission configurations. The pre-defined user roles and their permissions are as follows:

Role	Permission
Super adminis- trator	Access and manage all the PBX features.
	🕞 Note:
	The username of super administrator is created when you first configure the system, and the username is unchangeable.
Administrator	Access and manage all the PBX features except the followings:
	• View Dashboard • Manage Role
Supervisor	No access to PBX features.
Operator	Access and manage all the features under Security and Mainte- nance modules.
	For more information, see <u>Security</u> and <u>Maintenance</u> .
Employee	No access to PBX features.
Human Resource	View and manage all the extensions.

Table 19.

#### Table 19. (continued)

Role	Permission
Accounting	Access and manage Plan.

**Related information** 

Create a User Role Assign a Role to a User

## Create a User Role

If the pre-defined roles can not meet your need, you can create a user role and grant permissions to the role. This topic describes how to create a user role.

#### Restrictions

#### Note:

Only system super administrator can create a user role.

#### Create a new role

Based on an employee's job duty, you can create a user role and grant corresponding permissions.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Role.
- 2. Click Add to create a new role.
- 3. In the Role Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 4. Grant permissions to the user role.

For permission details, see User Role Permissions.

5. Click Save.

### Create a role by copying an existing role

You can create a role based on an existing user role, the new role automatically inherits permissions from the existing role. After copying permissions, you can add or remove permissions as needed.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Role.
- 2. Create a role.
  - a. Click Copy Role.
  - b. In the Choose a role to copy drop-down list, select a role.
  - c. In the Role Name field, enter a name to help you identify the role.
  - d. Click Save.

The new role inherits permissions from the existing role. 3. Update permissions for the newly created role.

- a. On Role list, click  $\checkmark$  beside the role that you have created.
- b. Select or unselect the checkboxes of the desired permissions.

For permission details, see <u>User Role Permissions</u>. c. Click Save.

What to do next

Assign a Role to a User.

## Assign a Role to a User

This topic describes how to assign a role to a user.

### Restrictions

Note:

Only system super administrator can assign a role to a user.

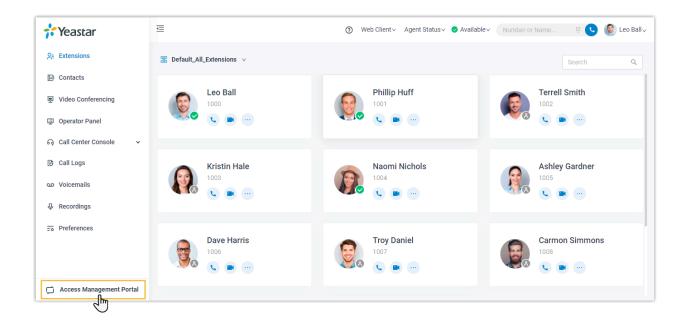
Prerequisites A user role is created.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. On Extension list, select an extension, click  $\mathbb{Z}$ .
- 3. On the User page, select a role from the drop-down list of User Role.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

If specific permissions are granted to the role, after the user logs in to Linkus Web Client, the user can go to management portal, and access specific system features.



## Manage User Roles

This topic describes how to edit or delete roles.

### Restrictions

Note:

Only system super administrator can manage user roles.

### Edit a role

After creating a role, you can edit role permissions according to your needs.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Role.
- 2. On Role list, select a role, click  $\angle$ .
- 3. Edit the role name or change role permissions according to your needs.

For permission details, see <u>User Role Permissions</u>.

4. Click Save.

### **Delete roles**

If you don't need roles, you can delete them. After roles are deleted, users with the roles assigned will have no role definition.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Role.
- 2. Delete one or more roles according to your needs.

- To delete a role, select a role, click  $\frac{1}{100}$  and OK.
- To delete roles in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired roles, click Delete and OK.

## **User Role Permissions**

This topic describes all the available permissions that can be granted to a role.

Available permissions on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition are as follows:

- Extension and Trunk
- <u>Contacts</u>
- <u>Call Control</u>
- <u>Call Features</u>
- <u>Reports and Recordings</u>
- <u>Auto Provisioning</u>
- PBX Settings
- <u>System</u>
- <u>Security</u>
- <u>Maintenance</u>
- Integration
- <u>Plan</u>

### Extension and Trunk

Specify the extensions that users with the role assigned can manage, and whether users can manage extension group or trunks.

Module	Permission
Extension	All Departments: View and manage all the departments.
	All Extensions: View and manage all the extensions.
	<ul> <li>For example, grant the permission to a human resource. If there are changes of employees, the human resource can update extensions timely.</li> <li>All the other extensions of the same Extension Groups: Manage or send Linkus welcome emails to all the other extensions in the same extension group except the one that contains all the extensions.</li> </ul>
	For example, grant the permission to a supervisor. The supervisor can view and manage his or her subordi- nates' extensions.

Module	Permission
	<ul> <li>All other extensions of the same department: Manage or send Linkus welcome emails to all the other extensions in the same department, excluding those in the associ- ated sub-departments.</li> <li>Specific Extensions: Manage or send Linkus welcome emails to specific extensions.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>For example, grant the permission to a leader. The leader can view and manage different departments' extensions.</li> <li>Extension itself only: Manage or send Linkus welcome emails to his or her own extension.</li> </ul>
Extension Group	Manage extension groups.
Trunks	Manage trunks.

### Table 20. (continued)

### Contacts

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- Company Contacts
- PhoneBooks
- LDAP Server

### Call Control

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- Inbound Route
- Outbound Route
- AutoCLIP Route
- Business Hours and Holidays
- Emergency Number

### **Call Features**

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- Voicemail
- Feature Code
- IVR
- Ring Group
- Queue
- Conference

- Speed Dial
- Paging/Intercom
- Recording
- PIN List
- Blocked/Allowed Numbers

### **Reports and Recordings**

Specify users with the role assigned can view or manage which extensions' CDR and recordings, and whether users can access call reports.

Table 21.

Module	Permission
CDR and Recording Files	Specify users with the role assigned can view which extensions' CDR and recordings.
	<ul> <li>All Extensions: View all extensions' CDR and recordings.</li> <li>All the other extensions of the same Extension Groups: View CDR and recordings of all the other extensions of the same group except the one that contains all the extensions.</li> <li>All other extensions of the same department: View CDR and recordings of all the other extensions in the same department, excluding those in the associated sub-departments.</li> <li>Specific Extensions: View CDR and recordings of specific extensions.</li> </ul>
	Specify how users with the role assigned can manage CDR.
	• Download • Delete
	Specify how users with the role assigned can manage recording files.
	• Play • Download • Delete
Call Reports	Specify whether users with the role assigned can access call reports.

### Auto Provisioning

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage Auto Provisioning.

### **PBX Settings**

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- Preferences
- Voice Prompt
- SIP Settings
- Jitter Buffer

### System

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- Date and Time
- Email
- Storage
- Event Notification

### Security

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- Security Rules
- Security Settings

### Maintenance

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- Upgrade
- Backup and Restore
- Reboot
- Reset
- Operation Logs
- Troubleshooting
- System Logs

### Integration

Specify whether users with the role assigned can manage the following features:

- CRM
- Speech to Text
- AMI
- Database Grant

### Plan

Specify whether users with the role assigned can buy or enable free trial of Yeastar-provided plan.

# Linkus Server

## Linkus Overview

Yeastar Linkus is designed to keep you connected with colleagues and business anywhere and anytime. This topic describes Linkus server, Linkus client, Linkus client login methods, and Linkus events.

### Linkus server

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides a Linkus server to work with Linkus client. The default Linkus port is 8111 and can not be modified.

#### Linkus client Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following Linkus clients:

- Linkus Mobile Client
- Linkus Desktop Client
- Linkus Web Client

For more information about Linkus Mobile Client and Linkus Desktop Client, see <u>Linkus Help</u> <u>Center</u>.

For more information about Linkus Web Client, see Linkus Web Client User Guide.

### Linkus client login methods

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows users to quickly log in to Linkus clients via a specific link or QR code, or manually log in by entering the provided credentials.

- Quick login
  - Login link: Provide users with login links so that they can quickly log in to Linkus clients.
  - Login QR code: Provide users with login QR codes so that they can quickly log in to Linkus Mobile Client.

You can copy and share login credential of a specific client with a user, or bulk send Linkus welcome emails to multiple users, which contain login credentials of all the Linkus clients.

For more information, see <u>Configure Linkus Welcome Email</u> and <u>Send Linkus Welcome Emails</u>.

- Manual login
  - Provide the following information for users to log in to Linkus clients.
    - The domain name of PBX and the Linkus port
    - Username

Note:
 Username is the email address that is bound with the extension.
 User password

### Linkus events

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides event notification feature, which records events in logs and notifies relevant contacts via specific notification methods when events occur.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides the following Linkus events:

- Web User Login Success
- Web User Login Failed
- Linkus Client Login Failed
- Extension User Password Changed
- Web User Blocked Out
- Linkus User Blocked Out

For more information, see Event Notification Overview and Configure Event Notifications.

## **Enable Linkus Clients for Users**

You need to enable Linkus clients for users, so that users can log in to Linkus and use it. This topic describes how to enable Linkus clients for a user.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. Select a desired extension, click  $\checkmark$ .
- 3. Click Linkus Clients tab.
- 4. Enable the following Linkus clients for the user.
  - Linkus Mobile Client
  - Linkus Desktop Client
  - Linkus Web Client

### Result

- Linkus Mobile Client: The status shows –•, and a login QR code is displayed on the right.
- Linkus Desktop Client: The status shows  $\neg$ , and a login link is displayed on the right.
- Linkus Web Client: The status shows -.

### What to do next

Send Linkus login credentials to users.

• To send login credentials in bulk, you can send Linkus welcome emails to users, which contain login credentials of all the Linkus clients.

For more information, see Send Linkus Welcome Emails.

- To send login credential of a specific Linkus client to a user, do the followings:
  - Linkus Mobile Client: Provide user with the login QR code.

Pote:	
The QR code can be used ONLY once, and is valid for 24 hours.	
Linkus Mobile Client	聞 Login QR Code
Linkus Desktop Client: Provide user with the login link.	
📻 Note:	

The link can be used ONLY once, and is valid for 24 hours.

Linkus Desktop Client

🖉 Login Link

- Linkus Web Client: Provide user with the following information:
  - The domain name of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition
  - Username

The username is the email address bound with the extension.

User password

## **Configure Linkus Welcome Email**

Before sending Linkus welcome emails to provide users with login credentials of all the Linkus clients, you may need to configure Linkus welcome email.

### **Background information**

By default, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition sends Linkus welcome emails in the language that you have set in <u>system email template</u>. A welcome email contains the following information:

- Extension information: Include extension number and voicemail PIN.
- Login instructions and credentials: Include login instructions and credentials for all the Linkus clients.

### Procedure

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides a default email template, you can also customize your own template as follows.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. Click Linkus Server tab.
- 3. Click Email Templates tab.
- 4. Customize email template.
  - a. In the Template drop-down list, select Custom.
  - b. Edit email subject and content according to your needs.
  - c. Click Save.

What to do next

Send Linkus Welcome Emails

## Send Linkus Welcome Emails

To provide multiple users with Linkus login credentials, you can send Linkus welcome emails. This topic describes how to send Linkus welcome emails.

### Prerequisites

- Make sure the system email server works.
- You have configured email addresses for the desired extensions.
- You have enabled at least one Linkus client for the desired extensions.

### Procedure

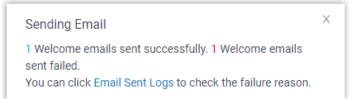
- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. On Extension list, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, click Welcome Email.

The system sends welcome emails to the extensions' email addresses.

### Result

• If all the welcome emails are sent successfully, the web interface displays the following confirmation.

Sending Email × Welcome emails sent successfully. • If there are any emails failed to be sent, you will get an error prompt like the following figure. Click Email Sent Logs to check the error.



## Enable or Disable Push Notifications for Linkus Mobile Client

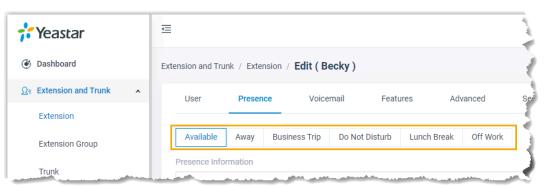
This topic describes how to enable or disable push notifications for Linkus Mobile Client.

### **Background information**

Push notification is an important tool for showing users alert messages and bringing them back to Linkus Mobile Client. By default, users can receive Linkus notifications anywhere and anytime, such as missed calls, new voicemail messages and so on.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Presence tab.
- 3. To configure push notifications for a specific presence, select one on the status bar.



- 4. In the Options section, select or unselect the checkbox of Accept Push Notifications.
- 5. To configure push notification for other presence status, repeat step3-4.
- 6. Click Save.

# **Operator Panel**

## Manage Operator Panel

This topic describes instructions on setting up Operator Panel for extension user.

### What is Operator Panel

Operator Panel is a web-based utility integrated with the Yeastar Linkus Web Client. It is designed for employee who needs to manage and transfer a large number of calls, such as receptionist or agent manager.

For more information of managing calls on Operator Panel, see Operator Panel User Guide.

### User types and permissions

There are three user types available for you to assign to an extension group member: manager, user, and custom. What they can do on Operator Panel depends on the following permission.

The following table displays the permissions available to extension group members of different user types.

### - Note:

By default, an extension group manager has all permissions to manage calls on Operator Panel, while the extension group users have no permission to access and use the Operator Panel.

Permission	Extension Group Manager	Exten- sion Group User	Custom role of Exten- sion Group
Switch group members' pres- ence	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Call distribution management (Redirect, Transfer, Drag and Drop operation)	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	√
Pick up or hang up other exten- sions' calls	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Call monitoring operations (Lis- ten, Whisper, Barge-in)	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Call parking operations (Park, Retrieve)	√	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

Permission	Extension Group Manager	Exten- sion Group User	Custom role of Exten- sion Group
Route calls directly from IVR re- gardless of the IVR menu	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Switch Business Hours and Hol- idays status	$\checkmark$	×	$\checkmark$
Switch extensions' recording status	$\checkmark$	×	$\checkmark$

### **Related information**

Assign a User Type to a Group Member View or Change Permissions for Group Members View or Change a Member's User Type in Multiple Groups

# Trunk

## SIP Trunk

### SIP Trunk Overview

A SIP trunk is a virtual telephone line offered by an Internet Telephony Service Provider (ITSP). Through a SIP trunk, users can make and receive calls over the internet.

### Terminology

SIP

Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is a multimedia communication protocol developed by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), an application-layer control (signaling) protocol for creating, modifying, and terminating sessions with one or more participants.

### ITSP

An Internet Telephony Service Provider (ITSP) is a provider of VoIP telephone service, also known as VoIP service provider.

### SIP Trunk Types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following SIP trunk types:

SIP Register Trunk

Registration-based SIP trunk that uses username and password for registration with SIP providers.

Note: This type of trunk requires at least one DID number.

SIP Peer Trunk

IP-based SIP trunk that uses IP address and port of PBX for authentication.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following SIP peer trunks:

• Peer Trunk (DID Based): The ITSP routes calls based on DID number.

### F Note:

This type of trunk requires at least one DID number.

 Peer Trunk (Port Based): The ITSP routes calls based on SIP registration port.

#### - Note:

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports up to 5 port-based peer trunks.

 Peer Trunk (Private Network): This trunk type can be used when the ITSP and PBX are in the same private network.

#### SIP Account Trunk

SIP Account Trunk is designed for connection between Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition and other devices. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition will act as a VoIP account provider, the other device should register this account to connect to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### SIP trunk creation methods

Create a SIP trunk by a template

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports leading ITSP across the globe, you can use the pre-configured ITSP templates included in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition to set up a SIP trunk quickly and easily. For more information, see <u>Create a SIP Trunk from a Template</u>.

Note:

Check tested and supported ITSP from ITSP partner page.

Create a general SIP trunk

If your ITSP has not undergone an interoperability test by Yeastar, you can set up a general SIP trunk.

For more information, see the following topics:

- <u>Create a SIP Register Trunk</u>
- <u>Create a SIP Peer Trunk</u>

### SIP Trunk status

Status	Description
$\otimes$	Disabled.
	Unreachable.
$\otimes$	Registration failed. <ul> <li>Authentication failed.</li> </ul>
	Transport type inconsistent.

Status	Description
	Rejected.
<b>S</b>	Registering.
$\odot$	Registered.
?	Unmonitored.
ß	Busy. Maximum channels reached.

### Create a SIP Trunk

### Create a SIP Trunk from a Template

Yeastar has tested leading ITSP across the globe and provides configuration templates for the tested and certificated ITSP. If a template is provided for your ITSP on the PBX, you can quickly create a SIP Trunk by the template.

### Prerequisites

- Check if your ITSP is tested and supported by Yeastar from ITSP partner page.
- Your PBX can connect to the ITSP.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, click Add.
- 2. In the Basic section, configure the following settings:
  - Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Trunk Status: Select Enabled.
  - Select ITSP Template: Select your country.
  - ITSP: Select your ITSP.

The trunk details are displayed automatically in the Detailed Configuration section.

- If the trunk type is displayed as Register Trunk, configure the following settings:
  - Username: Enter the username provided by the ITSP.
  - Password: Enter the password provided by the ITSP.
  - Authentication Name: Optional. Authentication name is used for SIP authentication. If the ITSP provides an authentication name, enter the name.
- If the trunk type is displayed as Peer Trunk, leave the settings as default.
- 3. Optional: If you have purchased DID numbers from the ITSP, click DIDs/DDIs tab to configure the DID numbers for the trunk.

#### - Note:

If the trunk type is Register Trunk or Peer Trunk (DID Based), this procedure is necessary.

- a. Click Add.
- b. In the pop-up window, configure the following settings:
  - DID/DDI: Enter the provided DID number.
  - DID/DDI Name: Optional. Enter a name to distinguish inbound calls by DID numbers.

The name will be displayed on the called party's device when the DID number is dialed.

- c. Click Save.
- d. To add more DID numbers, repeat step a c.

For more information of DID configurations, see <u>Configure DID Numbers on a Trunk</u>. 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

Go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk to check the trunk status on the trunk list page.

If the status shows  $\bigotimes$ , the trunk is registered successfully.

For more information of SIP trunk status, see .

### What to do next

- To receive inbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more inbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Inbound Route</u>.
- To make outbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more outbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Outbound Route</u>.

### Create a SIP Register Trunk

This topic gives a configuration example to describe how to create a general SIP Register Trunk, which can be applied to all kinds of SIP Register Trunk.

### **Background information**

Assume that you have bought a SIP account from the ITSP ABC, and the trunk information is displayed as below.

- Provider domain: abc.provider.com
- Protocol: SIP
- Registration Port: 5060

- Transport: UDP
- Username: 254258255
- Authentication name: 254258255
- Password: 05Js0msIS54SYh

### Prerequisites

- You have purchased a SIP account from an ITSP and a username and a password are offered.
- Your PBX can connect to the ITSP.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, click Add.
- 2. In the Basic section, configure the following settings:
  - Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Trunk Status: Select Enabled.
  - Select ITSP Template: Select General.
- 3. In the Detailed Configuration section, select the trunk type and enter the SIP information that is provided by the ITSP.
  - Trunk Type: Select Register Trunk.
  - Transport: Select the transport provided by the ITSP. In this example, select UDP.
  - Hostname/IP: Enter the domain name or IP address of the ITSP. In this example, enter abc.provider.com.
  - Port: Enter the provided registration port. In this example, enter 5060.
  - Domain: Enter the domain in SIP URI of a specific header like From, To header. In this example, enter abc.provider.com.

### Pote:

If the domain is not provided by ITSP, enter the same value as Hostname/IP.

- Username: Enter the provided user name. In this example, enter 254258255.
- Password: Enter the provided password. In this example, enter 05JsOms-IS54SYh.
- Authentication Name: Enter the provided authentication name. In this example, enter 254258255.

### Note:

In most cases, authentication name is the same as the user name.

• Enable Outbound Proxy: Optional. If the trunk is configured to use an outbound proxy server, when users make outbound calls through this trunk, all the SIP packets will be sent to the outbound proxy server.

- Note:

Contact your ITSP to check if outbound proxy is supported, then configure outbound proxy settings under the ITSP's guidance.

- 4. Click DIDs/DDIs tab to configure the DID numbers for the trunk.
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. In the pop-up window, configure the following settings:
    - DID/DDI: Enter the DID number provided by the ITSP.
    - DID/DDI Name: Optional. Enter a name to distinguish inbound calls by DID numbers.

The name will be displayed on the called party's device when the DID number is dialed.

- c. Click Save.
- d. To add more DID numbers, repeat step a c.

For more information of DID configurations, see Configure DID Numbers on a Trunk.

- 5. Optional: Click Advanced, Inbound Caller ID Reformatting, Outbound Caller ID, or SIP Headers tab to configure other settings.
- 6. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

Go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk to check the trunk status on the trunk list page.

If the status shows  $\bigotimes$ , the trunk is registered successfully.

For more information of SIP trunk status, see .

### What to do next

- To receive inbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more inbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Inbound Route</u>.
- To make outbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more outbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Outbound Route</u>.

### Create a SIP Peer Trunk

This topic gives a configuration example to describe how to create a general SIP Peer Trunk, which can be applied to all kinds of SIP Peer Trunk.

### Background information

Assume that you have bought a SIP account from the ITSP ABC, and the trunk information is displayed as below.

- Provider domain: abc.provider.com
- Protocol: SIP
- Registration Port: 5060
- Transport: UDP

### Prerequisites

- You have purchased a SIP account from an ITSP and no username and password is offered but only a domain name or IP address.
- Your PBX can connect to the ITSP.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, click Add.
- 2. In the Basic section, configure the following settings:
  - Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Trunk Status: Select Enabled.
  - Select ITSP Template: Select General.
- 3. In the Detailed Configuration section, select the trunk type and enter the SIP information that is provided by the ITSP.
  - Trunk Type: Select the desired type of Peer Trunk.
    - Peer Trunk (DID Based): If the ITSP routes calls based on the DID number, choose this option.

### 🚽 Note:

If this trunk type is selected, it requires at least one DID rule.

- Peer Trunk (Port Based): If the ITSP routes calls based on the SIP registration port, choose this option.
- Peer Trunk (Private Network): If the ITSP and the PBX are in the same private network, choose this option.

The Static IP Address and Port of the PBX will be displayed on the web page.

- Transport: Select the transport provided by the ITSP. In this scenario, select UDP.
- Hostname/IP: Enter the domain name or IP address of the ITSP. In this scenario, enter abc.provider.com.
- Port: Enter the provided registration port. In this scenario, enter 5060.
- Domain: Enter the domain in SIP URI of a specific header like From, To header. In this example, enter abc.provider.com.

### Note:

If the domain is not provided by ITSP, enter the same value as Hostname/IP.

4. Optional: If you have purchased DID numbers from the ITSP, click DIDs/DDIs tab to configure the DID numbers for the trunk.

### 🚽 Note:

If the selected trunk type is Peer Trunk (DID Based), this procedure is necessary.

a. Click Add.

b. In the pop-up window, configure the following settings:

- DID/DDI: Enter the provided DID number.
- DID/DDI Name: Optional. Enter a name to distinguish inbound calls by DID numbers.

The name will be displayed on the called party's device when the DID number is dialed.

- c. Click Save.
- d. To add more DID numbers, repeat step a c.

For more information of DID configurations, see <u>Configure DID Numbers on a Trunk</u>. 5. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

Go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk to check the trunk status on the trunk list page.

If the status shows  $\bigotimes$ , the trunk is registered successfully.

For more information of SIP trunk status, see .

### What to do next

- To receive inbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more inbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Inbound Route</u>.
- To make outbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more outbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Outbound Route</u>.

### Create a SIP Account Trunk

A SIP Account is used for the other device to register with Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. In this way, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition and the other device are connected. This topic describes how to create a SIP Account Trunk on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

### Prerequisites

To connect a third-party device with Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition by a SIP Account Trunk, you need to make sure that there is no duplicate extension numbers on both sides.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, click Add.
- 2. In the Basic section, configure the following settings:
  - Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
    - Trunk Status: Select Enabled.
    - Select ITSP Template: Select General.
- 3. In the Detailed Configuration section, select the trunk type and define the information of the SIP account.

#### Note:

You can leave the default SIP information or edit the information according to your needs.

- Trunk Type: Select Account Trunk.
- Transport: Select a transport. The following options are supported:
  - $\circ$  UDP
  - TCP

PNote:

By default, SIP TCP port is disabled. If you select this option, go to PBX Settings > SIP Settings > General > Basic, enable SIP TCP Port, then reboot the PBX to make it take effect.

∘ TLS

- Username: Enter a username for the SIP account.
- Password: Enter a password for the SIP account.
- Authentication Name: Enter an authentication name for the SIP account.
- 4. Optional: Click Advanced, Inbound Caller ID Reformatting, Outbound Caller ID, or SIP Headers to configure other settings.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

### What to do next

- Register the SIP Account Trunk on the third-party software or device. You need to provide the following information:
  - SIP Account Trunk details
  - Domain name of PBX
  - SIP registration port: The default port is 5060 on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition
- To receive inbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more inbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Inbound Route</u>.
- To make outbound calls through the trunk, you need to select this trunk to one or more outbound routes. For more information, see <u>Set up an Outbound Route</u>.

### Result

Go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk to check the trunk status on the trunk list page.

If the SIP Account Trunk is successfully registered on the third-party software or device, the

trunk status will show  $\Theta$ , which also indicates that the two devices are connected.

For more information of SIP trunk status, see .

### Manage SIP Trunks

After you create SIP trunks, you can edit or delete the SIP trunks.

### Edit a SIP trunk

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk.
- 2. On the Trunk list page, select a trunk and click  $\mathbb{Z}$  .
- 3. Click the desired tab to edit the relevant settings.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete SIP trunks

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk.
- 2. To delete a SIP trunk, do the followings:
  - a. Click ៉ beside the trunk.
  - b. Click Yes in the pop-up dialog box to confirm.
- 3. To delete multiple SIP trunks, do the followings:
  - a. Select checkboxes of the desired trunks.
  - b. Click Delete.
  - c. Click Yes in the pop-up dialog box to confirm.

## Export and Import SIP Trunks

The SIP trunks configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired SIP trunks in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import SIP trunks.

### **Background information**

Only Peer Trunks and Register Trunks can be imported.

### Export all SIP trunks

You can export all SIP trunks to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Trunk Parameters</u>.

### Import SIP trunks

We recommend that you export SIP trunks data to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Trunk Parameters</u>.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The trunks in the CSV file will be displayed in the Trunk list.

### **SIP Trunk Settings**

This topic describes all the settings on a SIP trunk for reference.

### **Basic settings**

Basic	
Setting	Description
Name	Give this trunk a name to help you identify it.
Trunk Status	Enable or disable the trunk.
Select ITSP Template	Select the country of your ITSP.
	Note: If no SIP trunk template is provided for your ITSP, select General.
ITSP	Select your ITSP from the list of certified SIP trunk providers.

Detailed Configuration	
Setting	Description
Trunk Type	Select a trunk type: • Register Trunk • Peer Trunk (DID Based) • Peer Trunk (Port Based) Peer Trunk (Port Based) Peer Trunk (Port Based). • Peer Trunk (Private Network) • Account Trunk
Register Trunk	
Transport	Select the transport that is provided by the ITSP. Note: If you select TCP, make sure SIP TCP Port is enabled (Path: PBX Settings > SIP Settings > General > Basic > SIP TCP Port.
Hostname/IP	Enter the IP address or the domain of the ITSP.
Port	Enter the SIP port provided by the ITSP.
Domain	Enter the domain in SIP URI of a specific header like From, To header. Prote: If the domain is not provided by ITSP, enter the same value as Hostname/IP.
Username	Enter the username to register to the ITSP.
Password	Enter the password that is associated with the user- name.
Authentication Name	Enter the authentication name to register to the ITSP.
Enable Outbound Proxy	If the trunk is configured to use an outbound proxy serv- er, when users make outbound calls through this trunk, all the SIP packets will be sent to the outbound proxy server.
	PNote:

Detailed Configuration	
Setting	Description
	Contact your ITSP to check if they support outbound proxy, then configure outbound proxy settings under their guidance.
Peer Trunk (DID Based	/Port Based/Private Network)
Transport	Select the transport that is provided by the ITSP.
	Note: If you select TCP, make sure SIP TCP Port is enabled (Path: PBX Settings > SIP Settings > General > Basic > SIP TCP Port.
Static IP Address	The Static IP Address is assigned automatically, this field can not be edited.
Port	The port is assigned automatically, this field can not be edited
Hostname/IP	Enter the IP address or the domain of the ITSP.
Port	Enter the SIP port provided by the ITSP.
Domain	Enter the domain in SIP URI of a specific header like From, To header.
	Note: If the domain is not provided by ITSP, enter the same value as Hostname/IP.
Account Trunk	
Transport	Select the transport for a third-party device to register with.
	Note: If you select TCP, make sure SIP TCP Port is enabled (Path: PBX Settings > SIP Settings > General > Basic > SIP TCP Port.
Username	Specify a username for the trunk.
	Note: The username is regarded as the trunk number.

Detailed Configuration	
Setting	Description
Password	Specify a password that is associated with the user- name.
Authentication Name	Specify an authentication name for a third-party device to register with.

### Advanced settings

The advanced settings of VoIP trunk require professional knowledge of SIP protocol. Incorrect configurations may cause calling issues. It is wise to leave the default settings provided on the SIP trunk page. However, for a few fields, you need to change them to suit your situation.

The following settings are included on the Advanced page.

- <u>Codec Setting</u>
- VolP Setting
- <u>Call Restriction</u>

### Codec Setting

Each newly created SIP trunk has a default preferred codec list. However, the default codec list may not match the codecs supported by your ITSP. To maximize the quality of calls and the amount of bandwidth used for calls, you can configure your preferred codec list to match the settings that your ITSP supports.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following codecs:

- u-law
- a-law
- G729A
- GSM
- H264
- H261
- H263
- H263P
- iLBC
- G722
- G726
- SPEEX
- ADPCM
- MPEG4
- VP8
- Opus

### VoIP Setting

Setting	Description
DTMF Mode	<ul> <li>Set the default mode for sending DTMF tones.</li> <li>RFC4733 (RFC2833): DTMF will be carried in the RTP stream in different RTP packets rather than the audio signal.</li> <li>Info: DTMF will be carried in the SIP info messages.</li> <li>Inband: DTMF will be carried in the audio signal.</li> <li>Auto: The PBX will detect if the device supports RFC4733(RFC2833) DTMF. If RFC4733(RFC2833) is supported, PBX will choose RFC4733(RFC2833), or the PBX will choose Inband.</li> </ul>
Qualify	Enable this option to send SIP OPTION packet to SIP device to check if the device is up.
Enable SRTP	Enable or disable SRTP (encrypted RTP) for the trunk.
T.38 Support	Enable or disable T.38 fax for this trunk. Enabling T.38 will add the performance cost.
	We suggest that you disable T.38.
Inband Progress	This Inband Progress setting applies to the exten- sions which make calls through this trunk.
	Note: To configure global Inband Progress setting, you need to contact Yeastar support to configure a cus- tom config file.
	<ul> <li>Check this option: PBX will send a 183 Session Progress to the extension when told to indi- cate ringing and will immediately start sending ringing as audio.</li> <li>Uncheck this option: PBX will send a 180 Ring- ing to the extension when told to indicate ring- ing and will NOT send it as audio.</li> </ul>
Ignore 183 Mes- sage without SDP	This option determines the way PBX handles 183 messages without SDP.

Setting	Description
	<ul> <li>Check this option: PBX will not forward 183 messages that don't contain SDP.</li> <li>Uncheck this option: PBX will process all the 183 messages without SDP to those with SDP and forward them.</li> </ul>

### **Call Restriction**

Setting	Description
Call Restriction Type	Specify based on which type of calls to restrict the max concurrent call number of this trunk.
	<ul> <li>Outbound Call: Only outbound calls will be restricted.</li> <li>All: Both outbound calls and inbound calls will be restricted.</li> </ul>
Maximum Concur- rent Calls	Specify the maximum number of concurrent calls allowed in this trunk. The default is Unlimited.

## DIDs/DDIs

Direct Inward Dialling (DID), also called Direct Dial-in (DDI), is a service offered by telephone companies. For more information of DID concepts, see <u>DID Number Overview</u>.

• DID numbers are usually configured on inbound routes to distinguish inbound calls.

For more information, see Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers.

• For more instructions on configuring the DID numbers, see <u>Configure DID Numbers on</u> <u>a Trunk</u>.

## Inbound Caller ID Reformatting

When a user calls in the PBX, the trunk provider may send a caller ID that is inconvenient for you to redial directly.

In this case, you can reformat inbound caller ID based on a trunk. The caller ID will be reformatted before it is sent to the called party.

For more information, see <u>Reformat Inbound Caller ID based on a Trunk</u>.

## **Outbound Caller ID**

Outbound caller ID is the phone number or name that is displayed on the called party's device.

You can set up a global outbound caller ID for a trunk or assign caller IDs for extension users.

### Note:

By default, each trunk has a default phone number that will be displayed on the called party's device. Outbound Caller ID configuration requires support from the trunk provider. Contact your trunk provider first before you configure Outbound Caller ID, or the settings won't take effect and outbound calls may fail.

If you set the caller ID number, when users make outbound calls through this trunk, the called party will see this caller ID number instead of the calling party's number.

For more information of outbound caller ID configurations, see <u>Customize Outbound Caller</u> <u>IDs</u>

### **SIP Headers**

The SIP Headers settings require professional knowledge of SIP protocol. Incorrect configurations may cause calling issues. It is wise to leave the default settings provided on the SIP trunk page. However, for a few fields, you need to change them to suit your situation.

The following settings are included on the SIP Headers page.

- Inbound Parameters
- Outbound Parameters
- Other Settings

**Inbound Parameters** 

Setting	Description
Get Caller ID From	Decide from which header field will the trunk retrieve Caller ID.
	Follow System
	The trunk will follow the <u>global Get Caller ID From</u> <u>setting</u> . • From • Contact • Remote-Party-ID • P-Asserted Identify • P-Preferred-Identity
Get DID From	Different devices or providers may contain DID numbers in different SIP headers. When an inbound call through a SIP trunk reaches the PBX, the PBX needs to retrieve a correct DID number, or the call will fail.

Setting	Description
	Adjust the setting after analysis of the SIP packets sent from the trunk provider. The following SIP headers are available to select:
	• Follow System
	The trunk will follow the <u>global Get DID From set-</u> <u>ting</u> . • To • Invite • Diversion • Remote-Party-ID
	<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>If this option is selected, but the SIP provider doesn't support Remote Party ID, the PBX will retrieve DID from INVITE header.</li> <li>P-Asserted Identify</li> <li>P-Called-Party-ID</li> <li>P-Preferred-Identity</li> </ul>

### **Outbound Parameters**

For outbound calls, you can define the parameters included in the following SIP INVITE headers:

• From

A From header contains caller ID and caller ID name, which are defined as the followings in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

- From User Part: Indicates caller ID.
- From Display Name Part: Indicates caller ID name.

You can define which parameters will be used in these two parts of a SIP From header.

- Diversion
- Remote Party ID
- P-Asserted Identify
- P-Preferred-Identity

Each SIP header has multiple options to define the parameters. The following tables describe the options.

Note:

For different types of SIP trunk, the optional items are different.

Setting	Description
	The system selects a parameter by the fol- lowing priority from top to bottom:
[Default]	<ul> <li>Outbound Route Outbound Caller ID</li> <li>Extension's Outbound Caller ID in Trunk</li> <li>Trunk Outbound Caller ID</li> <li>Trunk Username</li> <li>Extension Caller ID</li> <li>The Originator Caller ID</li> </ul>
[None]	Do not send the parameter with the SIP IN- VITE packet.
Outbound Route Out- bound Caller ID	The outbound caller ID configured on the out- bound route that is used for the outbound calls.
Extension's Outbound Caller ID in Trunk	The extension's associated outbound caller ID with the trunk.
Trunk Outbound Caller ID	The global outbound caller ID for the trunk (Trunk > Outbound Caller ID > General).
Trunk Username	The username configured on the trunk.
Extension Caller ID	The caller ID configured on the extension.
Originator Caller ID	<ul> <li>The Caller ID of the call originator (the first caller in the case that the call is transferred).</li> <li>If the call originator is an external number, the external number will be taken.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If the call originator is an extension, the priority order will be Extension Out- bound Caller ID → [Default].</li> </ul>
Custom	Define a custom value.

# Other Settings

Setting	Description
User Agent	If the ITSP requires User Agent for authentication, enter the User Agent information that is provided by the ITSP.
Realm	Realm is a string displayed to users so they know which username and password to use.

Setting	Description
	Note: If you don't know what to fill in, contact your service provider for further instructions.
Send Privacy ID	Whether to send the Privacy ID in SIP header or not. The default is unchecked.
User Phone	Whether to add the parameter user=phone as a re- quest line in the header field of the SIP INVITE pack- et.
	Note: Enable this option only when the SIP provider re- quires.
100rel	Whether to support 100rel or not.
Maxptime	Select the value of the maxptime used when the PBX sends the INVITE packet.
	Note: If you select [Default], PBX will send a corresponding maxptime value according to the codec that is used for the outbound call.
Support P-Ear- ly-Media	Set whether the P-Early-Media field is included in the INVITE packet.

# Seize a Trunk to Call Out by BLF Key

This topic describes how to configure a BLF key on your IP phone via Auto Provisioning to monitor the PBX trunk, and press the BLF key to quickly place an outbound call through the monitored trunk.

# Prerequisites

• A phone is connected to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition via Auto Provisioning, and has been assigned with an extension.

For more information, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u>.

• If you want to seize a trunk to call out by BLF key, make sure the extension assigned to the provisioned phone has the permission to use the monitored trunk for outbound calls.

### Procedure

- Step1. Set up a function key for trunk monitoring
- Step2. Apply the configuration to IP phone

### Step1. Set up a function key for trunk monitoring

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the extension that is assigned to the phone.
- 2. Click the Function Keys tab.
- 3. Configure a function key to monitor the status of a trunk.

The following figure shows a configuration example of monitoring the trunk peer-trunk-66.41.

User	Presence	Voicemail	Features	Advanced	Security	Linkus Clients	Phone	Function Keys	
Function	Кеу	Туре			Value			Label	Operations
Key 1		BLF		~	peer-trunk-66	5.41		66.41	団

- Type: Select BLF.
- Value: Enter the name of the trunk to be monitored. In this example, enter peer-trunk-66.41.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- 4. Click Save.

# Step2. Apply the configuration to IP phone

- 1. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones, click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the desired phone.
  - The system prompts you whether to reprovision the phone.
- 2. In the pop-up window, click OK.

### Result

- The BLF key shows the real-time status of the monitored trunk:
  - Green BLF LED: The trunk is being monitored, and the status is idle.
  - Red BLF LED: The trunk is busy.
  - BLF LED off: The BLF key configuration failed.
- Press the BLF key to seize the trunk, you will get a dial tone, then dial the number that you want to call.

# **Call Control**

# **Emergency Calling**

# **Emergency Calling Overview**

This topic describes concepts that you need to know before managing emergency calling, including requirements and restrictions, basic emergency calling, and enhanced emergency calling.

### Requirements

To make an emergency call, you should make sure the following requirements are met:

- IP phones or soft phones must be registered to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.
- At least one trunk should be configured for an emergency number.

## Basic emergency calling

The basic emergency service only connects a caller to the local Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP), but no location is provided. Emergency callers must be ready to provide their location information for the PSAP. PSAP then arranges appropriate emergency response after communicating with the callers.

For more information, see <u>Set up Basic Emergency Calling</u>.

## Enhanced emergency calling

Enhanced emergency service is only available for specific countries and regions, such as E911 in North America, E112 in continental Europe, E999 in England, etc.

For an enhanced emergency call, PSAP can immediately pinpoint the caller's location based on the calling number.

### Important:

For wireless IP phones and softphones (such as Linkus), the emergency caller's location can only be determined by the Emergency Outbound Caller ID configured on the PBX.

For more information, see <u>Set up Enhanced Emergency Calling</u>.

## Terminology

The following list defines the key terminology for enhanced emergency calling.

PSAP

A Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) is responsible for receiving emergency calls and arranging appropriate emergency response, such as dispatching a police, fire, or ambulance team.

#### ERL

An Emergency Response Location (ERL) is a specific geographic location to which an emergency response team may be dispatched. To provide the PSAP with the emergency caller's precise location, you may need to set multiple ERLs.

#### ELIN

An Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN) is the phone number (Caller ID), which is associated with an ERL. When an emergency call is made, the ELIN is displayed on the PSAP side so that they can match the caller ID with the ERL.

Note:

ELIN is also helpful for PSAP to call the emergency caller back in case the call is disconnected.

Examples of ERL/ELIN mapping:

• One ERL for each building

All the users in the same building are associated with the same ELIN.

ELIN	ERL
6085225672	No. 63-2 Wanghai Road, 2nd Software Park, Xiamen
6085225673	No. 63-3 Wanghai Road, 2nd Software Park, Xiamen

One ERL for each building floor

All the users on the same floor of a building are associated with the same ELIN.

ELIN	ERL
6085225682	5/F, No. 63-2 Wanghai Road, 2nd Software Park, Xiamen
6085225683	4/F, No. 63-2 Wanghai Road, 2nd Software Park, Xiamen

One ERL for each room

Each user of a room has a unique ELIN.

ELIN	ERL
6085225692	Room3005, No.1 Guanri Road, Software Park Siming District Xiamen
6085225693	Room3006, No.1 Guanri Road, Software Park Siming District Xiamen

# Set up Basic Emergency Calling

To ensure that users can make emergency calls for help when an accident occurs, you need to set up emergency calling in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. This topic describes how to set up <u>basic emergency calling</u> in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number, click Add.
- 2. In the Name field, specify a name to help you identify it.
- 3. In the Emergency Number field, enter the emergency number.
- 4. Leave the Emergency Outbound Caller ID Priority field as the default setting.

### Note:

- Emergency Outbound Caller ID Priority setting is typically for <u>enhanced emer-</u> <u>gency calling</u>, this setting will not affect basic emergency calling.
- For basic emergency calling, you don't need to set Emergency Outbound Caller ID for extensions and trunks.
- 5. In the Trunk's Emergency Outbound Caller ID field, configure trunks for emergency calls.

### - Note:

Emergency calls have the highest priority. If the selected trunk is occupied, PBX will terminate the ongoing call, and place the emergency call.

- a. Click Add.
- b. In the drop-down list of Trunk, select a trunk.
- c. Leave the Trunk's Emergency Outbound Caller ID field blank.

### - Note:

Do not set emergency outbound caller ID for basic emergency calling, or the emergency calls may fail.

d. Optional: Click Add to add another trunk and repeat step a - step c.

🚽 Note:

If the first trunk cannot work properly, the PBX will use the second trunk to make calls.

6. Click Save and Apply.

## What to do next

After setting up an emergency calling, you may need to consider the following configurations:

- <u>Set up a Route for PSAP Callbacks</u>
- Add an Emergency Notification Contact

# Set up Enhanced Emergency Calling

To ensure that users can make emergency calls for help when an accident occurs, you need to set up emergency calling in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. This topic describes how to set up <u>enhanced emergency calling</u> in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

### Prerequisites

Purchase enhanced emergency service from an Internet Telephony Service Provider (ITSP).

ITSP will provide DID numbers that are associated with your locations. DID number is also called Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN).

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number, click Add.
- 2. In the Name field, specify a name to help you identify it.
- 3. In the Emergency Number field, enter the emergency number.
- 4. In the Emergency Outbound Caller ID Priority field, select which outbound caller ID will be sent to the Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) in priority when an emergency call is made.
  - Trunk's Emergency Outbound Caller ID: Select this option if you want to set a common ELIN for all extension users. PSAP receives the trunk's emergency outbound caller ID no matter who makes the emergency call, which indicates PSAP receives a common location information.
  - Extension's Emergency Outbound Caller ID: Select this option if you want to <u>assign ELINs for individual users</u>.
    - Extension users with specific ELINs are associated with their respective locations.
    - Extension users without specific ELINs share a common ELIN (the trunk's emergency outbound caller ID) and are associated with a common location.
- 5. In the Trunk's Emergency Outbound Caller ID field, configure trunks for emergency calls.
  - a. In the drop-down list of Trunk, select a trunk.

- Note:

Emergency calls have the highest priority. If the selected trunk is occupied, PBX will terminate the ongoing call, and place the emergency call.

- b. In the Trunk's Emergency Outbound Caller ID, enter the Emergency Location Identification Number (ELIN) that you have purchased from the trunk provider.
- c. Optional: Click Add to add another trunk and repeat step a step c.

Note:

If the first trunk cannot work properly, the PBX will use the second trunk to make calls.

6. Click Save and Apply.

Assign ELINs for individual users

To provide the PSAP with the emergency caller's precise location, you may need to purchase multiple ELINs and assign these ELINs to extension users.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, click to edit the desired extension.
- 2. On the extension User page, scroll down the page, enter the ELIN in the Emergency Outbound Caller ID field.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

After the user dials an emergency number, the PSAP will locate the specific geographic location of the user by the extension user's ELIN.

### What to do next

After setting up an emergency calling, you may need to consider the following configurations:

- <u>Set up a Route for PSAP Callbacks</u>
- Add an Emergency Notification Contact

# Set up a Route for PSAP Callbacks

In case that the emergency caller is not available to answer the returned call from PSAP, you can set up an inbound route to forward the call to an on-site security personnel.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route.
- 2. Click Add to add an inbound route for PSAP callbacks.
- 3. In the Name field, specify a name to help you identify it.

- 4. In the Caller ID Pattern section, add all the emergency numbers that you have set on the PBX.
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. In the Pattern field, enter the emergency number.
  - c. Optional: To add another emergency number, repeat step a b.
- 5. In the Trunk section, select the trunks that are used for emergency calls to the Selected box.
- 6. In the Default Destination field, select Extension, and select the user who is responsible for answering the returned calls from PSAP.
- 7. Leave other fields as the default settings.
- 8. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

When a PSAP operator calls back, the call will be forwarded to the extension user that is configured on the inbound route.

**Related information** 

Set up Basic Emergency Calling Set up Enhanced Emergency Calling

# Manage Emergency Numbers

After you add emergency numbers, you can edit or delete them.

### Edit an emergency number

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number, click  $\checkmark$  beside the emergency number that you want to edit.
- 2. Edit information of emergency number.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete an emergency number

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number, click 🛄 beside the emergency number that you want to delete.
- 2. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK to confirm.
- 3. Click Apply.

# Export and Import Emergency Numbers

The emergency numbers configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired emergency numbers in the exported file, and im-

port the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import emergency numbers.

### Export emergency numbers

You can export all emergency numbers to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Emergency Number Parameters</u>.

#### Import emergency numbers

We recommend that you export emergency numbers to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information, see <u>Emergency Number Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The emergency numbers in the CSV file will be displayed in the Emergency Number list.

# **Emergency Notification Contacts**

# Add an Emergency Notification Contact

When a user makes an emergency call, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition sends a notification to remind the emergency contacts that who dialed which emergency number.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number > Notification Contacts.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. In the Notification Contact field, select a contact type to receive emergency notifications.
  - Specific Extension: Send emergency notification to a specific extension (for example, receptionist ).

If you select this contact type, select a desired extension from the Specific Extension drop-down list.

- The Extension Group Manager of the Extension who dialed the emergency number: Send emergency notification to the extension group manager of the extension who dialed the emergency number.
- Specific Group Manager: Send emergency notification to the manager of a specific extension group.

If you select this contact type, select the desired extension group from the Specific Group Manager drop-down list.

• Custom: Send emergency notification to an external contact.

If you select this contact type, enter a contact name in the Contact Name field.

- 4. In the Notification Method field, select a notification method.
  - Send Email: The PBX will send notifications to the Email address of the contact.

For more information about emergency Email template, see <u>Configure Emer-</u><u>gency Notification Email</u>.

### - Note:

- To ensure that PBX can successfully send notifications to the Email address, make sure that the <u>Email Server</u> is configured correctly.
- If the notification contact is an extension user, make sure that an effective Email address is associated with the user's extension.
- Call Mobile: The PBX will call the mobile number of the contact, and play an announcement.

For more information about the announcement, see <u>Configure Emergency Noti-</u><u>fication Prompt</u>.

- Note:

To ensure that PBX can successfully call the mobile number, make sure that the <u>Prefix</u> is configured correctly according to the outbound route rule.

• Call Extension: The PBX will call the extension number of the contact, and play an announcement.

For more information about the announcement, see <u>Configure Emergency Noti-</u><u>fication Prompt</u>.

5. Click Save.

# Manage Emergency Notification Contacts

After you add emergency notification contacts, you can edit or delete them.

# Edit an emergency notification contact

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number > Notification Con-

tact, click  $\checkmark$  beside the emergency notification contact that you want to edit.

- 2. Edit emergency notification contact or notification method.
- 3. Click Save.

# Delete an emergency notification contact

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number > Notification Contact.
- 2. To delete an emergency notification contact, do as follows:
  - a. Click 🔟 beside the desired contact.
  - b. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.
- 3. To delete emergency notification contacts in bulk, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the desired contacts, click Delete.
  - b. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.

# **Configure Emergency Notification Email**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides a default email template for emergency notification, you can also customize your own template.

## **Background information**

By default, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition sends emergency notification emails in the language that you have set in <u>system email template</u>. An emergency notification Email contains the following information:

- Caller information: Include extension name and number.
- Emergency information: Include emergency name and number, and emergency call time.
- PBX information: Include PBX nameand PBX serial number.

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number > Notification Contact.
- 2. Click Email Template.
- 3. Customize email template.
  - a. In the Template drop-down list, select Custom.

- b. Edit email subject and content according to your needs.
- c. Click Save.

# **Configure Emergency Notification Prompt**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides a default voice prompt for emergency call notification, you can also customize your own prompt.

### **Background information**

The default emergency announcement reminds the contacts that who dialed which emergency number.

## Procedure

- Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Emergency Number > Notification Contact.
- 2. Click Notification Prompt.
- 3. In the pop-up window, change the notification prompt.
  - a. In the Prompt drop-down list, select a desired prompt or upload a custom prompt.



The upload prompt file should meet the audio file requirements.

b. In the Prompt Repeat Count field, set how many times to play the prompt.c. Click Save.

# **Business Hours and Holidays**

# **Overview of Business Hours and Holidays**

This topic describes different types of time defined in the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. Read the concepts before you manage business hours and holidays.

### **Business hours**

Business Hours is the working hours during which you conduct business. A rest break that allows an employee to rest for a short period of time during working days is also considered as Business Hours.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to set a global business hours and also supports custom business hours for designated users.

Global Business Hours

Global Business Hours is the main business hours for your company. Global Business Hours may apply to most of the employees who have fixed work schedules.

For more information, see <u>Set Global Business Hours</u> and <u>Route Inbound Calls based</u> on <u>Global Business Hours</u>.

Custom Business Hours

Custom Business Hours is typically for departments with different hours from your main business hours. You need to create custom schedules that accommodate each department's unique hours and call handling needs.

For more information, see Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours.

Custom Time Periods

Custom Time Periods is typically for individual employees who have their own work schedules.

For more information, see <u>Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours</u>.

### Holidays

Holiday defines the days your business is closed due to a holiday. Holidays can be divided into two types:

- Fixed-date Holidays
- Moveable-date Holidays

You can add holidays by date, month, or week according to the holiday type. For more information, see <u>Create a Holiday</u>.

### **Outside Business Hours**

Outside Business Hours is the time periods that are not defined as Business Hours or Holidays.

**Related information** 

<u>Set Global Business Hours</u> <u>Monitor Time Condition Status</u> <u>Create a Holiday</u> <u>Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls</u> Automatic Reset of Time Condition

# Global Business Hours

# Set Global Business Hours

This topic describes how to set up Global Business Hours.

# **Background information**

Global Business Hours is the main business hours for your company. Global Business Hours may apply to most of the employees who have fixed work schedules.

For more information about different types of time in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, see <u>Overview of Business Hours and Holidays</u>.

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays > Business Hours, click Add.
- 2. In the Business Hours section, click Add, then specify the hours when your business is open.
- 3. In the Break Hours section, click Add, then specify rest breaks during the working days.
- 4. In the Date Settings section, select your working days.
  - Days of Week: If enabled, you can only use the Days of Week as the date condition for your business hours.
  - Advanced Options: If enabled, you can configure business hours more flexibly with a mixed condition of Week, Month, and Date.
- 5. Optional: In the Other Options section, enter a note in the text field to help you identify the time group.
- 6. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

- A time group is created for Global Business Hours.
- You can create more time groups according to your company's business hours. All the time groups created on the Business Hours page are regarded as your company's global business hours.

## What to do next

- To handle inbound calls based on the Global Business Hours, see <u>Route Inbound Calls</u> based on Global Business Hours.
- To limit users to make outbound calls based on the Global Business Hours, see <u>Set up</u> <u>an Outbound Route</u>.

### **Related information**

Monitor Time Condition Status Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours

# Manage Global Business Hours

This topic describes how to edit and delete the time groups that you've defined as your Global Business Hours.

Edit a time group of Global Business Hours

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays.
- 2. On the Business Hours page, select a desired time group, click  $\mathbb{Z}$  .
- 3. Change the time settings.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

The Global Business Hours is updated.

Delete a time group of Global Business Hours

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays.
- 2. On the Business Hours page, select a desired time group, click Delete.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK to confirm.

The time group is deleted from the Global Business Hours.

### **Related information**

<u>Set Global Business Hours</u> <u>Overview of Business Hours and Holidays</u>

# Holidays

# Create a Holiday

This topic describes how to create holidays by date, week, and month.

# Create a holiday by date

If the holiday date varies every year, you can create a holiday by date.

Example

Chinese Spring Festival varies every year, and 2020 Chinese Spring Festival falls on Jan. 24 to Feb. 8. You can set the holiday as follows.

## Configuration Example

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays > Holidays.
- 2. On the Holidays page, click Add.

- 3. In the Basic section, enter 2020 Chinese Spring Festival in the text field.
- 4. In the Type section, set the type and the date of holiday.

Туре			
* Holiday Type			
By Date			~
* Date			
01/24/2020 00:00	~	02/08/2020 23:59	Ë

- Holiday Type: Select By Date.
- Date: Select the holiday start date and end date.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

### Create a holiday by month

If the holiday always falls on the same date, you can set a holiday by month.

Example

The Christmas falls on Dec. 25 every year. You can set the holiday as follows.

**Configuration Example** 

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays > Holidays.
- 2. On the Holidays page, click Add.
- 3. In the Basic section, enter Christmas in the text field.
- 4. In the Type section, set the type and the date of holiday.

Туре			
<ul> <li>Holiday Type</li> </ul>			
By Month			$\sim$
* Date			
12/25 00:00	~	12/25 23:59	Ë

- Holiday Type: Select By Month.
- Date: Select the holiday start date and end date.

5. Click Save and Apply.

Create a holiday by week

If a holiday always falls on the same week, you can set a holiday by week.

Example

Thanksgiving Day falls on the fourth Thursday of November. You can set the holiday as follows.

Configuration Example

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays > Holidays.
- 2. On the Holiday page, click Add.
- 3. In the Basic section, enter Thanksgiving Day in the text field.
- 4. In the Type section, set the type and the date of holiday.

Гуре					
Holiday Type					
By Week			$\sim$		
Date	*	*	*	*	
November v	Fourth Week	<ul> <li>Tuesday</li> </ul>	V 00:00	() 23:59	0

- Holiday Type: Select By Week.
- Date: Select the month and the day of a specific week.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

### What to do next

- To handle inbound calls based on Holidays, see Set up an Inbound Route.
- To limit users to make outbound calls during holidays, see Set up an Outbound Route.

### **Related information**

Overview of Business Hours and Holidays Manage Holidays

# Manage Holidays

This topic describes how to edit and delete a holiday.

## Edit a holiday

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays > Holidays.

- 2. On the Holidays page, select a desired holiday, click  $\mathbb{Z}$ .
- 3. Change the holiday settings.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

The holiday list is updated.

### Delete a holiday

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Business Hours and Holidays > Holidays.
- 2. On the Holidays page, select a desired holiday, click Delete.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK to confirm.

The holiday is deleted from the holiday list.

### **Related information**

<u>Create a Holiday</u> Overview of Business Hours and Holidays

# **Time Condition**

# Time Condition Overview

Time Condition is the communication feature in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition that enables you to set up distinct time periods for call handling. Time Condition allows you to route calls to various destinations at a different time like business hours, outside business hours, and holidays.

### Where can Time Condition be applied?

Time Condition can be applied to an Inbound Route, an Outbound Route, and extension presence switch.

Apply to an Inbound Route

Time Condition can be used to control the destination of an inbound call based on date and time.

When a call reaches PBX, PBX will check the current system date and time against the time group associated, and then route the call to corresponding destination.



Apply to an Outbound Route

Time Condition can be used to limit the use of an Outbound Route based on date and time.

When a call is made, the system will check the current system date and time against the time group associated. Only when the time comes to the permitted time group can the outbound call be made.



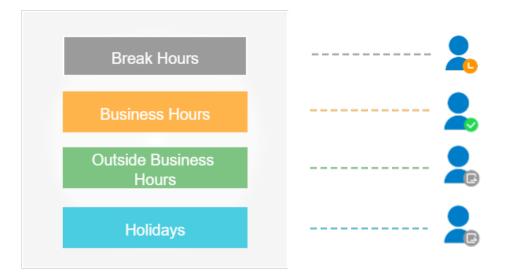
Apply to extension presence switch

Extension presence status can be auto switched based on Time Condition. When time condition changes, extension presence status would be changed accordingly.

For example, when the PBX is in the time condition for Business Hours, the extension status is auto switched to Available.

- Note:

This feature should be enabled on extension configuration page. For more information, see <u>Automatically Switch Extension Presence Based on Time</u>.



### Time Condition override

For a time-based inbound route, the system routes inbound calls based on the system time. However, users may need to force open or close business occasionally. In this case, you can grant permissions to allow specific users to override time condition for inbound calls through the route. For more information, see <u>Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls</u>.

#### Note:

- If users do not manually clear time condition override, the system will automatically reset the time condition. For more information, see <u>Automatic Reset of Time Condition</u>.
- To keep the time condition after overriding, see <u>Disable automatic reset of time condition</u>.

#### **Related information**

Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours Set up an Outbound Route

# Allow Users to Override Time Condition by Feature Code

By default, all the users can NOT override time condition. To allow users to override time condition by feature code, follow instructions in the topic to grant permissions to specific users.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. Scroll down the page, and configure the permission of time condition override in the Switch Business Hours and Holidays Status section.

Table 22.		
Setting	Feature Code	Permission
Switch Global Business Hours and Holidays Status	*99	Select de- sired exten-
(for Global Business Hours)		sions.
Time Condition Switching Prefix	Starting with prefix *8	_
(for Custom Business Hours and Custom Time Periods)	Feature codes starting with *8 Would be generated for inbound routes that are based on Custom Business Hours or Custom Time Pe- riods.	

3. Click Save and Apply.

### **Related information**

Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls Monitor Time Condition Status Automatic Reset of Time Condition Enable or Disable Automatic Reset of Time Condition

# Allow Users to Override Time Condition on Operator Panel

By default, all the users can NOT override time condition. To allow users to override time condition on Operator Panel, follow instructions in the topic to grant permissions to specific users.

### Restrictions

On Operator Panel, only time condition for Global Business Hours can be overridden.

## Procedure

The permission of time condition override can only be assigned to extension group managers. Follow the instructions below to grant permission to extension group managers.



If you want to grant permissions to a specific user, you can assign a custom user type to the member, and customize permissions. For more information, see <u>Assign a custom user</u> type to a group member.

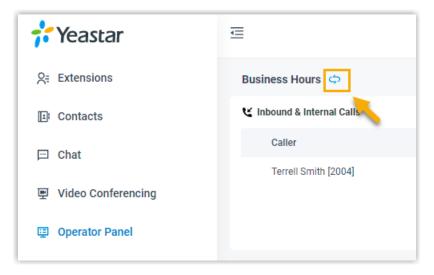
- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension Group.
- 2. Select an extension group, and click  $\mathbb{Z}$ .
- 3. On the Extension Group page, click Group Permissions tab.
- 4. In the Permission Configuration section, select the checkbox of Switch Business Hours and Holidays status.

Manager			
👻 🔽 Alle	ow Using Operator Panel		
×	Switch group members' presence		
<b>~</b>	Call distribution management (Redirect, Transfer, Drag and Drop operation)		
<b>~</b>	Pick up or hang up other extensions' calls		
<b>~</b>	Call monitor operations (Listen, Whisper, Barge In)		
<b>~</b>	Call parking operations (Park, Retrieve)		
<b>~</b>	Manage IVR calls		
	Switch Business Hours and Holidays status		
<b>~</b>	Switch extensions' recording status		

5. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

On Operator Panel, the user whose user type is Manager can click  $\bigcirc$  to override time condition for Global Business Hours.



For more information, see Override Time Condition on Operator Panel.

#### **Related information**

Allow Users to Override Time Condition by Feature Code Automatic Reset of Time Condition Enable or Disable Automatic Reset of Time Condition

# Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls

If you have configured a time-based inbound route, the system will automatically route calls to different destinations based on time. However, users may need to force open or close business occasionally. This topic describes how to achieve time condition override for inbound calls.

#### **Background information**

Users may need to override time condition in the following scenarios:

Temporary night shift

After business hours, the employee who needs to work in the night can force open the business hours to provide communication services for customers.

Occasionally leaving

Your company may close the business earlier than usual on a special day. For example, your company will close the business one hour in advance on the Christmas day and you can force close business before you leave.

Override time condition for inbound calls (Global Business Hours)

**Background information** 

An inbound route based on Global Business Hours is set up as follows:

Default Destination			
✓ Time Condition			
Time-based Routing Mode			
Based on Global Business Hours	$\sim$		
Business Hours Destination		*	
Queue	$\sim$	6400-Support	
Outside Business Hours Destination		*	
IVR	~	6200-24h-service	
lolidays Destination		*	
IVR	~	6201-Holidays	

#### Procedure

Follow the instructions below to achieve time condition override for inbound calls through the route:

- 1. Grant permission to allow specific users to override time condition.
- 2. To override time condition, the authorized users should dial corresponding feature code (default \*99).

Inbound calls would be routed to different destinations based on the time when users dial feature code.

Table 23.	
Operate Time	Result
Dial *99 during Business Hours	Inbound calls will be routed to Out- side Business Hours destination (IVR 6200).
Dial *99 during Outside Business Hours	Inbound calls will be routed to Busi- ness Hours destination (Queue 6400).
Dial *99 during Holidays	Inbound calls will be routed to Busi- ness Hours destination (Queue 6400).

3. To clear time condition override, the authorized users should dial feature code (default: \*99) again.

### - Note:

- If users do not manually clear time condition override, the system will automatically reset the time condition. For more information, see <u>Automatic Reset of Time Condition</u>.
- To keep the time condition after overriding, see <u>Disable automatic</u> reset of time condition.

Override time condition for inbound calls (Custom Business Hours)

**Background information** 

An inbound route based on Custom Business Hours is set up as follows:

Default Destination				
✓ Time Condition				
* Time-based Routing Mode				
Based on Custom Business Hours	~			
⊕ Add Custom Business Hours				
Custom Business Hours	Days of Week	Month	n Date	Operations
09:00-12:00;14:00-18:00	Mon. Tue. Wed.			<b>2</b> 🗇
Business Hours Destination		*		
Queue	$\sim$	6400-Support Team		$\vee$
Outside Business Hours Destination		*		
IVR	$\sim$	6200-24h-Services		$\vee$
Holidays Destination		*		
IVR	$\sim$	6201-Holidays		$\vee$
Feature Code				
*801				

### Procedure

Follow the instructions below to achieve time condition override for inbound calls through the route:

- 1. Grant permission to allow specific users to override time condition.
- 2. To override time condition, the authorized users should dial feature code \*801.

Inbound calls would be routed to different destinations based on the time when users dial feature code.

Operate Time	Result
Dial *801 during Business Hours	Inbound calls will be routed to Out- side Business Hours destination (IVR 6200).
Dial *801 during Outside Business Hours	Inbound calls will be routed to Busi- ness Hours destination (Queue 6400).
Dial *801 during Holidays	Inbound calls will be routed to Busi- ness Hours destination (Queue 6400).

Table 24.

3. To clear time condition override, the authorized users should dial \*801 again.

- Note:

- If users do not manually clear time condition override, the system will automatically reset the time condition. For more information, see <u>Automatic Reset of Time Condition</u>.
- To keep the time condition after overriding, see <u>Disable automatic</u> reset of time condition.

Override time condition for inbound calls (Custom Time Periods)

### **Background information**

An inbound route based on Custom Time Periods is set up as follows:

Default Destination						
Time Condition						
Time-based Routing Mode						
Based on Custom Time Periods		$\sim$				
⊕ Add Custom Time Periods	T Delete					
Custom Time Periods	Days of Week	Month Dat	e Destination	Feature Code	Move	Operations
08:30-12:00;14:00-18:00	Mon. Wed. Fri.		Extension	*8103	$\overline{\wedge}$   $\wedge$   $\checkmark$   $\underline{\vee}$	2 🗇
08:30-12:00;14:00-18:00	Tue. Thu. Sat.		Extension	*8104	⊼   ^   ⊻	2 🖻
lolidays Destination			*			
IVR		$\sim$	6201-Hol	idays		
witch to the Holidays Destination						
*8101						
efault Destination			*			
IVR		$\sim$	6200-24h	-service		
Switch to the Default Destination						
*8102						
Reset						

#### Procedure

Follow the instructions below to achieve time condition override for inbound calls through the route:

- 1. Grant permission to allow specific users to override time condition.
- 2. To override time condition, the authorized users should dial a specific feature code.

Inbound calls would be routed to corresponding destination based on the dialed feature code.

Time Group	Description	Destination	Feature Code
Time Period 1	Monday, Wednesday, Friday • 08:30 - 12:00 • 14:00 - 18:00	Extension (2000-Leo Ball)	*8103
Time Period 2	Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday • 08:30 - 12:00 • 14:00 - 18:00	Extension (2004-Terrell Smith)	*8104
Holidays		IVR (6201-Holi- days)	*8101
Outside Business Hours		IVR (6200-24h- Services)	*8102

Table 25.

3. To clear time condition override, the authorized users should dial the Reset feature code \*8100.

### - Note:

- If users do not manually clear time condition override, the system will automatically reset the time condition. For more information, see <u>Automatic Reset of Time Condition</u>.
- To keep the time condition after overriding, see <u>Disable automatic</u> reset of time condition.

#### **Related information**

Allow Users to Override Time Condition by Feature Code Allow Users to Override Time Condition on Operator Panel Monitor Time Condition Status Automatic Reset of Time Condition Enable or Disable Automatic Reset of Time Condition

# Monitor Time Condition Status

This topic describes how to set BLF keys on IP phones to monitor time condition status. In this way, users can know which time period the system is working and where inbound calls would be routed.

### **Background information**

Users can monitor time condition status in the following ways:

Monitor time condition status on IP phone

For the users who want to monitor time condition status on their phones, you can set a BLF key for each user.

For more information, see the followings:

- Monitor time condition status for inbound calls (Global Business Hours)
- Monitor time condition status for inbound calls (Custom Business Hours)
- Monitor time condition status for inbound calls (Custom Time Periods)

Monitor time condition status on Operator Panel

For the users <u>who have permission to access Operator Panel</u>, they can monitor time condition status on Operator Panel directly.

For more information, see Monitor Time Condition Status on Operator Panel.

Monitor time condition status for inbound calls (Global Business Hours)

Background information

• An inbound route based on Global Business Hours is set up as follows:

Default Destination			
✓ Time Condition			
* Time-based Routing Mode			
Based on Global Business Hours	$\sim$		
Business Hours Destination		*	
Queue	$\sim$	6400-Support	$\vee$
Outside Business Hours Destination		*	
IVR	$\sim$	6200-24h-service	$\vee$
Holidays Destination		*	
IVR	$\sim$	6201-Holidays	$\sim$

• The feature code for Switch Global Business Hours and Holidays Status is \*99.

* Swite	ch Global Business Hours and Holidays Status
✓ *99	

#### Procedure

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor time condition status.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension,

click 🖉 beside the desired extension.

- b. Click the Function Keys tab.
- c. Configure function keys.

#### Note:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

Function Key	Туре	Value	Label	Operations	Sort
Key 1	BLF V	*99 ∨	Global Business Hours	<u>ت</u>	Ξ

- Type: Select BLF.
- Value: Enter the feature code of Switch Global Business Hours and Holidays Status. In this example, enter \*99.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.

d. Click Save.

- 2. If the extension has been provisioned and associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click C beside the phone assigned to this extension.
  - c. In the pop-up window, click OK to reprovision the phone.
- 3. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision</u> <u>IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.

#### Result

The function key settings are automatically updated on the phone and different BLF LED indicates different status.

- Red: The system is in the status of Business Hours.
- Green: The system is in the status of Outside Business Hours or Holidays.
- Off: The BLF configurations are incorrect.

Monitor time condition status for inbound calls (Custom Business Hours)

**Background information** 

An inbound route based on Custom Business Hours is set up as follows:

Default Destination					
✓ Time Condition					
* Time-based Routing Mode					
Based on Custom Business Hours	$\sim$				
Add Custom Business Hours					
Custom Business Hours	Days of Week		Month	Date	Operations
09:00-12:00;14:00-18:00	Mon. Tue.	Wed			2 🗇
Business Hours Destination		*			
Queue	$\vee$	6400-Support Tea	am		`
Outside Business Hours Destination		*			
IVR	$\sim$	6200-24h-Service	S		\ \
Holidays Destination		*			
IVR	$\vee$	6201-Holidays			\ \
	~				

#### Procedure

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor time condition status.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension,

click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired extension.

- b. Click the Function Keys tab.
- c. Configure function keys.

#### Note:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

Function Key	Туре	Value	Label	Operations	Sort
Key 1	BLF	∨ *801	✓ Custom Business Hours	<u>۵</u>	$\equiv$

- Type: Select BLF.
- Value: Enter feature code of the inbound route. In this example, enter \*801.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.

d. Click Save.

2. If the extension has been provisioned and associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.

- a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension.
- c. In the pop-up window, click OK to reprovision the phone.
- 3. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision</u> <u>IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.

#### Result

The function key settings are automatically updated on the phone and different BLF LED indicates different status.

- Red: The system is in the status of Business Hours.
- Green: The system is in the status of Outside Business Hours or Holidays.
- Off: The BLF configurations are incorrect.

Monitor time condition status for inbound calls (Custom Time Periods)

### **Background information**

An inbound route based on Custom Time Periods is set up as follows:

Default Destination						
Time Condition						
Time-based Routing Mode						
Based on Custom Time Periods		$\vee$				
Add Custom Time Periods	Delete					
Custom Time Periods	Days of Week	Month	Date Destination	Feature Code	Move	Operation
08:30-12:00;14:00-18:00	Mon. Wed. Fri.		Extension	*8103	$\overline{\wedge} ~\mid~ \wedge ~\mid~ \checkmark ~\mid~ \checkmark$	2 🖞
08:30-12:00;14:00-18:00	Tue. Thu. Sat.		Extension	*8104	$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$   $\mathbf{A}$   $\mathbf{A}$   $\mathbf{A}$	🖉   🗇
	Tue. Thu. Sat.		Extension	*8104	$\overline{\mathbf{v}} \mid \mathbf{v} \mid \mathbf{v} \mid \mathbf{v}$	2 🖻
O8:30-12:00;14:00-18:00 Holidays Destination	Tue. Thu. Sat.	~			$\mathbf{v} \mid \mathbf{v} \mid \mathbf{v} \mid \mathbf{v}$	∠   ⊡
Holidays Destination		~	*		$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$   $\mathbf{v}$   $\mathbf{v}$   $\mathbf{v}$	
Holidays Destination		v	*		<b>⊼</b>   ∧   ∨   ±	
Holidays Destination IVR Switch to the Holidays Destination		v	*		▼   ^   ⊻	2
Holidays Destination IVR Switch to the Holidays Destination		~ `	* 6201-Holi	days	⊼   ^   ⊻	
Holidays Destination IVR Switch to the Holidays Destination *8101 Default Destination			* 6201-Holi	days	▼   ^   ⊻	
Holidays Destination IVR Switch to the Holidays Destination *8101 Default Destination IVR			* 6201-Holi	days	<b>⊼</b>   ∧   ∨   ±	
Holidays Destination IVR Switch to the Holidays Destination *8101 Default Destination IVR Switch to the Default Destination			* 6201-Holi	days	⊼   ^   ±	

Procedure

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor time condition status.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension,

click 🖉 beside the desired extension.

- b. Click the Function Keys tab.
- c. Configure function keys.

### 🗐 Note:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.



- Type: Select BLF.
- Value: Enter the feature codes as needed.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- d. Click Save.
- 2. If the extension has been provisioned and associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension.
  - c. In the pop-up window, click OK to reprovision the phone.
- 3. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision</u> <u>IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.

#### Result

The function key settings are automatically updated on the phone and different BLF LED indicates different status.

- Red: Current inbound calls would be routed to the destination.
- Green: Current inbound calls would NOT be routed to the destination.
- Off: The BLF configurations are incorrect.

Note: If the BLF key is set for Reset feature code, the BLF LED should be off.

# Automatic Reset of Time Condition

By default, if users have overridden time condition and don't clear the time condition override manually, PBX will automatically reset time condition in next period. The next period can be the starting point of business hours, outside business hours, or holidays. This topic gives examples to help you understand how the system automatically resets time condition.

Examples for Global Business Hours/Custom Business Hours

	Business Hours
	Outside Business Hours
	Next hop of time condition: According to the time condition you config- ured, the system automatically switches the destination for incoming calls at the time point.
+	Override time condition
	Automatically reset time condition

### Example 1: Override to Business Hours



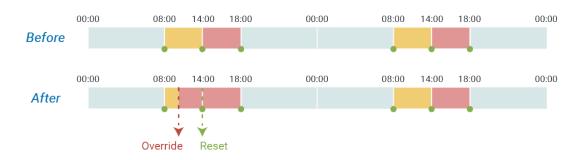
Example 2: Override to Outside Business Hours



## Examples for Custom Time Periods

	Time Period 1
	Time Period 2
	Outside Business Hours
	Next hop of time condition: According to the time condition you config- ured, the system automatically switches the destination for incoming calls at the time point.
÷	Override time condition
•	Automatically reset time condition

### Example 1: Override to Time Period 2



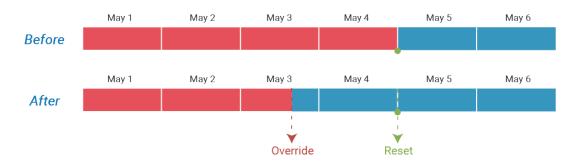
Example 2: Override to Outside Business Hours



## Example for Holidays

	Business Hours
	Holidays
	Next hop of time condition (holiday or non-holiday): According to the time condition you configured, the system automatically switches the destination for incoming calls at the time point.
•	Override time condition
•	Automatically reset time condition

## Example: Override to non-holiday



#### **Related information**

Enable or Disable Automatic Reset of Time Condition Monitor Time Condition Status Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls

# Enable or Disable Automatic Reset of Time Condition

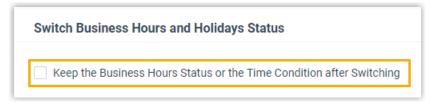
By default, if users have overridden time condition and don't clear the time condition override manually, PBX will automatically reset time condition in next period. You can decide whether to auto reset time condition or keep the time condition after overriding.

## Enable automatic reset of time condition

To make the system go back to the normal schedule after users override time condition, follow the instructions below.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. Scroll down to Switch Business Hours and Holidays Status section.
- 3. Unselect the checkbox of Keep the Business Hours Status or the Time Condition after Switching.



4. Click Save and Apply.

Result

When it comes to the next starting point of business hours, outside business hours, or holidays, the system will reset time condition and go back to the normal schedule.

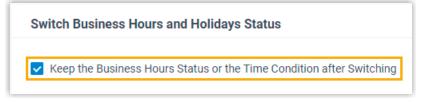
For more information, see <u>Automatic Reset of Time Condition</u>.

Disable automatic reset of time condition

To make the system keep the status after users override time condition, follow the instructions below.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. Scroll down to Switch Business Hours and Holidays Status section.
- 3. Select the checkbox of Keep the Business Hours Status or the Time Condition after Switching.



4. Click Save and Apply.

Result

After users override time condition, the system will stay in the state until someone manually clear the override.

 Tip: Tips for clearing the override:
 For inbound route based on Global Business Hours, dial the feature code of Switch Global Business Hours and Holidays Status.
 For inbound route based on Custom Business Hours, dial the feature code of corresponding inbound route.
 For inbound route based on Custom Time Periods, dial the Reset feature code.

**Related information** 

Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls Monitor Time Condition Status

# Inbound Route

# Inbound Route Overview

An inbound route allows external callers to reach your system and routes the inbound calls to a specific destination based on the pre-configured rules and criteria.

## Types of inbound call routing

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition has the following types of inbound call routing based on different criteria, such as time, DID numbers, and Caller IDs.

## 🚽 Note:

- If you don't specify any criteria on an inbound route, there will be no restriction on the inbound route. The system will route all inbound calls to the inbound route destination.
- You can set up multiple criteria on an inbound route. For example, route inbound calls based on time and DID number, or route inbound calls based on DID number and Caller ID number.

Time-based call routing

Time-based call routing connects callers to a destination based on the time that they call. The inbound calls are handled differently according to your company's time schedules.

For more information, see the following topics:

- Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours
- Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours
- Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours

### **DID-based call routing**

DID-based call routing connects callers to a destination based on the phone numbers (also known as DID) that the callers dial. Only when the dialed DID numbers match the DID rules on the inbound route will the calls be routed to the destination.

For more information, see Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers.

### Caller-ID-based call routing

Caller-ID-based call routing allows you to accept or reject calls based on the caller's phone number. Inbound calls that match the Caller ID pattern on PBX will be routed to the pre-configured destination. For those unmatched, calls can not be established.

For more information, see <u>Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID</u> and <u>Route</u> <u>Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts</u>.

## Inbound route destinations

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides various inbound destinations to meet your business needs.

The following options are available to help you decide the inbound route destinations:

- Extension
- Extension Voicemail
- Group Voicemail
- Match Selected Extensions
- DID Range to Extension Range
- DID Pattern to Selected Extensions
- IVR
- Ring Group
- Queue
- Conference
- External Number
- Outbound Route
- Fax to Email

- Hang up
- Play Greeting then Hang up

## Set up an Inbound Route

To receive inbound calls from external users, you need to set up at least one inbound route.

## **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition has a default inbound route that will route all the inbound calls to an IVR. You can delete the default inbound route, and add a new one to configure settings according to your needs.

## Prerequisites

Ensure that you have set up at least one trunk for external users to call in.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route, click Add.
- 2. In the Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 3. Optional: Set an "alert info text" to add to Alert-info header in INVITE request for inbound calls.

When receiving an inbound call, the phone will inspect "Alert-Info" header to determine which ring tone it should use for ringing.

4. Optional: If you want to route inbound calls based on DID numbers, configure DID Pattern.

The PBX will route inbound calls only when the callers dial the matched DID numbers.

<mark>≓</mark>, Note:

Leave this field blank to match calls with any or no DID information.

For more information, see <u>Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers</u>.

5. Optional: If you want to route inbound calls based on Caller IDs, configure Caller ID Pattern.

The PBX will route inbound calls only when the Caller IDs match the Caller ID pattern.

Note:

Leave this field blank to match calls with any or no Caller ID info.

For more information, see <u>Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID</u>.

6. In the Trunk section, select the desired trunks from Available box to Selected box.

The PBX will route inbound calls through this inbound route when external users call the selected trunk number.

- 7. Configure the inbound route destination.
  - If you want to route inbound calls to one destination whenever the calls reach the system, perform the following operations:
    - a. Keep the Time Condition unselected.
    - b. Configure the Default Destination.
  - If you want to route inbound calls to different destinations based on the time, perform the following operations:
    - a. Select the checkbox of Time Condition.
    - b. Select an option from the drop-down list of Time-based Routing Mode.
    - c. Configure the destinations based on the time.

If an inbound call reaches the PBX during the time period, PBX will route the call to the selected destination.

For more information of inbound call routing based on time, see the following topics:

- Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours
- Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours
- <u>Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours</u>
- 8. Optional: To receive faxes through this inbound route, enable Fax Detection and configure the fax destination.
  - Extension: The faxes will be sent to the selected extension. You need to register the extension on a SIP compatible fax machine.

#### - Note:

If the selected extension is deleted, the fax destination will automatically jump to Hang up, and faxes cannot be received through this inbound route.

• Fax to Email: The faxes will be converted to email attachments and be sent to an extension's email address.

#### - Note:

Make sure the system email is configured correctly, or Fax to Email will fail to work.

For more information of fax setting, see <u>Fax Overview</u>.

9. Click Save and Apply.

## Time Based Inbound Routes

# Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours

This topic gives a configuration example to describe how to configure inbound route to control inbound calls based on Global Business Hours, which can be applied to most of the employees.

## Background information

Assume that your company's business hours are as follows:

- Working days: Monday to Friday
- Business hours: 09:00-12:00 and 14:00-18:00

When customers call in the trunk sip\_routein\_GBH, you want to route the calls based on the time as follows:

- During business hours, route inbound calls to an IVR for business.
- During a holiday, route inbound calls to another IVR for holiday.
- For other time periods, route inbound calls to a voicemail.

## Prerequisites

- The trunk for inbound calling has been set up and is ready for use.
- <u>Global Business Hours is configured</u> according to your company's business hours.
- The desired destination of the inbound route has been configured on the system.

In this scenario, an IVR for business hours, an IVR for holiday should be preconfigured.

For more information of IVR, see <u>Set up an IVR</u>.

• If you want to set up multiple inbound routes for different time schedules, each inbound route should be associated with a different trunk or a trunk with different DID numbers. In this way, the inbound calls can be always directed to your desired destination.

How to configure inbound route based on DID numbers, see <u>Route Inbound Calls</u> based on DID Numbers.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route, click Add.
- 2. In the Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 3. In the Trunk section, select the desired trunks from Available box to Selected box.

In this scenario, select the trunk sip\_routein\_GBH.

2 items	Available	1 item	Selected
Search here	Q	Search here	Q
Name	Trunk Type	Name	Trunk Type
peer-to-ad	Peer Trunk (Port Ba	sip_routein_GBI	H Peer Trunk (Port Ba

- 4. In the Default Destination section, complete the following operations:
  - a. Select the checkbox of Time Condition.
  - b. In the drop-down list of Time-based Routing Mode, select Based on Global Business Hours.
  - c. Configure the following destinations based on the time.
    - Business Hours Destination: Select the destination for inbound calls during <u>global business hours</u>.

In this scenario, select IVR, and select the IVR for business hours.

• Outside Business Hours Destination: Outside Business Hours is the time periods that are not defined as Business Hours or Holidays.

In this scenario, select Extension Voicemail then select an extension number.

 Holidays Destination: Select the destination for inbound calls during holidays.

In this scenario, select IVR, and select the IVR for holidays.

Default Destination			
✓ Time Condition			
_			
* Time-based Routing Mode			
Based on Global Business Hours		$\sim$	
Business Hours Destination		•	
IVR	$\sim$	InBusiness V	
Outside Business Hours Destination		•	
Extension Voicemail	$\sim$	1002-Helen $\vee$	
Holidays Destination		•	
IVR	$\sim$	Holidays $\lor$	

5. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

When customers make calls to the phone number of the selected trunk sip\_routein\_GBH, the calls will be routed to different destinations based on the time.

**Related information** 

Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID Route Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts

# Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours

This topic gives a configuration example to describe how to configure inbound route to control inbound calls for the departments that maintain different hours from the company's global business hours.

## Scenarios

The employees in the branch office's support department have different business hours from the head office. The department hours is listed as below:

- Working days: Monday to Friday
- Business hours: 21:00 23:00 and 00:00 05:00

When customers call in the trunk sip\_routein\_DP, you want to route the calls based on the time as follows:

- During business hours, route inbound calls to the support team's queue.
- During a holiday, route inbound calls to another IVR for holiday.
- For other time periods, route inbound calls to a voicemail.

## Prerequisites

- The trunk for inbound calling has been set up and is ready for use.
- The desired destination of the inbound route should be configured on the system.

In this scenario, a queue and an IVR for holiday should be preconfigured.

For more information about the configurations of queue and IVR, see <u>Create a Queue</u> and <u>Set up an IVR</u>.

• If you want to set up multiple inbound routes for different time schedules, each inbound route should be associated with a different trunk or a trunk with different DID numbers. In this way, the inbound calls can be always directed to your desired destination. How to configure inbound route based on DID numbers, see <u>Route Inbound Calls</u> based on DID Numbers.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route, click Add.
- 2. In the Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 3. In the Trunk section, select the desired trunks from Available box to Selected box.

In this scenario, select the trunk sip\_routein\_DP.

2 items	Available	1 item	Selected	
Search here	Q	Search here	Q	
Name	Trunk Type	Name	Trunk Type	
peer-to-ad	Peer Trunk (Port Ba	sip_routein_DP	Peer Trunk (Port Ba	

- 4. In the Default Destination section, complete the following operations:
  - a. Select the checkbox of Time Condition.
  - b. In the drop-down list of Time-based Routing Mode, select Based on Custom Business Hours.
  - c. Configure custom business hours.
    - i. Click Add Custom Business Hours.
    - ii. In the Custom Business Hours section, click Add to add business hours.

In this scenario, add two business hours, 21:00 - 23:00 and 00:00 - 05:00. iii. In the Date Settings section, select working days.

In this scenario, select Days of Week and select days from Monday to Friday.

- iv. Click Confirm.
- d. Configure the following destinations based on the time.
  - Business Hours Destination: Select the destination for inbound calls during business hours.

In this scenario, select Queue, and select the Queue "Support Team".

• Outside Business Hours Destination: Outside Business Hours is the time periods that are not defined as Business Hours or Holidays.

In this scenario, select Extension Voicemail, and select an extension.

 Holidays Destination: Select the destination for inbound calls during holidays.

In this scenario, select IVR, and select the IVR for holidays.

Default Destination					
✓ Time Condition					
* Time-based Routing Mode					
Based on Custom Business Hours	$\sim$				
Add Custom Business Hours					
Custom Business Hours	Days of Week		Month	Date	Operations
21:00-23:00;00:00-05:00	Mon. Tue.	Wed			2 🗇
Business Hours Destination		*			
Queue	$\vee$	6400-Support Te	eam		$\vee$
Outside Business Hours Destination		*			
Extension Voicemail	$\sim$	2000-Leo Ball			$\vee$
Holidays Destination		*			
IVR	$\sim$	6201-Holidays			$\sim$
Feature Code					
*801					

5. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

- When customers make calls to the phone number of the selected trunk sip\_routein\_-DP, the calls will be routed to different destinations based on time.
- Feature code \*801 is generated for the inbound route. The authorized user can dial \*801 to override time condition of the inbound route. For more information, see <u>Override Time Condition for Inbound Calls</u>.

#### **Related information**

Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID Route Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts

## Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours

This topic gives a configuration example to describe how to configure inbound route to control inbound calls for individual employees who have their own work schedules.

### Scenarios

Duty doctors in a hospital are responsible for supporting emergency patient needs or arranging appointments for patients over phone calls.

- Each duty doctor has a different time schedule and will provide services based on the time schedule.
- During the time periods that no doctors are on duty or when it comes to a holiday, the incoming calls from patients will be routed to an IVR.

The following shows time schedule for the duty doctors.

Doctor Name	Time Schedule
Dr. Tommy Tse	Monday 07:00 -12:00
	Friday 12:00 - 18:00
Dr. Eric Chan	Monday 00:00 - 07:00
	Thursday 07:00 - 12:00

### Prerequisites

- The trunk for inbound calling has been set up and is ready for use.
- The desired destination of the inbound route should be configured on the system.

In this scenario, an IVR should be configured to ensure that patients can reach their desired services.

For more information about IVR, see <u>Set up an IVR</u>.

• If you want to set up multiple inbound routes for different time schedules, each inbound route should be associated with a different trunk or a trunk with different DID numbers. In this way, the inbound calls can be always directed to your desired destination.

How to configure inbound route based on DID numbers, see <u>Route Inbound Calls</u> based on DID Numbers.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route, click Add.
- 2. In the Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 3. In the Trunk section, select the desired trunks from Available box to Selected box.

In this scenario, select the trunk sip\_routein\_EH.

ink			
items	Available	1 item	Selected
Search here	Q	Search here	٩
Name	Trunk Type	Name	Trunk Type
peer-to-ad	Peer Trunk (Port Ba	sip_routein_EH	Peer Trunk (Port Ba

- 4. In the Default Destination section, complete the following operations:
  - a. Select the checkbox of Time Condition.
  - b. In the drop-down list of Time-based Routing Mode, select Based on Custom Time Periods.
  - c. Add time schedule for the duty doctors.
    - i. Click Add Custom Time Periods.
    - ii. In the pop-up window, click Add to add time periods, set relevant destinations, and select days of week.
    - iii. Click Confirm.
    - iv. Repeat step i iii to add another time schedule.

In this scenario, add four time schedules as below.

Start Time	End Time	Days of Week	Destination
07:00	12:00	Monday	Tommy's exten- sion
12:00	18:00	Friday	Tommy's exten- sion
00:00	07:00	Monday	Eric's extension
07:00	12:00	Thursday	Eric's extension

d. Configure the Holidays Destination.

In this scenario, select IVR, and select an IVR to guide patients.

e. Configure the Default Destination.

In this scenario, select IVR, and select an IVR to guide patients.

Time Condition								
* Time-based Routing Mode								
Based on Custom Time Period	ds		$\sim$					
+ Add Custom Time Periods	Delete							
Custom Time Periods	Days of Week	Month	Date	Destination	Feature Code	Move	Ope	ration
07:00-12:00	Mon.			Extension	*8103	$\overline{\wedge}$   $\wedge$   $\checkmark$   $\underline{\vee}$		Ū
12:00-18:00	Fri.			Extension	*8104	$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$   $\mathbf{A}$   $\mathbf{A}$   $\mathbf{A}$	Z	₫
00:00-07:00	Mon.			Extension	*8105	$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$   $\mathbf{v}$   $\mathbf{v}$   $\underline{\mathbf{v}}$	2	Ċ
07:00-12:00	Thu.			Extension	*8106	$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$   $\mathbf{A}$   $\mathbf{A}$   $\mathbf{A}$	2	۵
Holidays Destination				*				
IVR			$\sim$	6200	)-24-Hours-Service	es		
Switch to the Holidays Destinat	ion							
*8101								
Default Destination				*				
IVR			$\sim$	6200	)-24-Hours-Service	es		
Switch to the Default Destinatio	n							

5. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

- When external users make calls to the selected trunk sip\_routein\_EH, the calls will be routed to different destinations based on time:
  - During the custom time periods, inbound calls go to the specified destination.
  - During the rest of time that is not defined, inbound calls go to the Default Destination.
  - When it comes to holiday, inbound calls go to the Holidays Destination.
- Feature codes are generated as follows.

## 7 Tip:

The authorized users can dial a specific feature code to override time condition and route inbound calls to corresponding destinations. For more information, see <u>Override</u> Time Condition for Inbound Calls.

• One feature code for each time period.

- A Switch to the Holidays Destination feature code that allows for switching destination of inbound calls to Holidays.
- A Reset feature code that allows for removing any overrides currently set.
- A Switch to the Default Destination feature code that allows for switching destination of inbound calls to the default destination.

**Related information** 

Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID Route Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts

# Caller ID/DID Based Inbound Routes

## Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers

This topic gives configuration examples to describe how to route inbound calls based on the dialed numbers (also called DID numbers).

# **DID routing modes**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides three DID matching modes to help you route inbound calls based on DID numbers.

Match DID Range to Extension Range

Match DID Range and Extension Range in one-to-one correspondence.

See configuration example Route calls to extension users by matching DID range.

Match DID Pattern to Extensions

Use the variable {{.Ext}} to match extension number in the DID pattern.

See configuration example <u>Route calls to extension users by matching specific DIDs</u>. • DID Pattern

The calls match the defined DID(s) will be routed to a defined destination.

See configuration example <u>Route calls to a specific destination by matching DID pat-</u> terns.

# Route calls to extension users by matching DID range

## **Background information**

Table 26

Company ABC purchases a SIP trunk, and gets 10 DID numbers that are in order: 8823201-8823210.

The company wants to redirect inbound calls to specific extensions based on the provided DID numbers as follows:

DID Number	Extension Number
8823201	1001
8823202	1002
8823203	1003
8823204	1004
8823205	1005
8823206	1006
8823207	1007
8823208	1008
8823209	1009
8823210	1010

Prerequisites

- You have purchased DID numbers from the trunk provider.
- The trunk for inbound calling has been set up and is ready for use.

## Configuration example

According to this scenario, configure an inbound route based on DIDs as follows:

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern:
  - DID Matching Mode: Select Match DID Range to Extension Range.
  - $\circ$  DID Range: Enter the start number and the end number of the DID range.

In this scenario, enter 8823201 and 8823210.

DID Pattern		
* DID Matching Mode	* DID Range	*
Match DID Range to Extension Range	8823201	- 8823210

- Caller ID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit on the inbound caller ID.
- Trunk: Select the trunk that binds the DID numbers.
- Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this scenario, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

 Default Destination: Select Match Extension Range, and enter the extension range 1001 - 1010.

#### 🗐 Note:

The DID range and extension range should have the same size (for example, DID range 991000-991003 and the extension range 1000-1003 have the same size). • Time Condition: Unselected.

Default Destination				
Default Destination				
Match Extension Range	$\sim$	1001	- 1010	
Time Condition				

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

### Result

When an external user dials a number that is in the DID range, the user can reach a corresponding extension user directly.

For example, if an external user dials 8823201, the call goes to the extension 1001 directly.

## Route calls to extension users by matching specific DIDs

#### Scenarios

Company ABC purchases a SIP trunk, and gets 3 DID numbers as follows.

• 8821001, 8821006, 8821016

The company wants to redirect inbound calls to specific extensions based on the provided DID numbers as follows:

### Note:

The provided DIDs have the following characteristics:

- Not consecutive
- Each DID number consists of a string of fixed digits and a specific extension number.

#### Table 27.

DID Number	Extension Number
8821001	1001
8821006	1006
8821016	1016

### Prerequisites

- You have purchased DID numbers from the trunk provider.
- The trunk for inbound calling has been set up and is ready for use.

## Configuration example

According to this scenario, configure an inbound route based on DIDs as follows:

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern:
  - DID Matching Mode: Select Match DID Pattern to Extensions.
  - DID Pattern: Enter the DID pattern according to the provided DIDs.

In this scenario, enter 882{{.Ext}}.

#### - Note:

- {{.Ext}} is a variable that will match the destination extension.
- The wildcard . and ! are not allowed.
- Only one DID pattern is allowed.

DID Pattern	
* DID Matching Mode	DID Pattern
Match DID Pattern to Extensions	882{{.Ext}}

- Caller ID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit of inbound caller ID.
- Trunk: Select the trunk that binds the DID numbers.

In this scenario, select siptrunk.

• Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this scenario, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

• Default Destination: Select Match Selected Extensions, and select extensions.

In this scenario, select extension 1001, 1006, and 1016.

• Time Condition: Unselected.

efault Destination	•
Match Selected Extensions	✓ 1001-Becky Lai × 1016-Jenny × ✓
	1006-Candy $ imes$

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

### Result

When an external user dials a number that matches the DID pattern, the user can reach a specific extension user directly.

For example, if the external user dials 8821001, the call goes to the extension 1001 directly.

# Route calls to a specific destination by matching DID patterns

#### Scenario

Company ABC purchases a SIP trunk, and gets 2 DID numbers as follows.

- 88866608
- 88866609

The company wants to assign the two DID numbers to support team and sales team.

- When external users call 88866609, the calls go directly to support team.
- When external users call 88866608, the calls go directly to sales team.

## Prerequisites

- You have purchased DID numbers from the trunk provider.
- The trunk for inbound calling has been set up and is ready for use.

## Configuration example

Set up two inbound routes to route calls to different destinations based on DID numbers.

Inbound Route for sales team

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern:
  - DID Matching Mode: Select DID Pattern.
    - DID Patterns: Click Add and enter a DID pattern or a DID number.

In this scenario, enter 88866608.

DID Pattern	
* DID Matching Mode	
DID Pattern	$\vee$
Pattern	Operations
88866608	8

- Caller ID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit of inbound caller ID.
- Trunk: Select the trunk that binds the DID numbers.
- Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this example, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

- Default Destination: Select the destination to the queue of sales team.
- Time Condition: Unselected.

Default Destination			
Default Destination			
Queue	~	6404-Sales	$\sim$
Time Condition			

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

Inbound Route for support team

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern:
  - DID Matching Mode: Select DID Pattern.
  - DID Patterns: Click Add and enter a DID pattern or a DID number.

In this scenario, enter 88866609.

DID Pattern		
* DID Matching Mode		
DID Pattern	$\sim$	
Pattern	Operations	
88866609	⊗	

- Caller ID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit of inbound caller ID.
- Trunk: Select the trunk that binds the DID numbers.
- Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this example, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

- Default Destination: Select the destination to the queue of support team.
- Time Condition: Unselected.

Default Destination			
Default Destination			
Queue	$\sim$	6405-Support	$\sim$
Time Condition			

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

## Result

External users will reach different teams according to the DID numbers they dial.

Related information

Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID Route Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts

# Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID

Caller ID routing connects external callers with the appropriate party quickly. This topic gives a configuration example to describe how to route calls by <u>a caller-ID-based inbound</u> route.

### Scenarios

Company ABC is a Chinese company that provides consulting services around multiple cities.

For better customer experience, the company has a countrywide toll-free number 400-661-8815 and has multiple teams to provide professional services for customers from different regions.

For example, the following two teams will handle inbound calls based on different caller IDs.

	1	1
Team	Responsible Region	Area Code
Team-A	Fujian	• 0591
		• 0592
		• 0593
		• 0594
		• 0595
		• 0596

Table 28.

Team	Responsible Region	Area Code
		• 0597 • 0598 • 0599
Team-B	Guangdong	• 0662 • 0663 • 0668 • 0660

#### Table 28. (continued)

## Configuration Example

Set up two inbound routes to route calls to different destinations based on caller IDs.

Inbound Route for Team-A

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit of DID numbers.
- Caller ID Pattern: Select Caller ID Matching Settings, click Add and enter a Caller ID pattern or a full Caller ID.

In this scenario, enter 059., which matches all inbound caller IDs that start with digit 059. For more information of Caller ID pattern, see <u>DID</u> Pattern and Caller ID Pattern.

Caller ID Pattern		
* Caller ID Pattern Caller ID Matching Settings	V	
Pattern	Operations	
059.	Đ	

- Trunk: Select the trunk that users will call in.
- Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this example, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

- Default Destination: Select the destination to the queue of Team-A.
- Time Condition: Unselected.

Default Destination			
Default Destination			
Queue	$\sim$	6402-Team-A	$\sim$
Time Condition			

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

#### Inbound Route for Team-B

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit of DID numbers.
- Caller ID Pattern: Select Caller ID Matching Settings, click Add and enter a Caller ID pattern or a full Caller ID.

In this scenario, enter 066., which matches all inbound Caller IDs that start with digit 066. For more information of Caller ID pattern, see <u>DID</u> Pattern and Caller ID Pattern.

Caller ID Pattern			
* Caller ID Pattern			
Caller ID Matching Settings	~		
Pattern		Operations	
066.		۵ ۵	

• Trunk: Select the trunk that users will call in.

In this example, select siptrunk, whose phone number is 400-661-8815.

• Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this example, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

- Default Destination: Select the destination to the queue of Team-B.
- Time Condition: Unselected.

Default Destination			
Default Destination			
Queue	$\sim$	6403-Team-B	$\sim$
Time Condition			

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

### Result

- When users from Fujian dial the number 400-661-8815, agents in Team-A will handle the calls.
- When users from Guangdong dial the number 400-661-8815, agents in Team-B will handle the calls.

**Related information** 

Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers Route Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts

# Route Inbound Calls by Matched Phonebook Contacts

After grouping company contacts into phonebooks, you can set up inbound routes to distribute inbound calls from contacts to different destinations based on phonebooks.

## Prerequisites

• You have added phonebooks and enabled Caller ID Match feature.

For more information, see <u>Manage Company Phonebooks</u> and <u>Identify Callers from</u> <u>Contacts</u>.

### Scenario

Company ABC has a Sales Team and a Support Team, both teams have their own customer groups. System administrator has added the customer information into two phonebooks.

Table 29.

Team	Phonebook
Sales Team (Queue 6401)	Customers_Abroad
Support Team (Queue 6402)	Customers_China

## **Configuration Example**

To distribute inbound calls from customers to corresponding team, you can set up two inbound routes to route calls by matching contacts in different phonebooks.

Inbound Route for Sales Team

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit of DID numbers.

• Caller ID Pattern: Select Match Contacts' Caller ID in Specific Phonebooks and select the phonebook Customers\_Abroad.

Caller ID Pattern			
* Caller ID Pattern		* Phonebooks	
Match Contacts' Caller ID in Specific Phonebooks	$\vee$	Customers_Abroad ×	$\vee$

- Trunk: Select the trunk that contacts will call in.
- Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this example, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

- Default Destination: Select the destination to Queue and select the Sales Team.
- Time Condition: Unselected.

Default Destination			
Default Destination Queue Time Condition	~	6401-Sales Team	~

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

Inbound Route for Support Team

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
- DID Pattern: Leave it blank, which means no limit of DID numbers.
- Caller ID Pattern: Select Match Contacts' Caller ID in Specific Phonebooks and select the phonebook Customers\_China.

Caller ID Pattern			
* Caller ID Pattern		* Phonebooks	
Match Contacts' Caller ID in Specific Phonebooks	$\vee$	Customers_China $\times$	$\vee$

- Trunk: Select the trunk that contacts will call in.
- Default Destination: Decide whether to route inbound calls to different destinations based on time and configure the destinations.

In this example, route inbound calls to the default destination whenever the calls reach the system.

- Default Destination: Select the destination to Queue and select Support Team.
- Time Condition: Unselected.

Default Destination			
Default Destination Queue Time Condition	· · ·	6402-Support Team	v

• Fax Detection: Leave the settings as default.

### Result

- When customers from Phonebook 'Customers\_Abroad' call to PBX, Sales Team will handle the calls.
- When customers from Phonebook 'Customers\_China' call to PBX, Support Team will handle the calls.

#### **Related information**

Route Inbound Calls based on Caller ID Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers Route Inbound Calls based on Employee Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Department Hours Route Inbound Calls based on Global Business Hours

## Manage Inbound Routes

After you create inbound routes, you can adjust the priority of the inbound routes. You can also edit or delete the inbound routes.

#### Adjust priority of inbound routes

A trunk can be selected to multiple inbound routes. When users call to a trunk that is selected in multiple inbound routes, the system will route inbound calls through the route with higher priority. You can adjust the priority of inbound routes according to your needs.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route.
- 2. In the Inbound Route list, click  $\overline{\uparrow} \land \checkmark \checkmark$  to adjust the priority of your inbound routes.

Edit an inbound route

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the inbound route that you want to edit.
- 3. Edit the inbound route.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Delete an inbound route

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route.
- 2. Click 🛄 beside the inbound route that you want to delete.
- 3. On the pop-up window, click Yes to confirm.
- 4. Click Apply.

# **Export and Import Inbound Routes**

The inbound routes configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired inbound routes in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import inbound routes.

## Export inbound routes

You can export all inbound routes to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Call Control > Inbound Route.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Inbound Route Parameters</u>.

## Import inbound routes

We recommend that you export inbound route data to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Inbound Route Parameters</u>.

## Procedures

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Call Control > Inbound Route.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The inbound routes in the CSV file will be displayed in the Inbound Route list.

# DID Pattern and Caller ID Pattern

This topic describes special characters that can be defined in a DID pattern or a Caller ID pattern, and provides examples to help you understand and configure the pattern.

## Pattern

A Pattern field appears when you are configuring DID numbers or Caller IDs. The Pattern field allows you to enter a full number or special characters that will match specific numbers.

The following table shows descriptions of the allowed characters in the Pattern field.

Pattern	Description
X	Match any digit from 0 -9.
Z	Match any digit from 1-9.
N	Match any digit from 2 - 9.
[###]	Match any digit in the bracket.
	Example: [123] matches the numbers 1, 2, or 3.
	PNote:
	Range of numbers can be specified with a dash, example [136–8] matches the numbers 1, 3, 6, 7, or 8.
	Match one or more numbers.
	Example: 9011. matches any numbers starting with digits 9011 (excluding 9011 itself).
1	Match none or more than one characters.
	Example: 90111 matches any numbers starting with 9011 (in- cluding 9011 itself).

Table 30.

## Pattern examples

The following table gives several patterns and list examples of matched numbers and mismatched numbers.

Pattern	Matched Number	Mismatched Number
0591.	• 05910 • 0591012345	• 0591 • 0592229929
+[13-5]XZN!	• +4021 • +1136282882	• +0136282882 • +1106282882
0591ZXXXX	• 059123456 • 059133456	• 05912345 • 059103456

Table 31.

# **Outbound Route**

# Outbound Route Overview

An outbound route tells the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition how to handle outbound calls based on pre-configured rules and criteria. When a user makes an outbound call, the system analyses the user's extension number and the dialed number, then routes the call through a matched outbound route.

## Outbound Route matching criteria

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides the following criteria for you to configure outbound routes.

**Dial Pattern** 

A dial pattern matches the dialed number and reformats the dialed number before sending the number out to the carrier.

For more information of dial patterns, see <u>Outbound Dial Pattern</u>.

**Outbound Route Password** 

Users need to enter the PIN number before they can make calls through the outbound route.

Time Condition

A Time Condition defines when the outbound route is available.

## **Outbound Route priority**

When a user makes an outbound call, the system compares the dialed number with the dial patterns in each outbound route (from highest to lowest priority) until a match is found.

• If the first outbound route is matched, the system will place the call through the outbound route.

• If the first outbound route is not matched, the system will check the second outbound route, and so on.

For more information, see <u>Adjust priority of outbound routes</u>.

# Set up an Outbound Route

To allow users to make outbound calls through trunks, you need to set up at least one outbound route on the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition has a default outbound route with dial pattern x. that allows users to dial any outgoing numbers. You can delete the default outbound route, then add a new one to configure settings according to your needs.

## Prerequisites

Ensure that you have set up at least one trunk for outbound calls.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Outbound Route, click Add.
- 2. In the General section, complete the following configurations:
  - Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Outbound Caller ID: Optional. By default, each trunk is associated with a main caller ID. When users make outbound calls through a trunk, the main caller ID is displayed on the called party's device. If this option is configured, the system will override the main caller ID with the Outbound Caller ID.

For more information of caller ID, see Caller ID Overview.

## 🚽 Note:

Only configure this setting when the trunk provider supports Caller ID override, or the following errors may happen:

- Outbound calls failed to be established.
- Caller ID doesn't be overridden.
- 3. In the Dial Pattern section, configure dial rules for the outbound route.
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Configure the dial pattern to match dialed numbers and reformat dialed numbers.
    - Pattern: Enter a pattern to match dialed numbers. Only when the dialed number is matched will the call go through this outbound route.
    - Strip: Optional. To strip digits from the beginning of the dialed numbers, enter a value in this field to define how many digits will be removed.

- Prepend: Optional. To add digits at the beginning of the dialed number, enter the digits that you want to prepend in this field.
- c. To add more dial patterns, repeat step a-b.
- 4. In the Trunk section, configure the followings:
  - a. Select one or more trunks from the Available box to Selected box.
  - b. Optional: If multiple trunks are selected, configure the trunk sequence.
    - Default trunk sequence

Click the buttons  $\overline{\uparrow} \land \checkmark \checkmark$  beside the Selected box to specify the default trunk sequence. By default, the system always selects an idle trunk from top to bottom, and uses the trunk to call out.

• Rrmemory Hunt

If the option Rrmemory Hunt is selected, the system will remember which trunk was used last time, and use the next idle trunk to call out.

- c. To enhance the outbound route security, configure the Outbound Route Password.
  - Disable: No password is required to call out through this outbound route.
  - Single PIN: Set a single PIN. All the users need to enter the same PIN to make outbound calls through this outbound route.
  - PIN List: Select a PIN list. Users are required to dial a password included in this list before an outbound call go through.

### - Note:

Generally, each user has a specific PIN code assigned by the administrator. For more information, see <u>Add a PIN List</u>.

5. Select which users are allowed to make calls through this outbound route. In the Extension/Extension Group section, select extensions, extension groups, or organizations from Available box to Selected box.

#### 🚽 Note:

- Organizations are displayed only when you enable the Organization Management feature.
- By default, when you select an organization, its associated sub-organizations are selected. Be careful when selecting organizations.
- 6. Optional: In the Time Condition section, select an option from Available Time dropdown list to specify when this outbound route is available to use.
  - Always: This outbound route is available at any time for allowed extension users.
  - Based on Global Business Hours: Set up whether to allow this route in the following time separately:
    - Business Hours: Global Business Hours specified in the system.
    - Holidays: <u>Holidays</u> specified in the system.
    - $\circ$  Outside Business Hours: The time periods that are not defined as Business Hours or Holidays.

- Based on Custom Business Hours: Set up custom business hours and configure whether to allow this route in the following time:
  - Business Hours: The custom business hours.
  - Holidays: <u>Holidays</u> specified in the system.
  - Outside Business Hours: The time periods that are not defined as Business Hours or Holidays.
- Based on Custom Time Periods: Set up multiple time periods for this route. You can also specify whether to allow this route in the <u>Holidays</u>.
- 7. Click Save and Apply.

## What to do next

After you finish the outbound route configurations, you need to check and adjust the priority of your outbound routes, so that the system can match and route the call out through the proper outbound route.

For more information, see <u>Adjust priority of outbound routes</u>.

# **Restrict Outbound Calls by PIN Codes**

Many companies restrict the outbound calls by using PIN codes. You can set multiple PIN codes, and assign these PIN codes to different users. Users are required to dial a specified PIN code to make an outbound call via the restricted outbound route. In this way, you can easily track the calls made by different users.

## Prerequisites

You need to add a PIN list or several PIN lists. For more information, see Add a PIN List.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Outbound Route.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired outbound route.
- 3. On the outbound route configuration page, go to Trunk section, and in the Outbound Route Password drop-down list, select PIN List.
- 4. In the PIN List drop-down list, select the desired PIN list.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

- To make an outbound call via the restricted outbound route, users need to enter a correct PIN code included in the selected PIN list.
- When users enter wrong PIN codes for three times, the call will be hung up automatically.
- If the Record in CDR option of PIN list is enabled, the Call Detailed Record (CDR) will display the PIN code of each call.

# Manage Outbound Routes

After you create outbound routes, you can adjust the priority of the outbound routes. You can also edit or delete the outbound routes.

## Adjust priority of outbound routes

When a user places a call, if the dialed number matches multiple dial patterns, the outbound route with the highest priority will be used. You can adjust the priority of outbound routes to route calls through proper outbound routes.

## 🗐 Note:

The route priority is important, especially if there is some overlap. For example, the number 5503305 matches both dial patterns of zxxxxxx and x., the PBX will send the call through the outbound route with the highest priority.

Example:

When users dial 05503301, both of the two outbound routes match 05503301:

- Outbound Route-Long-distance call: The dial pattern is 0xxxxxxx and uses trunk 1.
- Outbound Route-Local call: The dial pattern is x. and uses trunk 2.

To call 5503301 through trunk 1, you need to prioritize the outbound route of "Long-distance call"; or PBX will match the outbound route of "Local call" and route the call out using trunk 2.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Outbound Route.
- 2. Click the buttons  $\overline{\uparrow}$   $\uparrow$   $\checkmark$   $\checkmark$   $\checkmark$  to adjust the priority of your outbound routes.

🚽 Note:

PBX will match outbound route from top to bottom.

## Edit an outbound route

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Outbound Route.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the inbound route that you want to edit.
- 3. On the outbound route configuration page, edit the outbound route.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Delete an outbound route

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Outbound Route.
- 2. Click 💼 beside the outbound route that you want to delete.

- 3. On the pop-up dialog box, click OK to confirm.
- 4. Click Apply.

## **Export and Import Outbound Routes**

The outbound routes configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired outbound routes in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import outbound routes.

### Export outbound routes

You can export all outbound routes to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Call Control > Outbound Route.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Outbound Route Parameters</u>.

### Import outbound routes

We recommend that you export outbound route data to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Outbound Route Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Call Control > Outbound Route.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The outbound routes in the CSV file will be displayed in the Outbound Route list.

# **Outbound Dial Pattern**

This topic describes dial pattern settings of Outbound Route.

### **Dial Pattern components**

A dial pattern comprises Pattern, Strip, and Prepend.

Pattern

Required.

Defines which dialed numbers will be matched.

The Pattern field allows a full number or special characters that will match specific numbers. The following table shows descriptions of the allowed characters in the Pattern field.

Pattern	Description
Х	Match any digit from 0 -9.
Z	Match any digit from 1-9.
N	Match any digit from 2 - 9.
[###]	Match any digit in the bracket.
	Example: [123] matches the numbers 1, 2, or 3.
	PNote:
	Range of numbers can be specified with a dash, example [136-8] matches the numbers 1, 3, 6, 7, or 8.
	Match one or more numbers.
	Example: 9011. matches any numbers starting with dig- its 9011 (excluding 9011 itself).
1	Match one or more characters.
	Example: 9011! matches any numbers starting with 9011 (including 9011 itself).

### Strip

Optional.

Defines how many digits will be stripped from the beginning of a dialed number when the dialed number successfully matches a Pattern.

Example:

If you set Pattern as 9. and set Strip as 1.

If a user wants to call number 1588902923, the user should dial 91588902923. The PBX will strip digit 9 from the dialed number, and call the number 1588902923.

#### 🚽 Note:

- The system strips leading digits before sending the number to the carrier.
- If both Strip and Prepend are configured, the system first strips leading digits from the dialed number then prepends digits to the dialed number.

Prepend

Optional.

Defines which digits will be added at the beginning of a dialed number when the dialed number successfully matches a Pattern.

Example:

202 is the area code for Washington, D.C. For users who often make calls to the city, you can set Prepend as 202.

In this case, if a user wants to call number 2025553097, the user should dial 5553097.

- Note:

- The system prepends the digits before sending the number to the carrier.
- If both Strip and Prepend are configured, the system first strips leading digits from the dialed number then prepends digits to the dialed number.

### Prefix and Dial Pattern

A prefix is the digit that will be removed from the dialed number before sending to the carrier.

Scenarios

Prefix setting appears when you are configuring the following settings:

• Mobile phone number for notification contacts.

* Notification Contact :			
1000-Becky			$\sim$
<ul> <li>Notification Methods :</li> <li>Send Email</li> <li>Mobile Number :</li> </ul>	Call Extension	Call Mobile	
Dial-out prefix	15238372833		
* The Event Level(s) to No	otify :		
			$\sim$

• External number for IVR keypress.

Basic	Key Press Event		
Press 0			
External Num	ber 🗸	Prefix	1273827333

How to configure Prefix

You need to configure prefix according to the dial pattern settings on your outbound route. If the prefix is not configured correctly, the PBX cannot call to the external number successfully.

• Leave Prefix setting blank

If the Strip of outbound route is not set, you don't have to add a prefix before the phone number.

As the following figure shows, only the destination number that starts with digit 1 can be called out through this outbound route.

For example, to call number 125451, you should dial the number 125451 directly.

Dial Matching Settings		
Pattern	Strip	Prepend
1.		

Add prefix before a number

If Strip is set on an outbound route, you need to set the prefix according to the Pattern.

As the following figure shows, to make calls through the outbound route, you need to add prefix 9 before the number, and the destination number should start with digit 1.

For example, to call number 125451, you should add prefix 9 before the number 125451.

Dial Matching Settings		
Pattern	Strip	Prepend
91.	1	

# **Dial Pattern Examples**

This topic provides sample dial patterns to help you understand dial patterns of outbound route.

## Local calls

In Xiamen, China, local numbers are all 7-digit numbers and the numbers do not start with 0, such as 5503305.

For the local calls, set dial pattern as the following table shows.

Pattern	Strip	Prepend
ZXXXXXX	Leave it blank.	Leave it blank.

### Long distance calls

In Xiamen, China, users need to dial 4-digit area code and 7-digit local number to make a long distance call, such as 0595-7588123.

- Area code format: 0ZXX, the first digit is 0, and the second digit cannot be 0.
- Local number format: 7-digit number that does not start with 0.

For long distance calls, set dial pattern as the following table shows.

Pattern	Strip	Prepend
0zxxzxxxxx	Leave it blank.	Leave it blank.

### Mobile calls

All mobile phone numbers in China are 11-digit numbers and start with digit 1, such as 15880260666.

For mobile calls, set dial pattern as the following table shows.

Pattern	Strip	Prepend
1XXXXXXXXXX	Leave it blank.	Leave it blank.

### International calls

All international numbers start with digits 00.

For international calls, set dial pattern as the following table shows.

Pattern	Strip	Prepend
00.	Leave it blank.	Leave it blank.

# AutoCLIP Route

# AutoCLIP Route Overview

Yeastar provides AutoCLIP (Auto Calling Line Identification Presentation) feature, which is an intelligent call matching feature. You can configure AutoCLIP to route customer inbound calls to original extensions, which will promote your customer satisfaction and help your business be more efficient, and professional.

## Restriction

The AutoCLIP list supports up to 100,000 records.

### Scenarios

Assume that sales representatives in your company often make outbound calls to customers for promotion. More or less, some customers may miss the calls. When customers call back, the calls are routed to the receptionist or business auto attendant. Neither receptionist/business auto attendant nor the customers know who placed the call.

With AutoCLIP feature, the PBX can redirect the calls to the original extension users who placed the calls when customers call back. Using this feature, you can avoid the embarrassing situation that customers cannot find the person when they call back to the PBX.

How does the PBX redirect calls to original extensions?

- 1. When extension users make outbound calls, the PBX automatically stores the records to AutoCLIP list, including extension number, called number, and the used trunk.
- 2. When customers call back to the PBX system, PBX will compare the phone numbers with the records in the AutoCLIP list.
  - If there're matched records in AutoCLIP list, the calls will be routed to corresponding extensions, bypassing any receptionists or business auto attendant.

• If there're not matched records in AutoCLIP list, the calls will be routed to the destination specified in inbound routes.

## Route Inbound Calls to Original Extensions via AutoCLIP Route

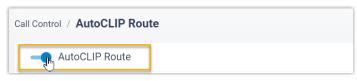
With AutoCLIP feature, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can route inbound calls from customers to original extension users who placed the calls. This intelligent call matching feature can greatly improve work efficiency and customer satisfaction. This topic describes how to set up the AutoCLIP route.

#### Prerequisites

Make sure the desired trunk purchased from trunk provider has the Caller ID feature, or the PBX can not distinguish the Caller ID and implement AutoCLIP.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > AutoCLIP Route.
- 2. On the top of the page, enable the AutoCLIP Route feature.



3. Click Settings to set up rules for AutoCLIP route.



4. Configure the AutoCLIP settings according to your needs.

* Record Keep Time		* Digits Match
8 hours V		7
Delete Used Records		
Only Keep Missed Call Records		
Match Outgoing Trunk		

Table 32.
-----------

Setting	Description
Record Keep Time	Set how long records can be kept in AutoCLIP list. If keep time of a record exceeds the value, PBX will au- tomatically delete the record.
	<ul> <li>Tip:</li> <li>You can check the expiration time in the AutoCLIP record list directly.</li> </ul>
Digits Match	Define how many digits from the last digit of the in- coming Call ID will be used to match the AutoCLIP list.
	Note: If the number has fewer digits than the value defined here, it will be matched in full length.
Delete Used Records	If enabled, when an AutoCLIP record is matched, it will be deleted from the record list automatically af- ter the original extension has answered the redirect- ed customer call.
Only Keep Missed Call Records	If enabled, only when the outbound call is not an- swered will it be recorded in the AutoCLIP list.
Match Outgoing Trunk	If enabled, the PBX will route the call to the origi- nal extension only when the trunk number dialed by external users matches the trunk that was used to place the call earlier.

5. In the Trunk section, select which trunks will use AutoCLIP Route.

runk					
1/5 items	Available		1 item	Selected	
Search here	Q		Search here	Q	
Name a	Trunk Type		Name	Trunk Type	
✓ Yeastar_pbx	Peer Trunk				
		<			

- a. Select the desired trunk(s).
- b. Add the desired trunk(s) from Available box to Selected box.

6. In the Extensions/Extension Groups section, select which extensions can use Auto-CLIP Route.

ensions/Extension Groups			
/4 items	Available	0 item	Selected
Search here	Q	Search here	Q
Number a	Name	Number N	lame
<ul> <li>Extension Group</li> </ul>	Tech Support		
2 1200	Leo Ball		
1234	Phillip Huff	<	

a. Select the desired extension(s)/extension group(s).

b. Add the extension(s)/extension group(s) from Available box to Selected box. 7. Click Save.

#### Result

When extension user uses the trunk with AutoCLIP feature to call external users out, PBX generates AutoCLIP records, including extension details, the numbers dialed and the used trunk. You can check the AutoCLIP record on Call Control > AutoCLIP Route.

Note:

If more than one extension user make outbound calls to the same external user, PBX will only match the last extension user that placed the call when the external user calls back.

Extension Number	Called Number	Trunk	Expiration Time	Operations
Leo Ball < 1200 >	86123456789	Yeastar_pbx	2021-12-30 17:45:39	⊡

# Delete AutoCLIP Records

This topic describes how to delete AutoCLIP records.

### Delete a record

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > AutoCLIP Route.
- 2. Click  $\square$  beside the record that you want to delete.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.

## Bulk delete records

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > AutoCLIP Route.
- 2. Select the checkboxes of the desired records, and click Delete.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.

# **DID Number**

# **DID Number Overview**

This topic describes what is DID number and DID usages on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## What is a DID number?

Direct Inward Dialling (DID), also called Direct Dial-in (DDI), is a service offered by telephone companies. A telephone company usually assigns a range of numbers to a trunk. There is an extra charge for the DID numbers, you need to contact the trunk provider to purchase DID numbers.

### **DID** usages

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to configure DID numbers on an inbound route or a trunk to achieve different functions.

DID configuration on an inbound route

- A company can use DID numbers to identify incoming calls of different purposes, such as incoming calls for customer service, sales, etc.
- DID numbers can also be assigned to individual employees. In this way, callers can dial directly into extension users on the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

For more information, see Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers.

DID configuration on a trunk

• For SIP Register Trunk

For a SIP Register Trunk, if ITSP provides DID numbers that are different from SIP authentication name, you need to add the provided DID numbers on the trunk, or inbound calls through this trunk would fail.

Identify inbound calls

To identify which DID number is dialed, you can bind each DID number with a DID name.

For more information, see <u>Configure DID Numbers on a Trunk</u>.

# Configure DID Numbers on a Trunk

This topic describes when and how to configure DID numbers on a trunk.

## **Background information**

DID numbers are usually configured on inbound routes to distinguish inbound calls. For more information, see <u>Route Inbound Calls based on DID Numbers</u>.

In the following scenarios, you need to configure DID numbers on a trunk:

• For SIP Register Trunk

For a SIP Register Trunk, if ITSP provides DID numbers that are different from SIP authentication name, you need to add the provided DID numbers on the trunk, or inbound calls through this trunk would fail.

Identify inbound calls

To identify which DID number is dialed, you can bind each DID number with a DID name.

### Prerequisites

Purchase DID numbers from the trunk provider.

## Add a DID number

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit the desired trunk.
- 2. Click DIDs/DDIs tab.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Add and configure the DID.
  - DID/DDI: Enter the provided DID number.
  - DID/DDI Name: Bind a name with the DID number.

When the DID number is dialed, the name will be displayed on the called party's device.

4. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete DID numbers

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit the desired trunk.

- 2. Click DIDs/DDIs tab.
- 3. On the DIDs/DDIs page, click  $\stackrel{[1]}{=}$  to delete a DID number.
- 4. To bulk delete DID numbers, select the checkboxes of DID numbers, click Delete.
- 5. Click Save.

# Export and Import Trunk DIDs/DDIs Numbers

Trunk DIDs/DDIs numbers configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired DIDs/DDIs numbers in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import DIDs/DDIs numbers.

## Export all DIDs/DDIs numbers

You can export all DIDs/DDIs numbers to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit a desired trunk.
- 2. In the DIDs/DDIs tab, click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Trunk DIDs/DDIs Parameters</u>.

## Import DIDs/DDIs numbers

We recommend that you export DIDs/DDIs numbers to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

#### Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 5 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Trunk DIDs/DDIs Parameters</u>.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit a desired trunk.
- 2. In the DIDs/DDIs tab, click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The DIDs/DDIs numbers in the CSV file will be displayed in the DIDs/ DDIs list.

# Caller ID

## **Caller ID Overview**

This topic describes what is caller ID, differences between all the types of caller ID defined in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## What is Caller ID?

Caller ID is a telephone service that transmits a caller's telephone number and name to the called party's device when a call is established.

### Caller ID types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following types of Caller ID:

#### Outbound caller ID

Outbound caller ID is the phone number that will be displayed on the called party's phone when an extension user makes an outbound call. Each trunk has a main number, the number appears when an outbound call is received by a recipient.

To customize the outbound caller ID, you need to purchase the service from the trunk provider, and set the custom outbound caller ID on the PBX. In Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, you can configure outbound caller ID based on the following features:

- Emergency Numbers
- Outbound Route
- Trunk
- Extension

For more information, see <u>Customize Outbound Caller IDs</u>.

Inbound caller ID

Inbound caller ID is an external user's phone number that will be displayed on an extension user's phone when the external user calls in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

Inbound Caller IDs can be reformatted before they are sent to the destination users. For more information, see <u>Reformat Inbound Caller ID based on a</u> <u>Trunk</u>.

## Priority of outbound caller ID

When an extension user makes an outbound call, the system first identifies if the call is an emergency call, then sends an outbound caller ID by the following priority (from the highest to the lowest).

- 1. Extensions' emergency outbound caller ID
- 2. Trunk's emergency outbound caller ID
- 3. Outbound Route caller ID
- 4. Trunk's outbound caller IDs that are associated with extension users
- 5. Trunk's general outbound caller ID
- 6. Trunk's default phone number that is provided by the carrier
- 7. Extension's caller ID

# Reformat Inbound Caller ID based on a Trunk

This topic describes how to reformat inbound caller ID and gives configuration examples to help you understand the reformatting rule.

### **Background information**

If an inbound caller ID is in the format that is inconvenient for users to redial directly, you can reformat the inbound caller ID.

Reformatting inbound caller ID is supported on all types of trunk. Based on different trunk providers, you may need to set up different rules to reformat inbound caller IDs.

Add a rule to reformat inbound Caller ID

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit the desired trunk.
- 2. Click Inbound Caller ID Reformatting tab.
- 3. On the Inbound Caller ID Reformatting page, click Add.
- 4. In the pop-up window, configure the reformatting rule and click Confirm.
  - Patterns: Specify which Caller IDs will be reformatted. The inbound caller ID that matches this pattern will be reformatted.
  - Strip: Specify how many digits will be stripped from the beginning of the inbound caller ID.
  - Prepend: Specify the digits that will be prepended to the inbound caller ID.

#### PNote:

If both Strip and Prepend are configured, the system will first strip the leading digits then add the prepend digits to the inbound caller ID.

5. Click Save and Apply.

## Example 1

Company A wants to add a digit 0 to the 11-digit inbound caller ID number that begins with digit 1 for quick redial purpose.

For example, company A wants to display 012345678910 instead of 12345678910.

In this case, you can configure the reformatting rule as below:

* Patterns		
1XXXXXXXXXX		
Strip		
Prepend		
0		

- Patterns: 1XXXXXXXXXXX
- Strip: Leave it blank.
- Prepend: 0

## Example 2

Company B wants all local numbers to be displayed without area code (0592).

For example, company B wants to display number 5503301 instead of 05925503301.

In this case, you can configure the reformatting rule as below:

* Patterns		
0592XXXXXXX		
Strip		
4		
Prepend		

- Patterns: 0592XXXXXXX
- Strip: 4
- Prepend: Leave it blank.

# Export and Import Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rules

The inbound caller ID reformatting rules configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired inbound caller ID reformatting rules in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import inbound caller ID reformatting rules.

## Export all inbound caller ID reformatting rules

You can export all inbound caller ID reformatting rules to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit a desired trunk.
- 2. In the Inbound Caller ID Reformatting tab, click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rule Parameters</u>.

## Import inbound caller ID reformatting rules

We recommend that you export inbound caller ID reformatting rules to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

#### Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 5 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rule</u> <u>Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit a desired trunk.
- 2. In the Inbound Caller ID Reformatting tab, click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The inbound caller ID reformatting rules in the CSV file will be displayed in the Inbound Caller ID Reformatting list.

# **Customize Outbound Caller IDs**

This topic describes different ways to customize outbound caller IDs, which help customers recognize who's calling.

## Background information

Before you start to customize outbound caller IDs, you may need to know the following concepts:

- <u>Caller ID types</u>
- Priority of outbound caller ID

## Prerequisites

Customizing outbound caller ID should be supported by the trunk provider.

Customize outbound caller ID for a trunk

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit the desired trunk.
- 2. Click Outbound Caller ID tab.
- 3. In the General section, configure a general Outbound Caller ID and Outbound Caller ID Name for the trunk.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

The general outbound caller ID and caller ID name will be displayed on the called party's device when users make outbound calls through this trunk.

## Customize outbound caller IDs for extensions

You can set up an outbound caller ID for a specific extension based on a trunk, so that an associated caller ID is sent out when the user calls out.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit the desired trunk.
- 2. Click Outbound Caller ID tab.
- 3. In the Outbound Caller ID List section, click Add, and configure outbound caller IDs for extensions by different methods.
- 4. To associate one outbound caller ID with multiple extensions, select Shared Outbound Caller ID and configure the following settings:
  - Outbound Caller ID
  - Outbound Caller ID Name
  - Associated Extensions
- 5. To bind consecutive outbound caller IDs to consecutive extensions with one-to-one correspondence, select Outbound Caller ID Range and configure the following settings:
  - Outbound Caller ID Range
  - Extension Range
  - Outbound Caller ID Name
- 6. Click Save and Apply.

When extension users make outbound calls through the configured trunk, the associated outbound caller IDs will be displayed on the called party's device.

## Customize outbound caller IDs based on dialed numbers

When calling to multiple areas, you may need to display pre-defined local number for the area code you are dialling. In this case, you can configure outbound caller IDs based on the dialed numbers.

The following instruction describes how to display a custom outbound caller ID 05925503301 when users call to local numbers that have area code 0592.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Outbound Route, edit the outbound route that is for local calls with area code 0592.
- 2. In the General section, enter the custom caller ID in the Outbound Caller ID field.

General			
* Name		Outbound Caller ID	
LocalNumber-0592		05925503301	
Role			
	$\vee$		
Dial Pattern			
Dial Matching Settings			
Pattern	Strip	Prepend	
0592XXXXXX			

3. Click Save and Apply.

# Export and Import Trunk Outbound Caller IDs

Trunk outbound caller IDs configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired outbound caller ID list numbers in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import outbound caller ID list.

### Export all outbound caller ID list

You can export all outbound caller ID list to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit a desired trunk.
- 2. Click the Outbound Caller ID tab.
- 3. In the Outbound Caller ID List section, click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Trunk Outbound Caller ID Parameters</u>.

## Import outbound caller ID list

We recommend that you export outbound caller ID list to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 5 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Trunk Outbound Caller ID Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit a desired trunk.
- 2. In the Outbound Caller ID List section, click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The outbound caller id in the CSV file will be displayed in the Outbound Caller ID List.

# **Distinctive Ringtone**

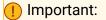
# **Distinctive Ringtone Overview**

This topic describes what is Distinctive ringtone, applications, and how does Distinctive ringtone work.

### What is Distinctive ringtone

Distinctive ringtone is an effective feature for businesses. Distinctive ringtone allows employees to distinguish incoming calls without looking at the Caller Name or Caller ID on the phone display.

For example, company may have different ring groups or queues for the sales team, the customer service team, and the support team. This could all be fed from IVR where the caller presses 1, 2, or 3 that equates to each team. For smaller businesses that have the same employee answering most of the calls, separating each business by its own distinctive ringtone can make the employee quickly identify who is calling or if the call is for him/her.



Distinctive ringtone is not support on all SIP phones. Make sure that your phones support playing distinctive ringtone by "alert info text".

## Applications

With the Distinctive ringtone feature, you can assign different call ringtones for the following types of calls:

- <u>Set Distinctive Ringtones for Internal Calls</u>
- <u>Set Distinctive Ringtones for External Calls</u>
- <u>Set Distinctive Ringtones for Queue Calls</u>
- <u>Set Distinctive Ringtones for Ring Group Calls</u>
- <u>Set Distinctive Ringtones for IVR Calls</u>

## How does Distinctive ringtone work

Distinctive ringtone feature allows certain incoming calls to trigger IP phones to play specific ringtones. The achievement of distinctive ringtone relies on an "alert info text".

- 1. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition adds an "alert info text" in Alert-Info header for incoming calls, and then sends the incoming call (an INVITE request with the Alert-Info header) to the IP phone.
- 2. The IP phone inspects the INVITE request for an "Alert-Info" header, strips out the "alert info text", and then plays corresponding ringtone associated with the "alert info text".

# Set Distinctive Ringtones for Internal Calls

When an extension user hears the ringtone of an internal incoming call, the user may notice the intention of the call.

## Procedure

- 1. Set alert info for internal calls on the PBX.
- 2. <u>Set a specific ringtone for a phone</u>.

## Set alert info for internal calls on the PBX

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > SIP Settings > Advanced.
- 2. In the SIP Request Header section, enter an alert info in the Internal Alert Info field.

The alert info is used to trigger IP phones to play a specific ringtone when receiving an internal call.

In this example, set alert info to Internal.

SIP Request Header	
User Agent	Internal Alert Info
	Internal

#### Set a specific ringtone for a phone

For users who want to play a specific ringtone for internal calls on their phones, you can set a specific ringtone for their phones by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### Note:

Users can also log in to phone web interface to set distinctive ringtone manually on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

#### Prerequisites

Each user who wants distinctive ringtone has bound a phone with their extensions.

For more information, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Set a specific internal ringtone for a user's phone.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the user's extension.
  - b. Click Phone tab to edit the phone associated with the extension.
  - c. In the Distinctive Ringtone section, click Add.
  - d. In the Alert Info field, select the alert info that is pre-defined for internal calls.

In this example, select Internal.

e. In the Ringtone field, select a ringtone for the internal calls.

In this example, select Ring1.wav.

No	ote:				
ne available ringtones vary by phone models.					
Distinctiv	e Ringtone				
Distinctiv	e Ringtone Alert Info	Ringtone	Operations		

- f. Click Save.
- 2. Reprovision the phone to take effect.

- a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to the user's extension.

#### Result

The user's phone plays ringtone Ring1.wav when receiving internal calls.

# Set Distinctive Ringtones for External Calls

You can set distinctive ringtones on different inbound routes. When an extension user hears the ringtone of an external incoming call, the user may notice the intention of the call.

### Procedure

- 1. Set alert info for external calls on the PBX.
- 2. <u>Set a specific ringtone for a phone</u>.

### Set alert info for external calls on the PBX

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route, edit a desired inbound route.
- 2. In the General section, enter an alert info in the Inbound Alert Info field.

The alert info is used to trigger IP phones to play a specific ringtone when receiving external calls from the inbound route.

In this example, set alert info to international to identify international calls.

General	
* Name	Inbound Alert Info
International	international

3. Click Save and Apply.

Set a specific ringtone for a phone

For users who want to play a specific ringtone for external calls on their phones, you can set a specific tone for their extensions by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### Note:

Users can also log in to phone web interface to set distinctive ringtone manually on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

Prerequisites

The user's extension should have been associated with a phone.

For more information, see Auto Provision IP Phones.

#### Procedure

- 1. Set distinctive ringtones for a user.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the user's extension.
  - b. Click the Phone tab.
  - c. In the Distinctive Ringtone section, click Add.
  - d. In the Alert Info field, select the alert info that is pre-defined for external calls.

In this example, select international.

e. In the Ringtone field, select a specific ringtone for international calls.

In this example, select Ring2.wav.

PNote:
--------

The available ringtones vary by phone models.

Distinctiv	e Ringtone			
No.	Alert Info	Ringtone		Operations
1	Internal	V Ring1.wav	$\vee$	世
2	international	V Ring2.wav	V	đ
		+ Add		

f. Click Save.

2. Reprovision the phone to take effect.

- a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to user's extension.

#### Result

The user's phone plays ringtone Ring2.wav when receiving external calls from the specific inbound route.

# Set Distinctive Ringtones for Queue Calls

You can set a unique ring tone per call queue so that the agents can easily identify who is calling. This is especially useful for the agents who are in multiple call queues to help them identify calls.

### Procedure

- 1. Set an alert info for queue calls on the PBX.
- 2. <u>Set a specific ring tone for a phone</u>.

#### Set an alert info for queue calls on the PBX

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue, edit a desired queue.
- 2. Click the Preferences tab.
- 3. In the Basic section, enter an alert info in the Queue Alert Info field.

The alert info is used to trigger IP phones to play a specific ring tone when receiving a call through this queue.

In this example, set the alert info to Support.

Basic	
* Maximum Callers In Queue	Queue Alert Info
0	Support
✓ Leave Empty	
Join Empty	

### Set a specific ring tone for a phone

For the agents who want to play unique ring tones for different queue calls on their phones, you can set distinctive ring tones for their phones by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### - Note:

Users can also log in to phone web interface to set distinctive ring tone manually on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

#### Prerequisites

The agent's extension should have been associated with a phone.

For more information, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Set a specific queue ring tone for an agent's phone.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the agent's extension.
  - b. Click the Phone tab.
  - c. In the Distinctive Ringtone section, click Add.

d. In the Alert Info field, select the alert info that is pre-defined for queue calls.

In this example, select Support.

e. In the Ringtone field, select a specific ring tone for the queue calls.

In this example, select Ring3.wav.

Note:				
e available ring tones vary by phone models.				
inctive	Ringtone			
No.	Alert Info	Ringtone		Operations
I.	Support	V Ring3.wav	$\vee$	団
		+ Add		

- f. Click Save.
- 2. Reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
    - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to agent's extension.

#### Result

The agent's phone plays ringtone Ring3.wav when receiving calls from the Support queue.

## Set Distinctive Ringtones for Ring Group Calls

You can set a unique ringtone per ring group so that the members can easily identify who is calling. This is especially useful for the members who are in multiple ring groups to help them identify calls.

#### Procedure

- 1. Set an alert info for ring group calls on the PBX.
- 2. <u>Set a specific ringtone for a phone</u>.

Set an alert info for ring group calls on the PBX

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Ring Group, edit a desired ring group.
- 2. In the Ring Group Alert Info section, enter an alert info.

The alert info is used to trigger IP phones to play a specific ringtone when receiving a call through this ring group.

In this example, set alert info to sales.

Number		* Name	
6300		Sales	
Ring Strategy		* Ring Timeout (s)	
Ring All	$\sim$	60	Ň
Ring Group Alert Info			
Sales			

#### Set a specific ringtone for a phone

For ring group members who want to play a specific ringtone for ring group calls on their phones, you can set a specific tone for their extensions by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### Pote:

Users can also log in to phone web interface to set distinctive ringtone manually on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

#### Prerequisites

The ring group member's extension should have been associated with a phone.

For more information, see Auto Provision IP Phones.

#### Procedure

- 1. Set a specific ringtone for a ring group member.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit ring group member's extension.
  - b. Click the Phone tab.
  - c. In the Distinctive Ringtone section, click Add.
  - d. In the Alert Info field, select the alert info that is pre-defined for ring group calls.

In this example, we select Sales.

e. In the Ringtone field, select a specific ringtone for the ring group calls.

In this example, we select Ring4.wav.

- Note:

The available ringtones vary by phone models.

No.	Alert Info	Ringtone		Operations
1	Sales	V Ring4.wav	$\sim$	Ē

- f. Click Save.
- 2. Reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to ring group member's extension.

#### Result

The ring group member's phone plays ringtone Ring4.wav when receiving calls from the Sales ring group.

# Set Distinctive Ringtones for IVR Calls

You can set a unique ringtone per IVR so that the extension users can easily identify who is calling.

Procedure

- 1. <u>Set an alert info for IVR calls on the PBX</u>.
- 2. <u>Set a specific ringtone for a phone</u>.

Set an alert info for IVR calls on the PBX

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR.
- 2. In the IVR Alert Info field, enter an alert info.

The alert info is used to trigger IP phones to play a specific ringtone when receiving a call through this IVR.

In this example, set alert info to CustomerService.

* Number	* Name
6200	Customer Service
* Prompt	Prompt Repeat Count
[Default] ×	3 ~
* Response Timeout (s)	* Digit Timeout (s)
3 ~ ~	3 ~ ~
IVR Alert Info	
CustomerService	

#### Set a specific ringtone for a phone

For users who want to play a specific ringtone for IVR calls on their phones, you can set a specific tone for their extensions by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### Pote:

Users can also log in to phone web interface to set distinctive ringtone manually on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

#### Prerequisites

The user's extension should have been associated with a phone.

For more information, see Auto Provision IP Phones.

#### Procedure

- 1. Set a specific ringtone for a user.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the user's extension.
  - b. Click the Phone tab.
  - c. In the Distinctive Ringtone section, click Add.
  - d. In the Alert Info field, select the alert info that is pre-defined for IVR calls.

In this example, select CustomerService.

e. In the Ringtone field, select a specific ringtone for the IVR calls.

In this example, select Ring5.wav.

PNote:

The available ringtones vary by phone models.

lo.	Alert Info	Ringtone		Operations
	CustomerService	V Ring5.wav	$\vee$	団

f. Click Save.

2. Reprovision the phone to take effect.

- a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
- b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to user's extension.

#### Result

The user's phone plays ringtone Ring5.wav when receiving calls from CustomerService IVR.

# **Distinctive Caller ID Name**

## **Distinctive Caller ID Name Overview**

This topic describes what is Distinctive Caller ID Name, and an example of Distinctive Caller ID Name.

#### What is Distinctive Caller ID Name

Distinctive Caller ID Name allows employees to know where the incoming call is routed, and who is calling. Distinctive Caller ID Name is a string that will be displayed on employees' phones, which may include the followings (from the highest to the lowest):

1. Contact name that is stored in Company Contacts directory or Personal Contacts directory.

#### Pote:

If the extension user does not have permission to view Company Contacts, the contact name stored in Company Contact will not be displayed on the extension user's phone.

2. Call feature name (the name of IVR, Ring Group, or Queue)

#### - Note:

If an incoming call reaches an extension through multiple call features, the name of the last call feature will be displayed. For example, if a call reaches an IVR and then goes to a queue, the queue name will be displayed on agents' phones.

3. Trunk DID/DDI name

4. Caller Name (CNAM): CNAM is sent from the caller that displays the caller name or the caller's company name.

Note: CNAM is configured by the caller's side.

An example of Distinctive Caller ID Name

Your company has a support team that is responsible for providing technical services for customers from China and America. The following settings are configured on your PBX to achieve your goal:

Queue

A queue named "Support" for support team.

SIP trunk

A SIP trunk with two DID numbers that are bound with their respective names.

Table 33.	
DID Number	DID Name
1258888	China
1256666	America

Assume that you have the following two contacts stored in your Company Contact directory.

Name	Phone Number
Sunmy	5502222
Becky	5503333

When customers dial different DID numbers and reach the Support queue, the caller ID names displayed differently on agents' phones. The display priority of Distinctive Caller ID Name is as below:

{contact\_name}: {queue\_name}: {trunk\_did\_name}: {caller\_name}

### 🚽 Note:

If none of the above names are provided, the names will not be displayed.

Example:

• Customer Becky dials 1258888 to reach the Support team and no Caller Name is sent from Becky, the caller ID name displayed is Becky: Support: China.

- Customer Sunmy dials 1256666 to reach the Support team and no Caller Name is sent from Sunmy, the caller ID name displayed is Sunmy: Support: America.
- Customer C dials 1258888 to reach the Support team and a Caller Name "Yeastar" is sent from customer C, the caller ID name displayed is Support: China: Yeastar

# Enable or Disable Distinctive Caller ID Name

You can decide whether to display a call feature name (Queue name, IVR name, or Ring Group name) or a name associated with a trunk DID/DDI number when an incoming call reaches.

## Enable or disable the display of call feature name

The call feature name refers to the name of an IVR, a Ring Group, or a Queue.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > > Preferences.
- 2. In the Distinctive Caller ID Name section, configure the followings:
  - To display Queue names, Ring Group names, and IVR names, select the checkbox of Display Call Feature Name.
  - To hide Queue names, Ring Group names, and IVR names, unselect the checkbox of Display Call Feature Name.



3. Click Save and Apply.

### Enable or disable the display of trunk DID/DDI name

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Preferences.
- 2. In the Distinctive Caller ID Name section, configure the followings:
  - To display trunk DID/DDI name, select the checkbox of Display DID/DDI Name.
  - To hide trunk DID/DDI name, unselect the checkbox of Display DID/DDI Name.



3. Click Save and Apply.

# **Call Center**

# **Call Center Overview**

This topic describes what is Yeastar Call Center service, highlight, and the steps to set up a Call Center.

### What is Yeastar Call Center service

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition introduces an inbound call center solution to improve agent efficiency, responsiveness, and ultimate customer satisfaction for SMEs running service centers.

Yeastar Call Center provides a powerful console for manager and agents to handle <u>queue</u> calls. Call Center Console is a web-based utility integrated with Linkus Web Client, including a customizable Wallboard for proactive tracking of 16 key performance metrics, and a switchboard-type Queue Panel for real-time monitoring & control of queue activities.

For more information of monitoring queue performance and managing queue calls on Call Center Console, see <u>Yeastar Call Center Console User Guide</u>.

## Highlight

- Real-time metrics on Wallboard: Display a range of call center metrics and KPIs that allow queue managers to monitor and optimize performance, and spot emerging trends in a central location.
- Switchboard-type Queue Panel: Show the call metrics and agents' performance in real time, and offer a comprehensive view on activity of call that allows manager and agents to handle queue calls.
- SLA for performance measurement: Consistent delivering service that meets or exceeds the expectations set out in the SLA.
- Insightful Call Center reports: Real-time and historical reports that help system administrator to track queue performance indicators, and assess agent performance.

### Steps to set up Call Center

#### 1. Create a queue.

- 2. Set up Call Center.
  - a. Manage queue managers: Set one or more extension users as queue managers.

The queue managers can receive queue notifications by email.

b. Customize queue notification: Send email notifications to queue manager when a queue call is missed or abandoned, or the service level agreement reaches the alarm threshold.

- c. Grant queue panel permissions: Grant the permissions respectively for queue manager and agents.
- d. Set up Service Level Agreement (SLA): Define a certain level of service for a queue.
- 3. Manage Call Center report: View and schedule Call Center reports.

# Call Center Setup

# Set up Queue Managers

With call center service activated, you can set any extension as queue manager. A queue manager does not need to be a queue agent. This topic describes how to set queue managers.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue, edit the desired queue.
- 2. Click Members tab.
- 3. In the Queue Managers section, manage the queue managers:
  - To add queue managers: Select the desired extensions from the Available box to the Selected box.
  - To delete queue managers: Select the desired extensions from the Selected box to the Available box.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

# **Customize Queue Notification**

With call center service activated, the system sends email notifications to queue managers when a queue call is missed or abandoned, when the service level agreement reaches the alarm threshold, when a callback request is made or a callback failed. This topic describes how to customize these notifications.

## Prerequisites

- Make sure there is a valid email address assigned to queue manager's extension.
- Make sure system email works.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue, edit the desired queue.
- 2. Click Members tab.
- 3. Select the checkbox of notification option according your needs.

- Notify Manager when a queue call is missed: Send an email to manager when a queue call is missed.
- Notify Manager when a queue call is abandoned: Send an email to manager when a queue call is abandoned.
- Notify Manager when the SLA is lower than its alarm threshold: Send an email to manager when the SLA alarm threshold is reached.
- Notify Manager when a callback request is made: Send an email to manager when a callback request is made.
- Notify Manager when a callback failed: Send an email to manager when a callback is failed.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

# **Grant Queue Panel Permissions**

With call center service activated, you can decide what the queue managers and agents can do on Queue Panel, and grant the Queue Panel permissions for queue manager and agents respectively. This topic describes how to grant permissions for queue manager and agents.

## **Queue Panel permissions**

Permission	Manager	Agents
Switch agents' Status	$\checkmark$	×
Call monitoring operations (Listen, Whisper, Barge In)	$\checkmark$	×
Switch agent's recording status	$\checkmark$	×
Call distribution management (Redi- rect, Transfer, Drag and Drop opera- tion)	√	$\checkmark$
Allow for picking up or hanging up agents' calls	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Call parking operation	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

### Grant permissions for queue managers

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue, edit the desired queue.
- 2. Click Queue Panel Permissions tab.
- 3. In the Manager section, select the checkboxes of permissions according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Grant permissions for agents

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue, edit the desired queue.
- 2. Click Queue Panel Permissions tab.
- 3. In the Agents section, select the checkboxes of permissions according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

# Set up Service Level Agreement (SLA)

With call center service activated, you can set up service level agreement for a queue. This topic describes what is service level agreement and how to set up service level agreement.

What is Service Level Agreement (SLA)

Service Level Agreement is a call center performance statistic. It is the goal for how quickly the agent should answer a portion of the customers, and makes sure everyone is working to the same objectives.

SLA is expressed as the percentage of conversations answered within a predefined amount of time. Let us suppose that the goal is to answer 80% of calls within 20 seconds. If the measurement is less than 80%, the manager knows they are outside their target Service Level.

The calculated formula shows as below:

## How to set up Service Level Agreement

You can set a target service level and SLA threshold for each queue, and evaluate the service level periodically.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue, edit the desired queue.
- 2. Click Preferences tab.
- 3. In the Service Level Agreement section, edit the SLA according to your needs.
  - SLA Time(s): Enter the maximum amount of time (in seconds) that an agent needs to answer an incoming call.

If a caller waits for a duration of time shorter than the SLA Time, the SLA is met.

- Evaluation Interval(min): Enter the time interval to compare the queue's SLA performance against the alarm threshold so that the system can send a notification email timely.
- Alarm Threshold(%): Enter the service level threshold for the queue.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

# **Call Center Report**

# **Call Center Reports Overview**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides a set of predefined reports concerning detailed information about call center performance. This topic describes what you can do with call center report, and the report types.

### What you can do with call center reports

The system automatically generates reports in the format of graphs or charts, and helps you to simplify analysis and extract invaluable data with ease. These reports can be historical and real-time. You can view and schedule reports on demand to evaluate past activities and plan future actions.

### **Reports types**

We divide reports into two categories: queue performance and agent performance.

- Queue performance reports: The queue performance reports give you insight into the work efficiency of one or more queues over a period of time, and help you evaluate the performance of each queue.
  - Queue Performance
  - Queue AVG Waiting & Talking Time
  - Queue Callback Summary
  - Queue Callback Activity
  - Satisfaction Survey
- Agent performance reports: The agent performance reports give you insight into the performance of one or more agents, and help you evaluate if every agent meets the expectations of your call center over a period of time.
  - Agent Login Activity
  - Agent Pause Activity
  - Agent Missed Call Activity
  - Agent Call Summary

### **Queue Performance reports**

### 'Queue Performance' Report

Queue Performance provides information about how calls are handled by queues. This topic describes the report details, and shows you a report example.

### Report details

The following table lists the related parameters for Queue Performance report.

Parameter	Description
Total Calls	The total number of calls that queue received.
Answered	The total number of calls that queue answered.
Missed	The total number of calls that queue missed.
Abandoned	The total number of calls that callers abandoned before connect- ing to an agent.
Max Waiting Time	The longest time a caller waited in the queue before an agent an- swered the call.
Average Waiting Time	The average amount of time that it takes for an incoming call to be distributed to an agent.
Answered Rate	The percentage of answered calls in relation to the total received calls.
Missed Rate	The percentage of missed calls in relation to the total received calls.
Abandon Rate	The percentage of abandoned calls in relation to the total re- ceived calls.
SLA	The Service Level Agreement (SLA) for the queue. SLA is the per- centage of conversations answered within a predefined amount of time.

The following report shows the performance of the Service department in the past 30 days. Calls abandoned within 10 seconds are not included in the report.

Report Type	-	Time			* Qi	lene			Short Ab	andoned Call
Queue Per	forman ∨	08/26/2020	00:00:00 ~ 09/2	24/2020 23:59:59	6	400-Service $\times$		\ \	10	
Queue	Total Calls	Answered	Missed	Abandoned	Average Waiting Time	Max Wait Time	Answered Rate	Missed Rate	Abandon Rate	SLA
0	20	13	4	3	00:00:17	00:01:42	65%	20%	15%	55%
Service										

# 'Queue AVG Waiting & Talking Time' Report

Queue AVG Waiting & Talking Time report provides information about the average amount of time that callers are waiting in a queue, and the average amount of time that an agent spends in handling calls. The report helps you to identify the peak times of queue calls, and allocate your agent accordingly. This topic describes the report details, and shows you a report example.

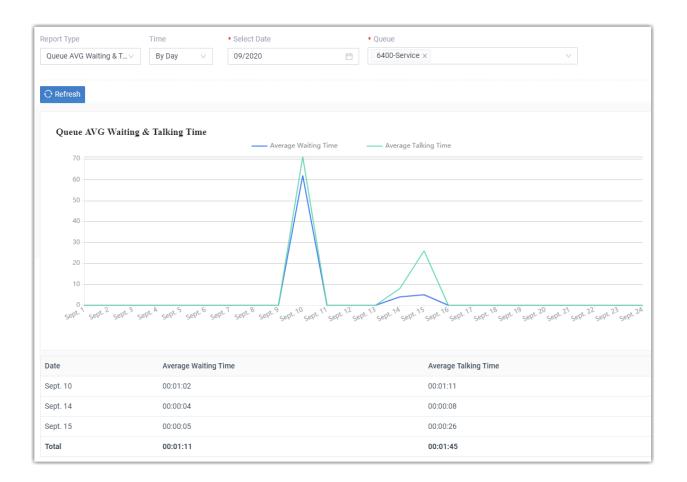
### Report details

The Queue AVG Waiting & Talking Time includes a graph and a table that shows the following information for each queue:

Parameter	Description
Average Waiting Time	The average amount of time that it takes for an incoming call to be distributed to an agent.
Average Talking Time	The average amount of time that a caller talks to an agent.

### Report example

The following report shows the daily average waiting & talking time of Service department during 09/2020.



# 'Queue Callback Summary' Report

'Queue Callback Summary' Report provides queue manager with an overview of queue callback statistics, including how many calls a queue received, how many callbacks callers request, how many callbacks were made, and how many callbacks failed.

### **Report details**

The following table lists the related parameters for 'Queue Callback Summary' report.

Parameter	Description
Queue	The queue number.
Failed Callbacks	The number of failed callbacks.
Successful Call- backs	The number of successful callbacks.
Total Callbacks	The total number of callbacks for which callers requested suc- cessfully.
Total Calls	The total number of calls that the queue received.

The following report shows callback summary statistics of the queue 6400-Support\_Local during 01/07/2022 00:00:00-01/07/2022 23:59:59.

port Type	Time		* Queue			
Queue Callback Summ	∨ 01/07/2022 00:00:0	0 ~ 01/07/2022 23:59:59	台 6400-	Support_Local ×	$\vee$	
Download 🖸 😯 Refr	esh					
Queue Callback	Summary	Failed Callbacks	Succes	ful Callbade		
15 -		Failed Calibacks	Succes	STUI Calibacks		
12						
9 -						
6						
3 -						
0						
			6400			
Queue	Failed Callbacks	Successful Callbac	cks	Total Callback	5	Total Calls
6400	13	2		15		43
Total	13	2		15		43
					O Total :1 <	1 > 20 / page \

# 'Queue Callback Activity' Report

'Queue Callback Activity' Report provides detailed information about callbacks, which helps queue manager analyze queue performance and improve customer service.

### **Report details**

The following table lists the related parameters for 'Queue Callback Activity' report.

Parameter	Description
Time	The time that the caller called to the queue.
Call From	The caller's caller ID.
Callback Time	The time that the system performed the callback.
Callback Number	The callback number that the caller registered.
Waiting Time	The time between the call started and the callback answered.

Parameter	Description
Callback Result	Whether the callback is successful or not.
Failed Reason	The reason that failed to make the callback.

The following report shows callback activity statistics of the queue 6400-Support\_Local during 01/07/2022 00:00:00-01/07/2022 23:59:59.

eport Type	Time		* Queue			Callback Result
Queue Callback Activity 🗸	01/07/2022 00:00:00 ~	01/07/2022 23:59:59	6400-Support_L	ocal	~	All
Download O Refresh						
Time	Call From	Callback Time	Callback Number	Waiting Time	Callback Result	Failed Reason
01/07/2022 16:43:15	6400-test:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 16:44:25	666665	00:01:10	Succeeded	
01/07/2022 16:37:55	6400-test:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 16:39:00	99999	00:01:05	Failed	Customer no answer
01/07/2022 16:34:28	6400-test:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 16:35:37	333333	00:01:09	Failed	Customer no answer
01/07/2022 16:08:00	6400-test:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 16:09:48	785469	00:01:48	Failed	Customer no answer
01/07/2022 15:38:08	6400-test:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 15:41:08	999999	00:03:00	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 15:19:45	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 15:21:09	569875	00:01:24	Failed	Hang up by the agent
01/07/2022 15:09:32	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 15:10:53	99999	00:01:21	Succeeded	
01/07/2022 14:16:54	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 14:21:54	66666	00:05:00	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 14:13:35	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 14:14:05	563942	00:00:30	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 14:10:31	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 14:11:01	964583	00:00:30	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 14:05:58	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 14:06:28	85643	00:00:30	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 14:02:11	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 14:02:41	695423	00:00:30	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 13:59:38	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 14:00:19	85689	00:00:41	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 13:56:23	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 13:56:57	965482	00:00:34	Failed	No available agents
01/07/2022 13:55:27	6400:2000<2000>	01/07/2022 13:55:55		00:00:28	Failed	Invalid callback number
Total			15	00:19:40		
					O Total :15	1 > 20 / page

# 'Satisfaction Survey' Report

Satisfaction Survey report provides statistic about the key pressed collected from callers. The report helps you measure customer satisfaction and improve service. This topic describes the report details, and shows you a report example.

### **Report details**

After the agent hangs up a call, the system plays a pre-defined prompt to ask callers to rate their satisfaction scale. For example, "Please rate your satisfaction with our service, press 1 for satisfied, press 2 for dissatisfied. Thank you.". The Satisfaction Survey report displays how many times that a key is pressed by callers.

The following report shows the satisfaction survey of Service department and its agents in the last 7 days.

Report Type Satisfaction Survey Re ∨	Time 09/14/2020 00:00:00 ~ 09/21/2020	Queue 23:59:59 ⊟ 6400-Service ∨		
⊖ Refresh	1014	1710		
Queue	KEY:1	KEY:2	KEY:4	
6400-Service	4	2	1	
3333-Sunmy Yeah	1	1	0	
3334-John Snow	3	1	1	

# Agent Performance Report

# 'Agent Login Activity' Report

Agent Login Activity report provides information about the login and logout activities of each agent. The report helps you count the working hours of the agents working in shifts. This topic describes the report details, and shows you a report example.

### **Report details**

The Agent Login Activity includes a table that shows the following information for each agent:

Parameter	Description
Logged in	The date and time that an agent logged in to a queue.
Logged out	The date and time that an agent logged out of a queue.
Total Login Time	The elapsed time between the login time and the logout time.

### Report example

The following report shows the login activities of all agents in Service department in the past 7 days.

Report Type Agent Login Activity	Time 09/14/2020 00:00:00 ~ 09/21/2020 23:59:59	Queue Agent	V
Agent	Logged In	Logged Out	Total Login Time
1000-Becky	09/21/2020 10:54:20	09/21/2020 10:58:36	00:04:16
	09/21/2020 11:01:39	09/21/2020 11:02:22	00:00:43
Total			00:04:59
3333-Sunmy Yeah	09/21/2020 10:54:24	09/21/2020 10:58:49	00:04:25
Total			00:04:25
3334-John Snow	09/21/2020 10:54:27	09/21/2020 11:01:29	00:07:02
	09/21/2020 11:02:11	09/21/2020 11:02:56	00:00:45
Total			00:07:47
3335-Jim	09/21/2020 10:54:29	09/21/2020 11:01:32	00:07:03
	09/21/2020 11:02:13	09/21/2020 11:02:58	00:00:45
Total			00:07:48

### 'Agent Pause Activity' Report

Agent Pause Activity report provides information about the pause and unpause activities of each agent. The report helps you count the pause time of each agents. This topic describes the report details, and shows you a report example.

### **Report details**

The Agent Pause Activity shows the following information for each agent:

Parameter	Description
Pause	The date and time that an agent changed status to pause.
Unpause	The date and time that an agent changed status to unpause.
Total Pause Time	The elapsed time between the paused time and the unpaused time.

### Report example

The following report shows the pause activities of all agents in Service department in the past 7 days.

Report Type Agent Pause Activity  V	Time 09/14/2020 00:00:00 ~ 09/21/2020 23:59:59	Queue     Agent       6400-Service	V
⊖ Refresh			
Agent	Pause	Unpause	Total Pause Time
3333-Sunmy Yeah	09/14/2020 15:16:03	09/14/2020 15:16:31	00:00:28
Total			00:00:28
3334-John Snow	09/21/2020 10:55:06	09/21/2020 10:58:28	00:03:22
Total			00:03:22
1000-Becky	09/21/2020 10:55:04	09/21/2020 10:58:33	00:03:29
Total			00:03:29
3335-Jim	09/21/2020 10:55:09	09/21/2020 10:58:40	00:03:31
Total			00:03:31

# 'Agent Missed Call Activity' Report

Agent Missed Call Activity report provides the missed call information for each agent. The report helps you assess an agent's efficiency. This topic describes the report details, and shows you a report example.

### **Report details**

Parameter	Description
Time	The date and time that an agent missed a call.
Waiting Time	The amount of time that the caller waited for the assigned agent to answer the call.
Call From	The caller's caller ID.
Agent Status	The final status of missed calls, indicating whether the missed calls were answered by other agents.
Polling At- tempts	The number of polling attempts to call an agent.

### Report example

The following report shows the missed call activities of all agents in Service department in the past 30 days. Calls abandoned within 10 seconds are not included in the report.

Report Type	Time		Queue	Agent	Short Abandoned Calls
Agent Missed Cal ∨	08/26/2020 00:00:00 ~	09/24/2020 23:59:59	6400-Service V		<ul><li>✓ 10</li></ul>
⊖ Refresh					
Agent	Time	Waiting Time	Call From	Agent Status	Polling Attempts
3333-Sunmy Yeah	09/10/2020 17:16:31	00:02:28	3337	NO ANSWER	5
	09/10/2020 17:31:44	00:00:30	4444	NO ANSWER	1
Total		00:02:58			6
3334-John Snow	09/10/2020 17:45:07	00:00:10	3337	NO ANSWER	1
Total		00:00:10			1

# 'Agent Call Summary' Report

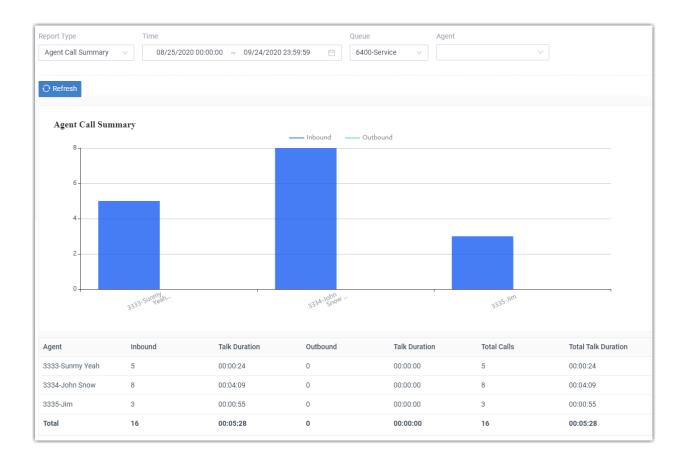
Agent Call Summary report provides information about the number of incoming and outgoing calls that were received and placed by each agent. This topic describes the report details, and shows you a report example.

### **Report details**

Parameter	Description
Inbound	The number of incoming calls received by an agent.
Outbound	The number of outgoing calls placed by an agent.
Talk Duration	The amount of time an agent spent in incoming calls or outgoing calls.
Total calls	The total number of incoming calls and outgoing calls handled by an agent.
Total Talk Dura- tion	The total amount of time an agent spent in incoming calls and out- going calls.

### Report example

The following report shows the call summary of all agents in Service department in the last 30 days.



# **Call Features**

# Voicemail

### Voicemail Overview

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition integrates a free voicemail system. This topic describes the voicemail types, voicemail usages, voicemail personalization, and the adjustable voicemail capacity and limitations.

### Voicemail types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides two types of voicemail:

- Extension Voicemail: Voicemail for individual extension.
- Group Voicemail: Group Voicemail is a feature for a team to share the workload of reading and responding to voicemail messages.

Group Voicemail is useful if your company is organized into departments. For example, after setting up a group voicemail for Support team, a customer can deliver voicemail messages to the Support team, then any team members can access the group voicemail box to check the customer's voicemail.

### Voicemail usages

A flexible call route system for forwarding calls to voicemail:

• Extension: Allow the caller to leave a message when the extension user is unavailable to take a call.

For more information, see Forward extension users' calls to voicemail.

• Ring Group/Queue: Failover to group voicemail if no agents are available or timeout is reached.

For more information, see <u>Set failover destination to voicemail for a ring group or queue</u>.

• IVR: Give the customers an option to leave a voicemail message. When the customers cannot get the information from IVR, they can leave a message.

For more information, see Allow users to leave voicemail messages by IVR.

• Any inbound calls: Provide a dedicated line to collect user feedback if immediate phone support is not required.

For more information, see Forward inbound calls to voicemail.

### Voicemail personalization

Various options are available for personalizing voicemail:

• Voicemail greeting: Custom greeting is available for global or a specific extension. The extension users can also customize their greetings based on presence.

For more information, see <u>Voicemail Greeting Overview</u>.

• Voicemail notification: Various ways to get notified of new voicemail messages, including on IP phones, emails, or Linkus clients.

For more information, see Voicemail Notification Overview.

• Envelope playback: Play optional envelope information before listening to voicemail message, including date and time, caller ID, and message duration.

For more information, see Configure Message Envelope.

• Caller experience: User-friendly experience in leaving a message, such as allow the caller to review message, send a message without ringing extensions, break out of voicemail to operator, etc.

For more information, see:

- <u>Allow Callers to Press a Key to Leave Messages</u>
- <u>Allow Callers to Dial Extension from Voicemail</u>
- Allow Callers to Break out from Voicemail
- Allow Callers to Review Voicemail Messages

#### Voicemail capacity and limitations

The default and adjustable capacity and limitations for each voicemail box are as follows:

• Message length: 1 to 15 minutes.

The default minimum duration of a message is 2 seconds; the default maximum duration of a message is 10 minutes.

To change the message length, see Limit Voicemail Message Length.

• Mailbox capacity: 1 to 500.

The default max number of voicemail is 100.

To change mailbox capacity, see Auto Cleanup Voicemail Messages.

• Storage time: Unlimited.

The default is 0, which means no limit.

To change the storage time, see Auto Cleanup Voicemail Messages.

# **Group Voicemail**

# Set up Group Voicemail for a Queue

You can set up a Group Voicemail for a queue. All agents of the queue will get notified when a group voicemail message is received.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. In the Basic section, configure the following settings.
  - Type: Select Queue.
  - Queue: Select a queue.
  - Number: The Group Voicemail number is the queue number, and is not editable.
  - Name: The Group Voicemail name is the queue name, and is not editable.
  - Mode: Select the mode to handle received voicemail messages.
    - Shared by Members: The voicemail messages are saved in the group mailbox, and are shared by all members. Any members can manage the group voicemail messages.
    - Broadcast to Members: The voicemail messages are not stored in the group mailbox. Instead, the system broadcasts (copies and forwards) the voicemail messages to the individual mailboxes of all the members.
  - Voicemail PIN Authentication: Enable or disable voicemail PIN authentication.
  - Voicemail Access PIN: If enable voicemail PIN authentication, enter a desired access PIN number.
  - Play Date and Time: Optional. Play the date and time that the message was received before a voicemail message is played.
  - Play Caller ID: Optional. Play the caller ID information before a voicemail message is played.
  - Play Message Duration: Optional. Play the duration of the message before a voicemail message is played.
- 4. In the Members section, all the agents of the queue are selected, and the members are not editable.

Note:

If the queue agents are changed, the members of the group's voice mailboxes also change.

5. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, select a voicemail greeting.

You can also click Greeting Management to customize a greeting or mange your custom greetings.

6. Click Save and Apply.

**Related information** 

Enable or Disable Voicemail Access PIN Change Voicemail Access PIN Configure Message Envelope Change Voicemail Greetings Record or Upload Voicemail Greetings Manage Group Voicemail Greetings

# Set up Group Voicemail for a Ring Group

You can set up a Group Voicemail for a ring group. All members of the ring group will get notified when a group voicemail message is received.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. In the Basic section, configure the following settings:
  - Type: Select Ring Group.
  - Ring Group: Select a ring group.
  - Number: The group voicemail number is the ring group number, and is not editable.
  - Name: The group voicemail name is the ring group name, and is not editable.
  - Mode: Select the mode to handle received voicemail messages.
    - Shared by Members: The voicemail messages are saved in the group mailbox, and are shared by all members. Any members can manage the group voicemail messages.
    - Broadcast to Members: The voicemail messages are not stored in the group mailbox. Instead, the system broadcasts (copies and forwards) the voicemail messages to the individual mailboxes of all the members.
  - Voicemail PIN Authentication: Enable or disable voicemail PIN authentication.
  - Voicemail Access PIN: If enable voicemail PIN authentication, enter a desired access PIN number.
  - Play Date and Time: Optional. Play the date and time that the message was received before a voicemail message is played.
  - Play Caller ID: Optional. Play the caller ID information before a voicemail message is played.
  - Play Message Duration: Optional. Play the duration of the message before a voicemail message is played.
- 4. In the Members section, all the members of the ring group are selected, and the members are not editable.

### - Note:

If the ring group members are changed, the members of the group's voice mailboxes also change.

5. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, select a voicemail greeting.

You can also click Greeting Management to customize a greeting or mange your custom greetings.

6. Click Save and Apply.

### **Related information**

Enable or Disable Voicemail Access PIN Change Voicemail Access PIN Configure Message Envelope Change Voicemail Greetings Record or Upload Voicemail Greetings Manage Group Voicemail Greetings

# Set up Group Voicemail for a Custom Group

For a team whose members come from different departments, you can set up a Group Voicemail for the team members. All team members will get notified when a group voicemail message is received.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. In the Basic section, configure the following settings:
  - Type: Select Custom.
  - Number: Specify a virtual number for callers to access the group voicemail.
  - Name: Enter a group voicemail name to help you identify it.
  - Mode: Select the mode to handle received voicemail messages.
    - Shared by Members: The voicemail messages are saved in the group mailbox, and are shared by all members. Any members can manage the group voicemail messages.
    - Broadcast to Members: The voicemail messages are not stored in the group mailbox. Instead, the system broadcasts (copies and forwards) the voicemail messages to the individual mailboxes of all the members.
  - Voicemail PIN Authentication: Enable or disable voicemail PIN authentication.
  - Voicemail Access PIN: If enable voicemail PIN authentication, enter a desired access PIN number.
  - Play Date and Time: Optional. Play the date and time that the message was received before a voicemail message is played.
  - Play Caller ID: Optional. Play the caller ID information before a voicemail message is played.
  - Play Message Duration: Optional. Play the duration of the message before a voicemail message is played.
- 4. In the Members section, select the custom group members.
- 5. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, select a voicemail greeting.

You can also click Greeting Management to customize a greeting or mange your custom greetings.

6. Click Save and Apply.

#### **Related information**

Enable or Disable Voicemail Access PIN Change Voicemail Access PIN Configure Message Envelope Change Voicemail Greetings Record or Upload Voicemail Greetings Manage Group Voicemail Greetings

### Manage Group Voicemails

This topic describes how to edit a group voicemail, and delete group voicemails.

### Edit a group voicemail

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail.
- 2. Click Z beside the group voicemail that you want to edit.
- 3. Change the settings according to your needs.
  - Enable or Disable Voicemail Access PIN
  - <u>Change Voicemail Access PIN</u>
  - <u>Configure Message Envelope</u>
  - <u>Change Voicemail Greetings</u>
  - <u>Record or Upload Voicemail Greetings</u>
  - Manage Group Voicemail Greetings
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete group voicemails

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail.
- 2. To delete a group voicemail:
  - a. Click ៉ beside the group voicemail that you want to delete.
  - b. Click Apply.
- 3. To delete group voicemails in bulk:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the group voicemails that you want to delete, click Delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.

# Send and Receive Voicemail Messages

# Forward Calls to Voicemail

Never miss a lead by allowing your customers to leave voicemail messages. This topic describes how to forward various kinds of calls to voicemail.

### **Background information**

A growing business cannot afford to miss incoming calls. A missed call may make your customers impatient. Forwarding calls to voicemail automatically helps you to stay connected with customers and enhance the service.

In the following scenarios, you can consider a destination as voicemail, which helps the system to forward calls to voicemail:

- Forward extension users' calls to voicemail: The extension user is unavailable to answer a call.
- <u>Set failover destination to voicemail for a ring group or queue</u>: No members or agents are available to take a call or the call reaches the timeout.
- <u>Allow users to leave voicemail messages by IVR</u>: Give the customers an option to leave a voicemail message. When the customers cannot get the information from IVR, they can leave a message.
- Forward inbound calls to voicemail: Immediate phone support is not required.

### Forward extension users' calls to voicemail

You can set call forwarding rules for each presence status as users' need, the system will forward extension users' calls to voicemail according to the presence status.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Presence tab, select a presence status to configure.
- 3. In the Call Forwarding section, configure call forwarding rules for internal calls (incoming calls from colleagues) and external calls (inbound calls from customers).
  - a. Select the checkbox of a forwarding condition.
  - b. Select a corresponding destination for the forwarding condition to one of the following options:
    - Voicemail: Forward calls to the extension's voicemail box.
    - Group Voicemail: Forward calls to a selected group mailbox.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

Set failover destination to voicemail for a ring group or queue

1. Log in to PBX web portal, set failover destination to voicemail.

- To set failover destination for a ring group, go to Call Features > Ring Group, edit the desired ring group.
- To set failover destination for a queue, go to Call Features > Queue, edit the desired queue.
- 2. In the Failover Destination drop-down list, select a corresponding destination to one of the following options:
  - Extension Voicemail: Forward calls to the extension's voicemail box.
  - Group Voicemail: Forward calls to a selected group mailbox.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

Allow users to leave voicemail messages by IVR

Prerequisites

Update your IVR prompt that would instruct callers to press a key to access voicemail.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR, edit the desired IVR.
- 2. Click Key Press Event tab, select a corresponding destination to one of the following options:
  - Extension Voicemail: Forward calls to the extension's voicemail box.
  - Group Voicemail: Forward calls to a selected group mailbox.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

### Forward inbound calls to voicemail

On non-working days, you can forward inbound calls to voicemail.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route, edit the desired inbound route.
- 2. In the Default Destination section, select a corresponding destination to one of the following options:
  - Extension Voicemail: Forward calls to the extension's voicemail box.
  - Group Voicemail: Forward calls to a selected group mailbox.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

# Leave a Voicemail Message without Calling the User

This topic describes how to send a voicemail message without ringing extensions.

### **Background information**

Although you can send a message by email or text, sometimes there is no replacement for the emotion, inflection, and sincerity of your voice. When you do not want to disturb some-

one or when you do not have time for a phone conversation, you can send a voicemail message without calling extension.

It is useful in a team work. When your partners are busy in a meeting or after work, but you have some information that need to share with them, you can send a voicemail message without calling them. It allows your partner to reflect prior to responding.

### Prerequisites

This feature is only for internal extension users.

### Procedure

- 1. To leave a voicemail message to a specific extension user, dial feature code (\*12) followed by extension number (for example, \*121001).
- 2. To leave a voicemail message to a queue, a ring group, or a custom group, dial feature code (\*12) followed by group voicemail number (for example, \*126100).
- 3. Follow the voice prompt to leave your message.
- 4. When done, hang up or press #.

### 🕡 Tip:

The default feature code for sending voicemail messages is \*12. You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Voicemail > Leave a Voicemail for Extension/Group Voicemail.

# Forward Voicemail Messages to Email

Email is one of the most popular communication tools for business. Forwarding voicemail messages to email is an efficient business feature that allows employees to receive voicemail audio files as email attachments. This topic describes what you can do with voicemail to email and how to forward voicemail message to email for specific extension users.

### **Background information**

### Scenario

For employees who travel frequently and require an efficient way to keep up with voicemail and provide a quick response for the customers, it is an efficient way to get alert timely, listen to voicemails anywhere, and handle business over email.

### Benefit

Each time the employees receive a voicemail message, they can receive an email with the new voicemail message attached as a .wav file, including caller ID, time of the call, and callback number.

- Easy to identify: In emails, the employees can quickly identify the person who left the message, and listen to voicemail message as they need.
- Easy to listen: The employees can check and listen to their voicemail messages via computer, smart phone or mobile device at convenience, instead of calling to voicemail box and navigating through the maze of voice prompts. They can also fast-forward or rewind to reach and repeat the important portion.
- Easy to share: The employees can forward emails to share voice messages with teammates to improve collaboration efficiency.
- Easy to manage: Managing the communications is easier since all the voicemail messages are in the email box. It is faster to sort, prioritize, scan, delete, and save voicemail message.

### Prerequisites

- Make sure there is a valid email address assigned to each extension.
- Make sure the PBX <u>system email</u> works, or the PBX cannot forward the received voicemail to an extension user's email.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the New Voicemail Notification drop-down list, select Send Email Notifications with Attachment.
- 4. In the After Notification drop-down list, set how to handle the voicemail message after the system has successfully notified the extension user by email.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

### Manage Voicemail Messages

### **Check Voicemail Messages**

This topic describes how to check voicemail messages.

### Background information

Methods

Extension users can get an <u>instant voicemail notification</u> when receiving a new voicemail message. There are multiple ways to check voicemail messages anytime and anywhere.

• On an IP phone

- On Linkus client
- Via Email
- Via IVR

#### Feature code

The default feature code for checking voicemail messages is \*2. You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Voicemail > Check Voicemail/Subscribe Voicemail Status.

#### Check voicemail messages on an IP phone

Check voicemail messages on a user's own phone

- 1. Dial feature code \*2.
- 2. Follow the voice prompt to enter your PIN number followed by #.
- 3. Navigate through the <u>voicemail menu</u> to check your voicemail message.

Check voicemail messages from another phone

- 1. Dial feature code \*2 followed by the extension number whose voicemail will be checked. (for example, to check voicemail of extension 1001, dial \*21001).
- 2. Follow the voice prompt to enter your PIN number followed by #.
- 3. Navigate through the <u>voicemail menu</u> to check your voicemail message.

Check group voicemail messages from an IP phone

If the Mode of group voicemail is set to Shared by Members, the users can check the messages in group mailbox. If any users check the new messages, the status of messages will be set as read.

- 1. Dial feature code \*2 followed by the group voicemail number (for example, \*26100).
- 2. Navigate through the voicemail menu to check your voicemail message.

#### Check voicemail messages on Linkus client

If you have enabled Linkus Clients for extension users, the extension users can check voicemail messages on their Linkus clients.

#### Check voicemail messages via Email

If you have set up the feature of <u>forwarding voicemail messages to email</u> for extensions, the extension users can check their voicemail messages in their email boxes.

### Check voicemail messages via IVR

If you have allowed extension users to <u>dial in an IVR to check voicemail messages</u>, the extension users can also check voicemail messages when they are out of office.

- 1. Dial in an IVR, follow the voice prompt.
- 2. Dial feature code \*2 followed by extension number or group voicemail number, and then enter the PIN number.
- 3. Navigate through the <u>voicemail menu</u> to check voicemail messages.

# Enable or Disable Voicemail Transcription

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports a Voicemail Transcription feature. Using this feature can transcribe voice messages to texts, users can view the message content directly, which brings great convenient and efficiency.

### **Enable Voicemail Transcription**

Prerequisites

Voicemail Transcription feature requires the use of a third-party transcription service to convert the voice message to text. Before you start to use Voice-mail Transcription, make sure that the PBX is integrated with a third-party Speech-to-Text (STT) service.

For now, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to integrate with Google Cloud STT API service. For more information, see <u>Integrate Yeastar P-Series</u> <u>Cloud Edition with Google Cloud Speech-to-Text Service</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Voicemail Settings.
- 2. Scroll down to the bottom of the page, turn on Voicemail Transcription.



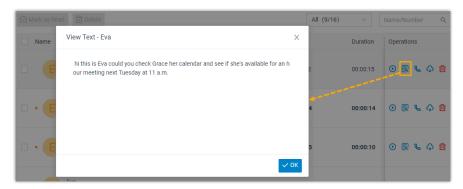
3. Click Save.

Result

The Voicemial Transcription feature is enabled, users can receive voicemails in the form of text on different platforms.

Linkus Web Client and Linkus Mobile Client

Users can check the transcribed text for each voicemail on Linkus Web Client and Linkus Mobile Client.



**Email Client** 

If <u>Voicemail to Email</u> feature is enabled, the transcribed text will be displayed in the email content for received voicemails.

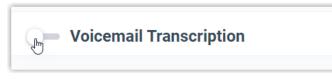
The figure below shows an example of voicemail notification email.

Yeastar You Have a New Voicemail from Eva - 3010		
The voicemail	message (transcribed): hi this is Eva could you check	
Grace her cal	endar and see if she's available for an hour meeting next	
Tuesday at 11	.a.m.	
PBX Name: P	BX	
PBX SN:	contraction 1	

### **Disable Voicemail Transcription**

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Voicemail Settings.
- 2. Scroll down to the bottom of the page, turn off Voicemail Transcription.



3. Click Save.

Result

The Voicemail Transcription feature is unavailable.

### Configure Message Envelope

This topic describes how to enable or disable message envelope.

### **Background information**

Message envelope is given before a voicemail message is played. Message envelop includes the following information:

- Date and Time that the message was received.
- Caller ID information.
- Duration of the message.

You can enable or disable envelope information separately according to user needs.

Configure message envelope for extension voicemail

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. Decide whether to enable the following information for the message envelope:
  - Play Date and Time: Play the date and time that the message was received.
    - Play Caller ID: Play the caller ID information.
    - Play Message Duration: Play the duration of message.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

Configure message envelope for group voicemail

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. In the Basic section, decide whether to enable the following information for the message envelope:
  - Play Date and Time: Play the date and time that the group voicemail message was received.
  - Play Caller ID: Play the caller ID information.

• Play Message Duration: Play the duration of group voicemail message. 3. Click Save and Apply.

### Limit Voicemail Message Length

Limiting voicemail message length is a good way to reduce invalid or lengthy voicemails. This topic describes how to specify the message length (max and min) for a caller to leave a voicemail message.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Voicemail Settings > Message Options.
- 2. In the Max Message Time(s) drop-down list, select a number of seconds.

Messages exceeding the maximum duration will be automatically cut off. 3. In the Min Message Time(s) drop-down list, select a number of seconds.

Messages less than the minimal duration will be automatically discarded.

4. Click Save and Apply.

### 👔 Tip:

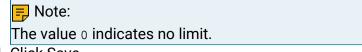
You may need to inform the callers in the greeting to keep their messages brief or under the maximum duration.

# Auto Cleanup Voicemail Messages

Clean up old messages to free up space for new voicemail messages. You can determine how many and how long that the system retains voicemail messages in a mailbox. The system automatically deletes the old voicemail messages when the threshold is reached. This topic describes how to set up auto cleanup of voicemail messages for each extension.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Storage > Auto Cleanup > Voicemail Auto Cleanup.
- 2. In the Max Number of Voicemail field, enter the maximum number of voicemail messages that should be retained for each mailbox.
- 3. In the Voicemail Preservation Days field, enter the maximum number of days that voicemail messages should be retained.



4. Click Save.

### Result

If <u>Auto Clean up Reminder</u> is enabled, and the retained voicemail messages reach 90% of the threshold, the system sends you a notification email.

# **Voicemail Security**

### **Change Voicemail Access PIN**

This topic describes how to change voicemail access PIN for extension voicemail and group voicemail.

### **Background information**

By default, the extension users need to enter the voicemail access PIN for authentication when checking their voicemail messages. The default voicemail access PIN is randomly generated.

#### Pote:

The PIN can be numerics only, and a minimum of 3 digits is required.

Change voicemail access PIN for extension voicemail There are two ways to change voicemail access PIN:

- On web interface
- <u>Via voicemail mailbox</u>

Change extension voicemail access PIN on web interface

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the Voicemail Access PIN field, enter a PIN number.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

Change extension voicemail access PIN via voicemail mailbox

- 1. Dial \*2 to enter mailbox, enter the access PIN.
- 2. Press 4 to change the voicemail access PIN.
- 3. Follow the voice prompt, and enter the new PIN followed by # key.

The call ends automatically after saving the new PIN.

Change voicemail access PIN for group voicemail There are two ways to change voicemail access PIN:

- On web interface
- <u>Via voicemail mailbox</u>

Change group voicemail access PIN on web interface

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. In the Voicemail Access PIN field, enter a PIN number.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

Change group voicemail access PIN via voicemail mailbox

- 1. Dial \*2 followed by the group voicemail number to enter mailbox, enter the access PIN.
- 2. Press 4 to change the voicemail access PIN.
- 3. Follow the voice prompt, and enter the new PIN followed by # key.

The call ends automatically after saving the new PIN.

### Enable or Disable Voicemail Access PIN

A voicemail access PIN is helpful to prevent unauthorized access. This topic describes how to enable or disable voicemail access PIN.

Note:

For security reasons, we recommend that you enable voicemail access PIN.

Enable or disable voicemail access PIN for extension voicemail

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extensions, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. To enable voicemail access PIN, select Enabled from the Voicemail PIN Authentication drop-down list.
- 4. To disable voicemail access PIN, select Disabled from the Voicemail PIN Authentication drop-down list.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

Enable or disable voicemail access PIN for group voicemail

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. To enable voicemail access PIN, select Enabled from the Voicemail PIN Authentication drop-down list.

- 3. To disable voicemail access PIN, select Disabled from the Voicemail PIN Authentication drop-down list.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

# **Voicemail Greetings**

### Voicemail Greeting Overview

Voicemail greeting is a short message that is played before a caller records a message. Via the greeting, you can inform the callers your information, like when you will be available, other methods to contact you, or other options that the caller can use to receive assistance.

### Greeting types

There are two types of voicemail greetings that you can set up for extension voicemail and group voicemail:

- System Global Greeting: A greeting that is applied to extension voicemail or group voicemail by default.
- Custom Greeting: A greeting that is personalized.

### Personal greeting based on presence

For extension voicemail, extension users can choose how to play greetings in different presence:

- Default greeting: Play a greeting for any presence that doesn't have a personal greeting.
- Presence greetings: Play a personal greeting for each presence (available, away, do not disturb, lunch break, business trip, and off work).

For example, an extension user has different greetings for Lunch Break status and Away status.

- Lunch Break: "I'm currently on a lunch and unable to take your call".
- Away: "I'm currently away from my desk".

### **Record or Upload Voicemail Greetings**

This topic describes how to record or upload voicemail greetings for extension voicemail or group voicemail.

### **Background information**

The personalized greetings can delight the callers, and let them know why you're unavailable and how they can contact you. Up to ten individual greetings are customizable for each voicemail. It is easy to customize greetings in two ways:

• Upload an audio file: Prepare an audio file.

- Note:

The uploaded file should meet the audio file requirements.

• Record a voicemail greeting from a phone: Place a call from system, the extension users can answer the call and record their voice as voicemail greetings.

Record or upload voicemail greetings for extension voicemail

The extension users may want to make their voicemails more personalized and professional depending on presence, you can set personalized voicemail greetings for each user.

Upload an extension voicemail greeting

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 4. In the pop-up window, click Upload.
- 5. Select an audio file to upload.

You can view and manage the greeting in Greeting Management.

Record an extension voicemail greeting from a phone

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 4. In the pop-up window, click Record New Greeting tab.
- 5. In the Audio File Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 6. In the Extension drop-down list, select an extension to record a greeting.
- 7. Click Save.

The system places a call to the selected extension.

8. Answer the call, and record greeting on the phone.

Press # key or hang up after recording greeting, you can view and manage the greeting in Greeting Management tab.

Record or upload voicemail greetings for a group voicemail

Upload a group voicemail greeting

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.

- 2. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Upload.
- 4. Select an audio file to upload.

You can view and manage the greeting in Greeting Management.

Record a group voicemail greeting from phone

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. In Group Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Record New Greeting tab.
- 4. In the Audio File Name field, enter a name to help you identify it.
- 5. In the Extension drop-down list, select an extension to record a greeting.
- 6. Click Save.

The system places a call to the selected extension.

7. Answer the call, and record greeting on the phone.

Press # key or hang up after recording greeting, you can view and manage the greeting in Greeting Management tab.

### Manage Personal Voicemail Greetings

This topic describes how you can manage an extension user's personal greeting, including playing, downloading, and deleting greetings.

### Play a personal greeting

To check the uploaded greetings or recorded greetings, you can play the greeting on a phone or on web.

- Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 4. Select a greeting that you want to play, click  $\bigcirc$ .
- 5. In the pop-up window, choose how to play the greeting:
  - Play on Web: Click 🕑 to play the greeting on the web directly.
  - Play to Extension: Play the greeting on a phone.
    - a. Select an extension, and click Play.

The system places a call to the extension.

b. Pick up the call to listen to the greeting on the phone.

### Download a personal greeting

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 4. Select a greeting that you want to download, click  $\bigcirc$ .

### Delete personal greetings

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 4. To delete a greeting, do the following:
  - a. Click 🛄 beside the greeting.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.
- 5. To delete greetings in bulk, do the following:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the greetings, click Delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.

### Manage Group Voicemail Greetings

This topic describes how you can manage group voicemail greetings, including playing, downloading, and deleting greetings.

Play a group voicemail greeting

To check the uploaded greetings or recorded group voicemail greetings, you can play the greeting on a phone or on web.

- Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 3. Select a greeting that you want to play, click  $\bigcirc$ .
- 4. In the pop-up window, choose how to play the greeting:
  - Play on Web: Click 🕑 to play the greeting on the web directly.
  - Play to Extension: Play the greeting on a phone.
    - a. Select an extension, and click Play.

The system places a call to the extension.

b. Pick up the call to listen to the greeting on the phone.

Download group voicemail greeting

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 3. Select a greeting that you want to download, click  $\bigcirc$ .

### Delete group voicemail greetings

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, click Greeting Management.
- 3. To delete a greeting, do the following:
  - a. Click 🔟 beside the greeting.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.
- 4. To delete greetings in bulk, do the following:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the greetings, click Delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.

# Change Voicemail Greetings

Both the global and personalized voicemail greeting are changeable. This topic describes how to change voicemail greetings for extension voicemail and group voicemail.

### Change global voicemail greetings for all voicemails

### Prerequisites

Upload a custom greeting or record a custom greeting.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Voicemail Settings > Greeting Options.
- 2. In the Global Voicemail Greeting drop-down list, select an audio prompt.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

The global voicemail greeting will be applied to all the extension voicemails and group voicemails that do not have a custom greeting.

### Change voicemail greetings for a specific extension

### Prerequisites

Record or upload voicemail greeting for the specific extension.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the Voicemail Greeting section, select a greeting:
  - Default Greeting: Select a greeting from Default Greeting dropdown list.

Default greeting is played for the presence with Presence Greetings set to None.

• Presence Greetings (Available, Away, Do Not Disturb, Lunch Break, Business Trip, and Off Work): Select a greeting from the corresponding presence drop-down list.

The presence greeting is played based on extension presence.

### 7 Tip:

You can also select Record New to add a new greeting and apply. 4. Click Save and Apply.

Change voicemail greetings for a group voicemail

### Prerequisites

Record or upload voicemail greeting for the group voicemail.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Group Voicemail, edit the desired group voicemail.
- 2. In the Group Voicemail Greeting section, select a greeting.

### 🕡 Tip:

You can also select Record New to add a new greeting and apply.

3. Click Save and Apply.

# **Voicemail Notifications**

### Voicemail Notification Overview

Extension users can get an instant notification when receiving a new voicemail message. This topic describes various ways to get notified of new voicemail messages.

### Notification on IP phones

There are two methods that you can use to monitor voicemail status on an IP phone.

Monitor voicemail status by function keys

You can use a function key to monitor changes of voicemail status, including monitor your voicemails, other users' voicemails, or group voicemails. It is useful when sharing a single voicemail in a team. The team members can monitor and access the voicemail in time. Once someone reads or deletes the message, no one else should have to deal with it.

For more information, see Monitor Voicemail Status on an IP Phone.

#### Monitor voicemail status by MWI

Message Waiting Indicator (MWI) is a commonly supported phone feature that alerts you when receiving a new voicemail message. MWI typically involves a flashing light and optional audio alert. This can differ from device to device.

#### Notification by email

You can set up email notification for extension users. When receiving a voicemail message, users can get alert timely, read the message at a glance to see the caller and when the message is left, and listen to voicemails. This improves work efficiency.

- For employees who do not use the phone frequently, they don't need to pay attention to keep checking voicemail on the phone at all time.
- For employees who travel frequently, they can process voice messages in real time and respond to customers promptly.

For more information, see Set up Email Notifications for Voicemail.

# Monitor Voicemail Status on an IP Phone

This topic describes how to monitor voicemail status on an IP phone by function keys.

### **Background information**

For extension users who want to monitor voicemail status on their phones, you can set a function key for each extension user by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### Note:

Users can also set function keys manually on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

### Procedure

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor voicemail status.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.

- If you want to assign function keys for a specific extension user, click beside the desired extension.
- If you want to assign function keys for multiple extensions, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, and click Edit.
- b. Click the Function Keys tab.
- c. Configure function keys.

🚽 Note:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

- Type: Select the voicemail type that you want to monitor.
  - To monitor extension voicemail, select Check Voicemail.
  - To monitor group voicemail in shared mode, select Check Group Voicemail.

🚽 Note:

Monitor voicemail by function key is not applicable for group voicemail in broadcast mode, because the voicemail messages are not stored in the group mailbox.

- Value: Select an extension voicemail or group voicemail that you want to monitor.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- d. Click Save.
- 2. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.
- 3. If the extension has been associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension.

### Result

The function key shows the real-time status of voicemail.

- Green: The monitored extension has no unread voicemail messages.
- Red: The monitored extension has unread voicemail messages.

To check the voicemail message, press the function key to access the voicemail box and operate following by the prompt instructions.

- Note:

The key LED status may vary by phone models.

# Set up Email Notifications for Voicemail

This topic describes how to set up email notifications for new voicemail messages.

## Limitation

This feature is only for extensions' personal voicemails. New voicemail messages to Group Voicemail doesn't support email notifications.

## PNote:

The group voicemail in <u>broadcast mode</u> will forward messages to extensions' personal voicemails, the extension users can also receive email notifications.

## Prerequisites

- Make sure there is a valid email address assigned to each extension user.
- Make sure the PBX <u>system email</u> works, or the PBX cannot send voicemail messages to an extension user's email.

## Procedure

- Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Click Voicemail tab.
- 3. In the New Voicemail Notification drop-down list, select a voicemail notification method or disable email notification.
  - Do not Send Email Notifications: Disable email notification.
  - Send Email Notifications without Attachment: Send a notification email as soon as receiving a new voicemail message in mailbox.
  - Send Email Notifications with Attachment: Send a notification email with the new voicemail message attached as a .wav file.

## 🚽 Note:

If you use the default Voicemail to Email email template, the notification email contains the followings. To customize the email template, see <u>Customize Email Tem-</u> <u>plates</u>.

- Who left the message
- The caller ID
- When the message was left
- The transcribed voicemail text (Need to enable Voicemail Transcription first)
- The PBX device information
- 4. In the After Notification drop-down list, select a desired option from the drop-down list.
  - Do Nothing: Keep the voicemail messages in mailbox as unread.
  - Make as Read: Keep the voicemail messages in mailbox as read to prevent users from repeatedly receiving reminders on their phones.

• Delete Voicemail: Delete the voicemail message to avoid mailbox being filled up.

#### - Note:

We recommend that you select this option only when the extension user has received a notification email with voicemail message attachment.

5. Click Save and Apply.

## **Custom Voicemail Experience**

## Allow Callers to Press a Key to Leave Messages

This topic describes how to allow callers to press a key to leave messages.

## **Background information**

By default, when the caller accesses a user's voicemail, PBX starts to record message automatically. It may make callers embarrassed when they are not ready to leave a message or they don't need to leave a message. Even if the caller hangs up directly, the voice mailbox still generates a lot of invalid information.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Voicemail Greetings.
- 2. In the Caller Options section, select the checkbox of Ask callers to press 5 for leaving a message.
- 3. Click Save.

## Result

The caller can choose whether to leave a message after listening to the greeting, and press 5 to leave a message after he or she is ready.

### What to do next

If a custom greeting is used for voicemail, <u>update the greeting</u> that would instruct callers to press 5 for leaving a message.

## Allow Callers to Dial Extension from Voicemail

This topic describes how to allow callers to dial extension from voicemail.

## Background information

For the employees working in multiple places, they can record a greeting to prompt the caller to dial another extension to reach them. Instead of hanging up and calling again, you can allow the caller to dial extensions directly from voicemail.

It is also useful when the boss is unavailable to answer a call, instead of leaving a message in emergency, the caller can dial the secretary's extension, .

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail.
- 2. In the Caller Options section, select the checkbox of Allow callers to dial extension.
- 3. Select the extensions that can be dialed from the Available box to the Selected box.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

The caller can press \* key to dial an extension.

## What to do next

If a custom greeting is used for voicemail, <u>update the greeting</u> that would instruct callers to press \* key for dialing an extension.

## Allow Callers to Break out from Voicemail

This topic describes how to allow callers to break out from voicemail, and access the operator.

## Background information

For technical support, doctor office or sales manager, they do need someone available in case of any emergencies after hours. When callers access the voicemail, it would be nice to allow the callers to press 0 to get to the operator directly in emergency. Otherwise, they have to hang up and redial.

## Procedure

You can specify an IVR or an extension for answering such emergency calls.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail.
- 2. In the Caller Options section, select the checkbox of Allow callers to press 0 to break out from voicemail.
- 3. In the Destination drop-down list, select a destination.
  - IVR: Forward the call to an <u>IVR</u>.
  - Extension: Forward the call to the specific extension.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## What to do next

If a custom greeting is used for voicemail, <u>update the greeting</u> that would instruct callers to press 0 to break out from voicemail.

## Allow Callers to Review Voicemail Messages

Callers can review their voicemail messages after recording. This is important for callers to confirm whether the message is appropriate. This topic describes how to allow callers to review voicemail messages.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Voicemail.
- 2. In the Caller Options section, select the checkbox of Allow callers to review message.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

## **Global Voicemail Settings**

The topic describes the global voicemail message settings, including caller options, message options, and greeting options.

Caller options

Setting	Description
Allow callers to press 0 to break out from voicemail	Allow callers to press 0 to exit the voicemail, and reach a specific IVR or an extension.
Allow callers to dial extension	Allow callers to dial other extensions.
Allow callers to press 5 for leav- ing a message	Allow callers to press 5 to leave a voicemail message after greeting, instead of auto starting recording immediately.
Allow callers to review message	Allow callers to review his/her voicemail message after recording.

## Message options

Settings	Description
Max Message Time(s)	Set the maximum duration of one voicemail mes- sage.
	The default maximum voicemail duration that callers can leave is 600 seconds (10 minutes).

Settings	Description
Min Message Time(s)	Set the minimum duration of one voicemail mes- sage.
	The default minimum voicemail duration that callers must leave is 2 seconds.

## **Greeting Options**

Settings	Description
Max Greeting Time(s)	Set the maximum greeting duration that is played to caller.
	The default maximum greeting duration is 60 sec- onds (1 minute).
Global Voicemail Greeting	Select the greeting that is applied to all extensions.

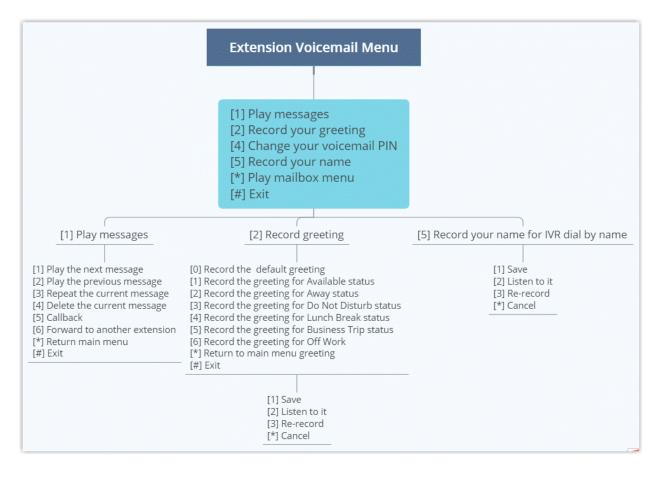
## Voicemail Transcription

Decide to enable or disable Voicemail Transcription feature. For more information, see <u>Enable or Disable Voicemail Transcription</u>.

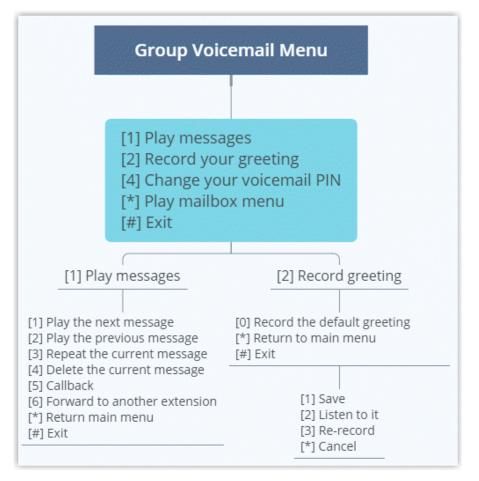
## Voicemail Menu Options

This topic shows the quick reference of voicemail menu.

## Extension voicemail menu



## Group voicemail menu



## Voicemail Capacity and Limitations

This topic describes the voicemail capacity and limitation for a voicemail.

## Default capacity and limitations for each mailbox

Voicemail box capacity has a limit of 100 messages with maximum 10 minutes for each message. Once they hit that limit, the system auto deletes the old voicemail messages.

There is no limit of the time to keep the voicemail on PBX.

## Adjust the capacity and limitations for each mailbox

- To adjust the capacity of voicemail box, see Auto Cleanup Voicemail Messages.
- To adjust the limitation of maximum message time, see <u>Limit Voicemail Message</u> <u>Length</u>.

# IVR

## Interactive Voice Response (IVR) Overview

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition integrates a free IVR system. This topic describes what is IVR, what you can do with IVR, and what is multi-level IVR.

## What is IVR?

Interactive Voice Response (IVR) is an automated telephony technology that interacts with callers, gathers information, and routes calls to the appropriate destinations. IVR can act as a virtual receptionist to handle large volumes of calls. It means that you don't need a dedicated person to redirect calls to appropriate departments. With IVR, customers can get quick response or access appropriate service on their own.

## What you can do with IVR?

Yeastar IVR uses customizable voice prompts to provide callers with instructions and directions for accessing information via phone, such as "press 1 for sales, and press 2 to leave a message.". IVR connects callers to individuals, departments, call queues, etc, based on the customers' selections from voice menus.

Multi-level IVR is an alternative that allows you to assign a new IVR to an IVR option, and provides more powerful options to route incoming calls. Multi-level IVR gives you the flexibility to classify the menu of an interaction, such as divides a sales department into regions, and routes calls more precisely.

You can customize your IVR to provide a seamless experience.

For customer

- Play personal greeting to make the customer feel welcome.
- Allow customer to leave a voicemail.
- Allow customer to call employees directly by dialing extension or by name.

For employee

- Allow employees to make an outbound call via an IVR.
- Allow employees to check voicemail via an IVR.
- Allow employees to remotely change IVR prompt by dialing the feature code #9.

### IVR keypress events

There are three types of keypress events:

- Menu options: The number keys, # key and \* key for users to access a desired destination.
- Timeout: If no input is detected after the configured timeout, the PBX will forward the call based on the configuration.
- Invalid: When an invalid key is pressed, route the call to a desired destination.

#### **Keypress destination**

The following options are available for you to assign to the keypress events:

- Hang Up: End the current call.
- Extension: Route the call to the specified extension.
- Extension Voicemail: Allow callers to leave a message for the specified extension.
- Group Voicemail: Allow callers to leave a message for a queue, a ring group, or a custom group.
- IVR: Allow callers to enter another IVR menu.
- Ring Group: Route the call to a specified ring group.
- Queue: Route the call to a specified queue.
- Dial by Name: Allow callers to place a call by extension user's name.

For more information, see <u>Allow Callers to Dial by Name via IVR</u>.

- External Number: Route the call to an external number.
- Play Prompt and Exit: Play a custom prompt, and then hang up the call.
- Play IVR Prompt: Play the IVR prompt, and then hang up the call.

#### Note:

- The option is only available for Invalid Input Destination.
- When callers enter a DTMF digit that is not defined in the IVR, the system would repeat the IVR prompt. If the play counts of the IVR prompt reach <u>the maximum number of times</u>, the system would directly hang up the call.

## Set up an IVR

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides easy-to-create menus that allow you to set up an IVR and keep up with changing requirements. This topic describes how to set up an IVR.

### Prerequisites

Before you set up an IVR, <u>record a custom prompt</u> or <u>upload a custom prompt</u> to provide callers with the IVR menu.

#### Procedure

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR, click Add.

- 2. In the Basic tab, set the basic settings of IVR.
  - Number: Specify a virtual number for callers to access the IVR.
  - The default IVR <u>number range</u> is from 6200 to 6299.
  - Name: Enter an IVR name to help you identify it.
  - Prompt: Set the IVR prompt that plays greeting and explains the IVR menu options to callers.

The default prompt is "Dial the extension number or press 0 for operator".

You can select up to 5 audio files, and the system plays the audio files in order.

- Prompt Repeat Count: Set how many times to play the prompt when the caller remains inactive during the Response Timeout(s).
- Response Timeout(s): Set how long (in seconds) to wait for the caller to operate.
- Digit Timeout(s): Set how long (in seconds) to wait for the caller to enter the next digit.
- IVR Alert Info: Optional. Set an "alert info text" to add to Alert-info header in IN-VITE request for IVR calls.

When receiving an IVR call, the phone will inspect "Alert-Info" header to determine which ring tone it should use for ringing.

- Dial Extensions: Whether to allow callers to dial specific extension numbers via IVR.
  - Disable: Disable to dial extensions via IVR.
  - All Extensions: Allow the callers to dial all the extension numbers.
  - Allowed Extensions: Select the extensions that the callers can dial.
  - $\,{}^{\circ}$  Restricted Extensions: Select the extensions that the callers can NOT dial.
- Dial Outbound Routes: Whether to allow callers to make outbound calls via IVR.
- Dial to Check Voicemail: Whether to allow users to check voicemail via IVR.
- Dial #9 to Modify IVR Prompt: Whether to allow users to dial the feature code #9 to record and apply a new IVR prompt.

### - Note:

If the IVR prompt is replaced successfully, the previous voice prompt will be removed from the IVR prompt setting, and the new voice prompt will be retained.

- 3. Click the Key Press Event tab, set up an IVR menu.
  - a. In the Key Press drop-down list, select a key event for each key: 0-9, \*, and #.
  - b. In the Response Timeout drop-down list, select a call routing destination if the caller remains inactive within the Prompt Repeat Count.
  - c. In the Invalid Input Destination drop-down list, select a call routing destination if the caller enters a digit that is not defined in the IVR.
  - d. Optional: Select the checkbox of Allow Opt-out of Call Recording.

When the call is routed to the key press destination, the call would not be recorded even <u>Call Recording</u> is enabled.

4. Click Save and Apply.

## What to do next

Set up an inbound route, and specify the destination to the IVR.

**Related information** 

<u>Allow Callers to Dial Extensions via IVR</u> <u>Allow Callers to Dial by Name via IVR</u> <u>Allow Callers to Dial Outbound Calls via IVR</u> <u>Allow Callers to Change IVR Prompt Remotely</u> Forward Incoming Calls to an External Number via IVR

## Set up IVR Prompts

A custom greeting and prompt allow you to provide a more personalized experience for your customers. This topic describes how to set up IVR prompts according to your IVR menu.

## IVR prompt types

Generally, an IVR prompt consists of several pieces of information:

• Welcome greeting: Welcome greeting is the first message that callers hear when they call in an IVR.

For example, "Thank you for calling Yeastar".

• Menu prompt: Present callers with a series of options.

For example, "If you got something urgent, please press 1 to contact our support. To leave a voicemail, please press 2".

• Goodbye greeting: Play the greeting before ending a call.

## Prepare audio files for IVR prompt

The PBX system has a default IVR prompt. You can customize IVR prompt using a single audio file or multiple audio clips.

Customize IVR prompt by a single audio file

You can record greeting, IVR menu, or any messages in a single audio file. It is easy to manage and reduce the number of prompts.

Customize IVR prompt by multiple audio clips

Yeastar IVR also allows you to specify up to 5 different audio files as IVR prompt. The system plays the audio files in order when a customer calls in IVR.

It is better to divide your IVR prompt into multiple audio clips in the following scenarios:

• Modify the IVR prompt frequently.

Every time you modify the IVR menu, you need to update IVR prompt. Divide your IVR prompt into multiple audio clips according to the content, such as clip 1 for Welcome greeting, clip 2 for menu prompt, and so on. Next time, when you need to change the IVR prompt, just replace the specific clip.

• A single audio file exceeds the limit.

The uploaded file should meet the <u>audio file requirements</u>. You can not upload an audio file larger than 8 MB. Divide the audio file into multiple audio clips to solve this issue.

## Update the IVR prompts

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt, <u>up-load a custom prompt</u> or <u>record a custom prompt</u>.

🚽 Note:

The uploaded file should meet the audio file requirements.

- 2. Go to Call Features > IVR, edit the desired IVR.
- 3. In the Prompt drop-down list, select your custom prompts.

You can select up to 5 audio files, and the system plays the audio files in order.

Basic Key Press Event			
* Number		* Name	
6200		6200	
* Prompt		* Prompt Repeat Count:	
Greeting.wav X         Press 1.wav X         Press 2.wav X           Press 3.wav X         Press star.wav X	~	3	~
* Response Timeout:		* Digit Timeout:	
3	$\checkmark$	3	$\checkmark$

- 4. In the Prompt Repeat Count drop-down list, select prompt repeat times.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

#### **Related information**

Allow Callers to Change IVR Prompt Remotely

## Allow Callers to Dial Extensions via IVR

This topic describes how to allow callers to dial extensions directly via an IVR.

## Background information

For new customers, IVR can help them reach the desired employee or department. But for old customers, it is inconvenient for them to listen to audio prompts and make selections to reach the right employee or department, even they know the extension number.

For the callers who know the extension number, it is better to allow them to dial an extension number directly.

## Prerequisites

Before you set up dialing extension directly via an IVR, update your IVR prompt that would instruct callers to dial an extension number.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR, edit the desired IVR.
- 2. In the Prompt drop-down list, select the updated IVR prompt.
- 3. In the Dial Extensions drop-down list, select which extension as available or available for callers to dial.
  - All Extensions: The callers can dial all the extensions.
  - Allowed Extensions: The callers can dial the selected extensions.
  - Restricted Extensions: The callers can dial any extensions except the restricted extensions.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Allow Callers to Dial by Name via IVR

For the customers who don't remember an employee's extension number, you can allow them to reach the employee by entering the first three letters of the employee's first name or last name in an IVR. It is easier for customers to get to the right person.

## Restrictions

The Dial by Name feature supports to search the extension users whose caller ID names are composed of English letters or Mandarin phonetic symbols.

## Procedures

- 1. Specify an extension's caller ID name
- 2. Customize IVR prompt
- 3. <u>Configure an IVR</u>

## Specify an extension's caller ID name

When using Dial by Name, the IVR performs a search on an extension's caller ID name, which is composed of the first name and last name of the extension user. Therefore, make sure you have configured the caller ID name for extensions.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. In the User Information section, specify the First Name and Last Name for the extension.

User Information	
First Name	Last Name
Phillip	Huff
Email Address	Mobile Number
phillip@sample.com	

3. Click Save and Apply.

Online Status	Presence 🌲	Extension Number 🍦	Caller ID Name 💠	Email Address 👙
i 🖵 . 📼	Available	2001	Phillip Huff	phillip@sample.com

## Customize IVR prompt

You need to prepare a custom IVR prompt, instructing the callers to press a specific key in an IVR to enter the Dial by Name feature.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt.
- 2. <u>Upload a custom prompt</u> or <u>record a custom prompt</u>.

Note: The uploaded file should meet the <u>audio file requirements</u>.

### Configure an IVR

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR, edit the desired IVR.
- 2. Update the IVR prompt.
  - a. Go to the Basic tab.
  - b. In the Prompt drop-down list, select your custom prompts.

You can select up to 5 audio files, and the system plays the audio files in order.

Basic Key Press Event	
* Number	* Name
6200	6200
* Prompt	* Prompt Repeat Count:
Greeting.wav ×     Press 1.wav ×     Press 2.wav ×        Press 3.wav ×     Press star.wav ×	3
* Response Timeout:	* Digit Timeout:
3 ~	3

- 3. Set up the IVR keypress destination.
  - a. Go to the Key Press Event tab.
  - b. In the drop-down list of a key press, select Dial by Name.

Basic	Key Press Event	× 2000-i eo Ball		
Press 0				
[None]		$\vee$		
Press 1 Dial by Name	e	~		
Press 2			*	
Extension		$\vee$	2000-Leo Ball	$\vee$

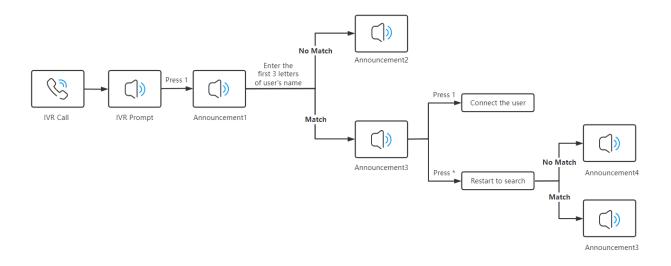
4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

Customers can call to the IVR, and quickly search the desired extension user by entering the first 3 letters of his/her name.

#### Example

We provide an example to help you understand the workflow of dial-by-name. In this example, the destination of key "1" is set to Dial by Name.



- 1. A caller calls into an IVR and hears the IVR prompt.
- 2. The caller presses "1" to enter the Dial by Name feature.
- 3. After hearing the <u>announcement1</u>, the caller enters the first 3 letters of an extension user's name.

For example, to search an extension user with the name "Phillips Huff", the caller needs to dial 7-4-4 (indicating P H I) on the phone's keypad.

- 4. The IVR will look for the best match and play the corresponding announcement.
  - If there is no matched user, the IVR plays announcement2.
  - If there is a matched user, the IVR plays <u>announcement3</u>, providing the extension user's name and extension number, as well as the following operation instructions:
    - $\circ$  1: If this is the person you are looking for, press 1 now.
      - The IVR will send the call to the extension user.
    - \*: Otherwise please press star now.

The IVR will start a new search, and provide another matched user's information to the caller. If there is no more matched user, IVR will play <u>an-</u><u>nouncement4</u>.

#### Default announcement of Dial by Name

Yeastar provides the default announcements when the caller selects the Dial by Name option. An announcement is played in the following scenarios:

Announcement	scenario
Welcome to the directory. Please en- ter the first three letters of your party's first name, using your touch tone key- pad, use the 7 key for Q, and the 9 key for Z.	Play when the caller presses a key to dial by name.

Announcement	scenario
No directory entries match your search.	Play when there is no matching directory en- tries after the caller enters three letters.
[Name] extension [Number] If this is the person you are looking for, press 1 now, otherwise please press star now.	Play when there are matching directory en- tries after the caller enters three letters.
There are no more compatible entries in the directory.	Play when there are no more compatible en- tries in the directory after the caller presses * key to search.

## Allow Callers to Dial Outbound Calls via IVR

This topic describes how to allow callers to dial outbound calls in an IVR.

## Background information

Dialing outbound calls via an IVR is useful when you interconnect two PBXs between headquarters and branch, and only set an IVR on headquarters PBX. You can allow the customers to dial the headquarters' extension number to contact the employees or departments in branch directly.

## Prerequisites

- Set up the appropriate <u>outbound route</u> and <u>inbound route</u> on the two interconnected PBXs.
- <u>Upload or record IVR prompt</u> that would instruct customers to dial an outbound call.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR, edit the desired IVR.
- 2. In the Prompt drop-down list, select the updated IVR prompt.
- 3. Select the checkbox of Dial Outbound Routes.
- 4. Select the desired outbound route from the Available box to the Selected box.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

# Allow Callers to Change IVR Prompt Remotely

In case of emergency (e.g. the office needs to close early due to bad weather), you may need to change IVR prompt. Instead of logging in to PBX with a computer to change IVR prompt, you can just make a call to the IVR, then dial a specific feature code to record and apply a new IVR prompt.

## Restrictions

- The number of custom prompts does NOT reach the <u>maximum limit</u>. Otherwise, users can NOT record new voice prompt for the IVR.
- A maximum of 2-minute recording time is allowed.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR, edit the desired IVR.
- 2. In the Basic tab, select the checkbox of Dial #9 to Modify IVR Prompt.
- 3. In the IVR Prompt Modify Password field, enter a password for authentication.
- Callers need to enter the password to authenticate, so as to change the IVR prompt. 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

Users can call to an IVR, dial #9 and enter the password, then follow the voice prompt to record a new IVR prompt on their phones.

If IVR prompt is replaced successfully, the previous voice prompt will be removed from the IVR setting, and the new voice prompt will be retained.

🚽 Note:

The new voice prompt is save on PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt, with a prompt name in the format of IVR{ivr\_number}Date{date}Number{extension\_number}.

Prom	pt Preferences	System Prompt	Music on Hold	Custom Prompt				
⊕ Rec	cord New 🖓 Upload	🗇 Delete			Search			
	Name				Oper	ations		
	IVR6200Date2022031	5155952Number2001.w	rav		Ŷ	• ¢	Đ	٦
	Greeting.wav				Ŷ	0 <b></b>	Ð	

## Example

We provide an example to help you understand the workflow of remotely changing IVR prompt.



1. In an IVR call, a caller dials #9, then enter the password to authenticate.

- 2. After hearing the beep tone, the caller starts recording the prompt. When done, press # key.
- 3. The caller can press a specific key to manage the prompt:
  - 1: Listen to the prompt.
  - 2: Save and apply the prompt to the IVR.
  - 3: Delete the prompt.

## Forward Incoming Calls to an External Number via IVR

This topic describes how to allow callers to reach a specific external number in an IVR.

## **Background information**

Forward Incoming Calls to an External Number with IVR is typical and important for 24x7 services, such as Doctor Answering Services and IT Support Services.

For Doctor Answering Services

When a patient calls in an hospital IVR, the patient can press a key to reach the external Doctor Answering Service to schedule an appointment or ask health questions and medical questions.

For IT Support Services

When your customers call in your office IVR after hours, you can give them an option to connect to an emergency support line. This emergency support line can be a Maintenance Engineer's mobile phone number.

### Prerequisites

Before you allow callers to reach a specific external number in an IVR, <u>update your IVR</u> <u>prompt</u> that would instruct callers to press a key to reach the external number.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > IVR, edit the desired IVR.
- 2. In the Prompt drop-down list, select the updated IVR prompt.
- 3. Click Key Press Event tab.
- 4. Select a key to set key press event to External Number.
- 5. Optional: In the Prefix field, enter the <u>prefix of outbound route</u> so that PBX can successfully route incoming calls to external number.
  - If the Strip of outbound route is not set, you don't have to set the Prefix.
  - If the Strip of outbound route is set, you need to set the Prefix according to the Patterns of outbound route.
- 6. Enter the external number, such as a Doctor Answering Service number or a mobile phone number.
- 7. Click Save and Apply.

# **IVR Configuration Example**

This topic shows the examples of single IVR configuration and multi-level IVR configuration.

# A Single IVR Configuration

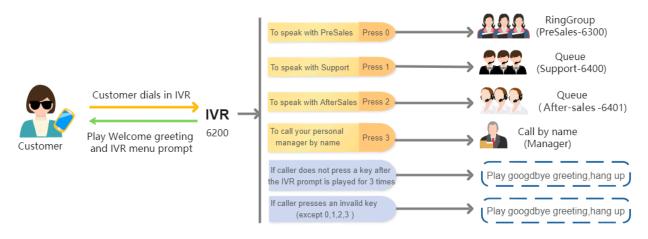
## **Background information**

A company needs an IVR to redirect calls to Pre-sales, Support, After-sales, and personal manager.

We assume that all ring groups, call queues, audio prompts, and inbound routes used in this example are previously configured.

## Step1. Design an IVR

When the customers dial in IVR (6200), they can access different service based on their business.



## Step2. Upload IVR Prompts

- 1. Go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompts, click Upload.
- 2. Select the audio files to upload.

Prompt Preferences	System Prompt	Music on Hold	Custom Prompt	
⊕ Record New 🗘 Up	load 🗊 Delete			Search
Name				Operations
Name GoodbyGreeting.wa	V			Operations ♀ ⊨ ⊙ ⊨ ♀ ⊨ ඕ
	V			

3. Click Save and Apply.

### Step3. Set up an IVR

- 1. Go to Call Features > IVR, click Add.
- 2. In the Basic tab, set the basic settings of IVR.

* Number	* Name
6201	IVR-1
* Prompt	* Prompt Repeat Count:
WelcomeGreeting.wav × MenuPrompt.wav × ∨	3
* Response Timeout (s):	* Digit Timeout (s):
3 ~ ~	3
* Dial Extensions:	
Disable $\vee$	

3. In the Key Press Event tab, set up an IVR menu.

Basic	Key Press Event					
Press 0			*			
Ring Group	~		6300	~	Opt o	out of being recorded
Press 1			*			
Queue	$\vee$		6400	~	Opt o	out of being recorded
Press 2			*			
Queue	V		6401	~	Opt o	out of being recorded
Press 3			*			
Extension	~		1007-Jason Liang	~	🔽 Opt o	out of being recorded
ponse Timeout			*		*	
lay Prompt and Ex	át	$\sim$	GoodbyGreeting.wav	$\sim$	1	
alid Input Destinat	tion		*		*	
lay Prompt and Ex		$\sim$	GoodbyGreeting.wav	$\vee$	1	

4. Click Save and Apply.

## Multi-level IVR Configuration

### **Background information**

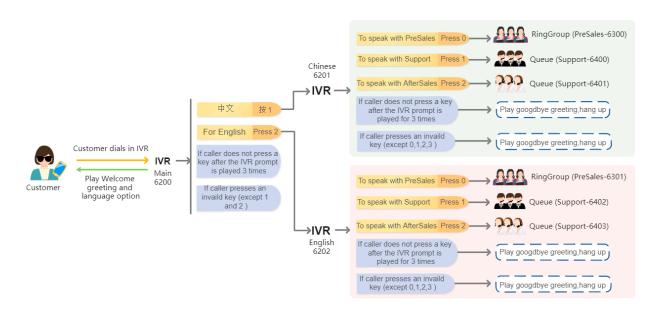
As business expands, the company needs to offer callers a bilingual auto-attendant feature based on their language selection. When the customer dials in to IVR, they can select a specific language to be used when playing prompts.

To achieve this, company needs to upgrade its IVR system allowing support of multi-language. We assume that all ring groups, call queues, extensions, audio prompts, and inbound routes used in this example are previously configured.

## Step1. Design IVRs

When the customers dial in to IVR-Main (6200), they can select a specific language to use.

- If customers select Chinese, the call will be redirected to IVR-Chinese (6201).
- If customers select English, the call will be redirected to IVR-English (6202).



## Step2. Set up IVRs

- 1. Set up the different IVRs with the same configuration for different language as shown in <u>a single IVR configuration</u>.
  - IVR-1 (6201)
  - IVR-2 (6202)
- 2. Set up main IVR-Main (6200).

a. In the Basic tab, set the basic settings of IVR.

• Number		* Name	
6200		Main	
Prompt		Prompt Repeat Count:	
WelcomeGreeting.wav × LanguagePrompt.wav ×	$\sim$	3	
Response Timeout (s):		* Digit Timeout (s):	
3	$\sim$	3	
Dial Extensions:			

#### b. In the Key Press Event tab, set up an IVR menu.

- Specify IVR-Chinese (6201) for key 1.
- Specify IVR-English (6202) for key 2.

Basic Key Press	Event				
Press 0					
[None]	$\vee$				
Press 1		*			
IVR	$\sim$	6201-Chinese	$\sim$	Allow Opt-out of C	Call Recording
Press 2		*			
IVR	$\vee$	6202-English	$\sim$	Allow Opt-out of 0	Call Recording
Response Timeout		*		*	
Play Prompt and Exit	$\sim$	GoodbyGreeting.wav	$\sim$	1	$\sim$
Invalid Input Destination		*		*	
Play Prompt and Exit	$\sim$	GoodbyGreeting.wav	$\sim$	1	

#### 3. Click Save and Apply.

The following figure displays the different IVRs created.

↔ Add 🗇 Delete				Search Q
Number ≑	Name ≑	Dial Extensions 🜲	Dial Outbound Routes 👙	Operations
6200	Main	Disable	No	🖉 🛛 🛅
6201	Chinese	All Extensions	No	🖉 🛛 🛅
6202	English	Disable	No	🖉 🛛 🛅

# **Call Recording**

## Call Recording Overview

Call recording is valuable to keep important conversations, help train employees, evaluate their performance, and provide them with feedback. This topic describes how does call recording work, recording types, recording prompt, and recording management.

## **Background information**

If there is a prompt on the top of the Recording configuration page, indicating that you have no permission to access this feature, you can contact your PBX provider to enable this feature if needed.

Call Features / Recording	
Your permissions don't give you access to the call recording feature. To enable access, please contact your PBX provider.	

The recording file is stored in a default storage area. You can check the storage capacity at Dashboard.

Scheduled Backup	OFF
Blocked IPs	0
Emergency Numbers	Used/Total Capacity: 0/500 Minutes
Recording	ſ

The PBX will notify contacts concerned via the specified notification methods when the recording is about to reach the capacity limit. The oldest recording files will be automatically cleaned up when the storage is full.

#### How does call recording work

The system records the conversation automatically when a call is established. During call recording, the user can pause and resume recording to avoid the sensitive information being recorded. After the call ends, the system converts the conversation into audio files (.wav) with a digital signature.

#### Note:

The digital signature ensures a recording is not altered in any way.

### **Recording types**

You can set up call recording for extensions, trunks, conferences, and queues respectively.

• Extensions: Record all the calls of the specified extensions, including the internal calls and external calls.

#### 🚽 Note:

Paging/Intercom call and voicemail on the specified extension would not be recorded.

 Trunks: Record all the calls on the specified trunks, including inbound calls and outbound calls.

For example, for employees who use a dedicated trunk to deal with customer issues, the system only records all the calls on this trunk.

- Conferences: Record the conversation of all members who join the specified conference rooms.
- Queues: Record the calls based on the specified queues.

For example, an agent logs in to two queues (Service and Support), and call recording is enabled for Service. The system can record all the calls from Service, but not record the calls from Support.

### PNote:

The system automatically records a queue call or a conference call only when you activate recording for a queue or conference. For example, extension 1000 is an agent of a queue, you activate recording for extension 1000, but not activate recording for the queue. When extension 1000 answers a queue call, the call is not recorded.

## Recording prompts

By default, the system does not play any prompts when a call is being recorded.

To ensure that recordings are lawful and callers have given their consent, you can customize recording prompt for internal calls, inbound calls, and outbound calls respectively. The system plays the recording prompt before call recording begins.

## **Recording management**

- For users: The users can monitor and switch call recording status on IP phones and Linkus Clients.
- For administrator: The administrator can manage the recording files, and grant permission to other users.

## Set up Call Recording

This topic describes how to set up call recording for extensions, trunks, conferences, and queues.

## Set up call recording for extensions

The system records the internal calls and external calls on the selected extensions.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Recording.
- 2. Optional: Select the checkbox of Enable Recording of Internal Calls to automatically record the internal calls.
- 3. In the Record Extensions section, select the desired extensions from the Available box to the Selected box.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Set up call recording for trunks

The system automatically records the external calls on the selected trunks.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Recording.
- 2. In the Record Trunks section, select the desired trunks from the Available box to the Selected box.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

## Set up call recording for conferences

The system automatically records the calls on the selected conferences.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Recording.
- 2. In the Record Conferences section, select the desired conferences from the Available box to the Selected box.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

### Set up call recording for queues

The system automatically records the calls on the selected queues.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Recording.
- 2. In the Record Queues section, select the desired queues from the Available box to the Selected box.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

## Set up Recording Prompts

This topic describes how to set up recording prompts for internal calls, inbound calls, and outbound calls respectively.

### Set up recording prompt for internal calls

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt, upload a custom prompt or record a custom prompt for internal calls.

#### 🚽 Note:

The uploaded file should meet the audio file requirements.

- 2. Go to Call Features > Recording.
- 3. In the Internal Call Being Recorded Prompt drop-down list, select a prompt for internal calls.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Set up recording prompt for inbound calls

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt, upload a custom prompt or record a custom prompt for inbound calls.

#### 🚽 Note:

The uploaded file should meet the audio file requirements.

- 2. Go to Call Features > Recording.
- 3. In the Inbound Call Being Recorded Prompt drop-down list, select a prompt for inbound calls.

4. Click Save and Apply.

### Set up recording prompt for outbound calls

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt, upload a custom prompt or record a custom prompt for outbound calls.

#### - Note:

The uploaded file should meet the audio file requirements.

- 2. Go to Call Features > Recording.
- 3. In the Outbound Call Being Recorded Prompt drop-down list, select a prompt for outbound calls.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Allow Users to Switch Call Recording Status

By default, if you set up call recording for extensions, trunks, conferences, or queues, the specified calls would be recorded as soon as they are established, and all the users can NOT switch call recording status. To avoid sensitive information being recorded or to allow users to start recording their calls when necessary, you can grant permissions to specific users, so that they can start, pause, or resume recording during a call.

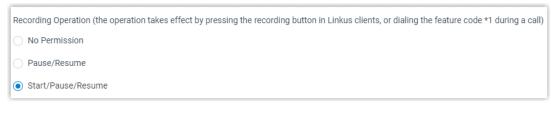
### Restrictions

#### 🚽 Note:

Extension users can NOT switch the recording status during a conference call, even if you have granted them permission.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit a desired extension.
- 2. Click Features tab.
- 3. In the Call Recording section, grant call recording permission to the extension user.
  - a. In the Recording Operation section, grant recording operation permission to the extension user.



• Pause/Resume: Allow users to pause or resume the recording during a call that is specified to be recorded.

• Start/Pause/Resume: Allow users to start, pause, or resume the recording during any calls (except conference calls), be the calls specified to be recorded or not.

## 🕜 Tip:

To specify the calls to be recorded, see Set up Call Recording.

- b. Optional: To allow the extension user to view recordings, select the checkbox of Allow the extension to view recordings.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

The user can switch call recording status in the following ways:

- Press the recording button on Linkus Clients
- Dial a feature code

### 📑 Note:

The default feature code for switching call recording status is \*1. You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal (Path: Call Features > Feature Code > Recording > Switch Extension's Recording Status).

## Monitor Call Recording Status on an IP phone

This topic describes how to set up a BLF key on an IP phone to monitor the call recording status.

## **Background information**

For the users who want to know whether the call recording state is switched successfully or not, you can set a BLF key for each user by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

### Pote:

Users can also set function keys on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

## Procedure

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor agent status.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for a specific extension user, click  $\swarrow$  beside the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for multiple extensions, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, and click Edit.

- b. Click the Function Keys tab.
- c. Configure function keys.

### - Note:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

- Type: Select BLF.
- Value: Enter the code (\*1) followed by extension number (for example \*11000).
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- d. Click Save.
- 2. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.
- 3. If the extension has been associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension.

## Result

The BLF key shows the real-time status of call recording.

- Red: An active call of the monitored extension is being recorded.
- Green: The monitored extension is not in a call or the call recording is paused.
- Off: The BLF key does not subscribe the recording status of this extension. Check if your configurations are correct.

### PNote:

The key LED status may vary by phone models.

## Manage Call Recording Files

This topic describes how to manage call recording files, including searching, playing, downloading, or deleting the recording files.

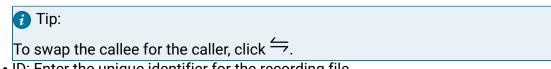
## Search recording files

You can search the recording files by time, caller number, callee number, or call ID.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Recording Files.
- 2. Set the search criteria.
  - Time: Set the start date and the end date.

To specify a time period, click select time to set the start time and the end time.

- Call From: Set the caller's number or name.
- Call To: Set the callee's number or name.



• ID: Enter the unique identifier for the recording file.

The search results are displayed in the list.

## Play recording files

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Recording Files.
- 2. Click 🕑 beside the recording to which you want to listen.
  - Play on Web: Click 🕑 to play the call recording on the web directly.
  - Play to Extension: Play the call recording on the phone.
    - a. Select an extension, and click Play.

The system places a call to the extension.

b. Pick up the call to listen to the call recording on the phone.

## Download recording files

### PNote:

You can download a maximum of 600 MB recording files or a maximum of 100 recording files at a time. The recordings that exceed the limit will not be downloaded.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Recording Files.
- 2. To download a recording file, click  $\bigcirc$  beside a recording log.
- 3. To download multiple recording files, do the following:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of recording files that you want to download.
  - b. Click Download Recording(s).

## Delete recording files

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Recording Files.
- 2. Delete a recording file, or delete recording files in bulk.
  - Delete a recording: Select the recording file that you want to delete, click 🔟 and OK.
  - Delete recordings in bulk: Select the checkboxes of the recording files that you want to delete, click Delete and OK.

# Grant Manage Permission of Recording Files

By default, only the super administrator has permission to manage the call recording files. This topic describes how to grant manage permission to extension users.

## **Background information**

As a super administrator, you can grant manage permission to a role, and assign the role to extension users. When the user logs in to the web client, he/she can manage recording files.

## Procedure

- 1. Set up a user role.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Role, edit a role.
  - b. In the Reports and Recordings section, specify the manageable extensions and accessible permissions of recordings files for the role.
    - Manage Extensions: Specify the manageable extension range.
    - Recording Files Operation Permission: Specify the accessible permission, including Play, Download, and Delete.
  - c. click Save.
- 2. Assign a role to a user.
  - a. Go to Extension, edit the extension to which you want to grant recording permission.
  - b. In the User Information section, select the role from the User Role drop-down list.
  - c. Click Save and Apply.

## **Restrict Users from Viewing Recording Files**

By default, all the users have access to viewing their own recording files. For security reasons, you can restrict specific users from view recording files.

## Restrictions

The feature works for Linkus Web Client and Linkus Mobile Client:

- Linkus Web Client: Version 84.5.0.86 or later
- Linkus iOS Client: Version 4.4.11 or later.
- Linkus Android Client: Version 4.4.13 or later.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit a desired extension.
- 2. Click Features tab.

- 3. In the Call Recording section, unselect the checkbox of Allow the extension to view recordings.
- 4. Click Save.

## Result

The extension user can not view recording files on Linkus Web Client and Linkus Mobile Client.

# **Ring Group**

## **Ring Group Overview**

Ring group is a feature to share the distribution of incoming calls among employees. This topic describes what is ring group, ring strategy, and failover destination.

## What is ring group

Ring group allows you to merge multiple extension numbers into a virtual number. The customers can dial the virtual number, and the calls ring through all the members to make sure that no call goes unanswered. It is often used to efficiently distribute calls to specific departments such as Sales, Support, and Accounting.

## **Ring strategy**

Ring group can ring members in two ways:

• Ring all simultaneously: When receiving an incoming call, the system rings all the available members at the same time and stops ringing when any member in the group picks up the call. If no one answers the call within the ring time, the system routes the call to the failover destination.

You can set this option for teams such as Support or Customer Service, where all members are equally responsible for answering incoming calls.

• Ring sequentially: When receiving an incoming call, the system rings the first available member in the list firstly. If no answer within the ring time, the system rings the next available member until the last one. If no one answers the call, the system routes the call to the failover destination.

You can set this option for receptionist who holds the primary responsibility for answering the phone while other individuals acting as backups.

#### Failover destination

When a call comes in to the ring group, and no one is available to answer the call, you can end the call or route the call to the following destinations:

- Hang Up
- Extension
- Extension Voicemail
- Group Voicemail
- IVR
- Ring Group
- Queue
- External Number
- Play Prompt and Exit

# Create a Ring Group

This topic describes how to create a ring group.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Ring Group, click Add.
- 2. Configure the ring group.
  - Number: Enter a virtual number for callers to access the group.
    - The default ring group <u>number range</u> is from 6300 to 6399.
  - Name: Enter a group name to help you identify it.
  - Ring Strategy: Select a ring method to distribute calls to members.
    - Ring All: Ring all available extensions simultaneously.
    - Ring Sequentially: Ring all available extensions sequentially.
  - Ring Group Alert Info: Optional. Set an "alert info text" to add to Alert-info header in INVITE request for ring group calls.

When receiving a ring group call, the phone will inspect "Alert-Info" header to determine which ring tone it should use for ringing.

- Ring Timeout (s): Set a number of seconds that the system waits before ringing next member or routing the call to Failover Destination.
- Members: Select the desired extensions from the Available box to the Selected box.
- Failover Destination: Select a destination to route the call when no member answers the call within ring time.
  - Hang up: End the current call.
  - Extension: Route the call to the specified extension.
  - Extension Voicemail: Route the call to voicemail box of the specified extension.
  - Group Voicemail: Route the call to voicemail box of a queue, a ring group, or a custom group.
  - IVR: Route the call to the specified IVR.
  - Ring Group: Route the call to another ring group.
  - Queue: Route the call to the specified queue.
  - External Number: Route the call to an external number.
  - $\circ$  Play Prompt and Exit: Play a custom prompt, and then hang up the call.

3. Click Save and Apply.

### What to do next

Set up an inbound route, and specify the destination to the queue.

## Manage Ring Groups

This topic describes how to edit a ring group, and delete ring groups.

## Edit a ring group

You can edit the group settings, including adding or removing a member, or change the ring strategy.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Ring Group.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the ring group that you want to edit.
- 3. Change the ring group settings according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete ring groups

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Ring Group.
- 2. To delete a ring group, click  $\stackrel{f}{\square}$  beside the ring group that you want to delete.
- 3. To delete ring groups in bulk, select the checkboxes of the ring groups that you want to delete, click Delete.
- 4. Click OK and Apply.

# Call Queue

## Call Queue Overview

Call queue is a method of handling large calls and provides callers with engaging holding experiences. This topic describes what is call queue, queue compositions, queue preference, and call center service.

### What is call queue

A queue is like a virtual waiting room, in which callers wait in line to talk with the available agent. When the customer calls in PBX and reaches the queue, he/she can hear the hold music and announcement while the queue distributing the call to the available agents.

## Queue components

A queue call consists of the following parts:

- Callers: Customers who place calls to the queue.
- Agents: Members who answer the queue calls (extensions or users who log in as agents)
  - Static agent: The agent is always a member of the queue and cannot log out.
  - Dynamic agent: The agent can log in to or log out of a queue at any time.
- Announcement: Announcements played to callers and agents, including agent ID announcement, position announcement, and periodic announcement.
- Music on Hold: Music or advertisements played to callers while waiting in the queue.
- Ring Strategy: A strategy for how to distribute calls to agents.
- Failover destination: A destination to which calls will be routed in the following scenarios.
  - $\circ$  The number of callers that wait in a queue reaches the Maximum Callers In Queue.
  - The time that callers wait reaches the Maximum Waiting Time.
  - No agents in queue and the caller is pulled out of a queue.

## **Call Center service**

Call Center service is an additional service that drives faster call resolution and real-time call center monitoring, reporting, and management. It provides a powerful call center console, including a customizable Wallboard for proactive tracking of 16 key performance metrics, and a switchboard-type Queue Panel for real-time monitoring & control of queue activities, insightful call center reports, SLA and more.

For more information on call center service, see Call Center Console User Guide.

PNote:

• For call center service, contact Yeastar support.

## Queue preference

Queue preference settings are available, including queue capacity, service level agreement, announcement, and satisfaction survey.

- Queue capacity
  - Define the maximum number of calls to wait in the queue.
  - Whether to pull the caller out of queue when no agents available in the queue.
  - Whether to allow the caller to join when no agents in the queue.
- Queue callback

To save callers' time while keeping their positions in the queue, you can enable callback feature for the queue, and decide whether callers can press a digit or wait till timeout to request a callback.

Service Level Agreement (SLA)

With call center service activated, you can use SLA to define a certain level of service in a call center scenario, such as answering 80% of calls within 20 seconds.

#### Announcement

- Caller announcement, including the agent ID announcement and position announcement.
- Periodic announcement
- Satisfaction survey

In a call center scenario, you can make a satisfaction survey to collect customer feedback.

## Create a Queue

You can create and design queues to allow callers to talk with agents according to your business. This topic describes how to create a queue.

### Prerequisites

- Customize a <u>voice prompt</u> as agent announcement.
- Configure the <u>Music on Hold</u> for the queue.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue, click Add.
- 2. In the Basic page, configure the basic settings for the queue and agent settings.
  - a. In the Basic section, configure the following settings:
    - Number: Enter a virtual number for callers to access the queue.

The default queue <u>number range</u> is from 6400 to 6499.

- Name: Enter a queue name to help you identify it.
- Ring Strategy: Select a ring method to distribute calls to agents.
  - Ring All: Ring all available agents simultaneously until someone answers.
  - Least Recent: Ring the available agent that was least recently called.
  - Fewest Calls: Ring the available agent with the fewest completed calls.
  - Random: Ring the agents randomly.
  - Rrmemory: Round robin with memory.

The system remembers the last agent it tried and rings the next agent.

- Linear: Ring the available agent in specific order.
  - If there are only static agents in the queue, the system rings agents in the order specified in the agents list.
  - If there are only dynamic agents in the queue, the system rings agents in the order that agents have logged in.
  - If there are both static agents and dynamic agents in the queue, the system rings agents in the order that agents have logged in.
- Music On Hold: Select a prompt to play to callers waiting for an available agent.
- Maximum Waiting Time(s): Set a number of seconds that the caller can wait for an available agent.
- Failover Destination: Select a destination to route the call when the call is not answered by any agent.
  - Hang up: End the current call.
  - Extension: Route the call to the specified extension.
  - Extension Voicemail: Route the call to voicemail box of the specified extension.
  - Group Voicemail: Route the call to voicemail box of a queue, a ring group, or a custom group.
  - IVR: Route the call to the specified IVR.
  - Ring Group: Route the call to another ring group.
  - Queue: Route the call to the specified queue.
  - External Number: Route the call to an external number.
  - $\circ$  Play Prompt and Exit: Play a custom prompt, and then hang up the call.
- b. In the Agent Options section, configure the following settings.
  - Agent Timeout(s): Set a number of seconds that the system rings an agent's phone.
  - Retry Interval(s): Set a number of seconds to wait before ringing the next available agent when the last available agent has been ringed and timed out.
  - Wrap-up Time(s): Set a number of seconds for agents to complete postcall processing after finishing a call.

The next call will come after this period following the ring strategy.

- Agent Announcement: Select a prompt to play to agent prior to bridging in the caller.
- Ring In Use: Set whether to distribute additional queue calls to the agents who are already in calls.
- 3. Click the Members tab, set agents for the queue.
  - Dynamic Agents: Select the dynamic agents that can log in to or log out of a queue at any time.



The queue distributes calls to the dynamic agents only when they log in to the queue and unpause the queue calls.

• Static Agents: Select the static agents that are always stay in the queue.

#### - Note:

Static agents do not need to "log in" to the queue, and cannot "log out" of the queue.

4. Click Preferences tab to customize the queue according to your needs.

For more information of the preference settings, see <u>Queue Preferences</u>.

5. Click Save and Apply.

### What to do next

<u>Set up an inbound route</u>, and specify a destination to the queue.

## Manage Agent Status by Dialing a Feature Code

This topic describes how to manage agent status by dialing a feature code.

#### Background information

The PBX defines feature codes that allow the agents to switch their status. You can change, enable, or disable the feature code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Queue.

The default feature codes for switching agent:

- Log in/Log out: \*7
- Pause/Unpause: \*07

#### Log in to a queue

Only dynamic agents can log in to a queue; static agents are always in the queue.

For example, a dynamic agent dials \*76400 to log in to queue 6400.

### Log out of a queue

Only dynamic agents can log out of a queue; static agents are always in the queue.

For example, a dynamic agent 1000 dials \*76400 to log out of queue 6400.

#### Pause receiving queue calls

Both static agents and dynamic agents can pause the queue calls when they are away from desk. The system will not distribute queue calls to the agents in "Paused" status.

For example, an agent 1000 dials **\***076400 to pause calls from queue 6400.

#### Unpause receiving queue calls

Both static agents and dynamic agents can unpause queue calls when they are ready to take calls.

For example, an agent 1000 dials **\***076400 to unpause calls from queue 6400.

#### **Related information**

Monitor and Switch Agent Status on an IP Phone

### Monitor and Switch Agent Status on an IP Phone

This topic describes how to set up function keys on agents' phones to monitor and switch agent status.

#### **Background information**

There are two ways to monitor and switch agent status:

• Function key: For agents who want to monitor their own status in a specific queue on their phones, you can set a function key for each agent by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### PNote:

Agents can also set function keys on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

 Queue Panel: Agents can monitor and switch their status on queue panel. For more information, see <u>Call Center Console User Guide</u>.

#### Procedure

Assume that an agent Sunmy wants to monitor and switch her status in the "Support" queue on IP phone.

You can set two function keys for the agent Sunmy as follows:

- 1. Assign function keys for the agent.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the agent's extension.
  - b. Click the Function Keys tab.
  - c. Configure function keys.

#### 🚽 Note:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an agent exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

• Type: Select a key type.

- Select Agent Login/Logout for logging in to or logging out of a queue.
- Select Agent Pause/Unpause for pausing or unpausing receiving queue calls.
- Value: Select the "Support" queue that the agent sits in.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.

#### d. Click Save.

< esence	Voicemail	Features	Advanced	Security	Linkus Clients	Phone	Functio	n Keys
Function Key	Туре		Value	l	_abel		Operations	Sort
Key 1	Agent Log	gin/Logout 🗸 🗸	Support	~	Login/Logout		団	≡
Key 2	Agent Pau	ise/Unpause 🗸	Support	~	Pause/Unpause		包	=

- 2. If the agent hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the agent.
- If the agent has been associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
   a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to the agent.

#### Result

The LED status of function keys shows the agent's status in real time.

#### Note:

The key LED status may vary by phone models.

Func- tion key	LED status	Description
Log in/Log out	Green	The monitored agent has logged in to the queue and un- paused queue calls.
		The agent can press the Log in/Log out function key to log out of the queue.
	Red	The monitored agent has logged out of the queue.
		The agent can press the Log in/Log out function key to log in to the queue.

Func- tion key	LED status	Description
	Off	The function key does not subscribe the agent's status. Check if your configurations are correct or if the agent's ex- tension is registered.
Pause/un- pause	Green	The monitored agent has logged in to the queue and un- paused queue calls.
	The agent can press the Pause/Unpause function key to pause receiving queue calls.	
	Flashing	The monitored agent has paused receiving queue calls.
Red Off	The agent can press the Pause/Unpause function key to re- sume receiving queue calls.	
	Off	The function key does not subscribe the agent's status. Check if your configurations are correct or if the agent's ex- tension is registered.

# Manage Call Queues

You can not change the queue number after setting up a queue. This topic describes how to edit a queue, and delete queues.

### Edit a queue

You can manage the agents, change the ring strategy, or other queue settings.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the queue that you want to edit.
- 3. Change the queue settings according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### **Delete queues**

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Queue.
- 2. To delete a queue, do the followings:
  - a. Click 🛄 beside the queue that you want to delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.
- 3. To delete queues in bulk, do the followings:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the queues that you want to delete, click Delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.

# **Queue Preferences**

This topic describes the queue preference settings, including distinctive ring tone, queue capacity, queue callback, service level agreement, announcement, and satisfaction survey.

### Distinctive ring tone

Setting	Description
Queue Alert Info	Set an "alert info text" to add to Alert-info header in INVITE request for queue calls.
	When receiving a queue call, the phone will in- spect "Alert-Info" header to determine which ring tone it should use for ringing.

### Queue capacity

Setting	Description
Maximum Callers in Queue	The maximum number of callers that can wait in the queue.
	The default value is 0 (unlimited).
	Note: When the number of callers waiting in queue reaches the Maximum Callers In Queue, the sys- tem routes the additional calls to Failover Desti- nation.
Leave Empty	Pull the caller out of a queue when no agent is in the queue, and forward the call to the Failover Destination.
Join Empty	Allow callers to join a queue when there is no agent in the queue.

### Callback

Setting	Description
Request Callback Method	Define how a caller can request a callback when the queue is busy.
Digit to press	Define what digit a caller can press to request a callback when the queue is busy.

Setting	Description
	Note: The option is available only when Request Call- back Method is set to Triggered by caller input.
Timeout (s)	Define the amount of time (in seconds) that a caller can wait in the queue. After the timeout, the system will play the callback option to the caller automatically.
	Note: The option is available only when Request Call- back Method is set to Auto triggered after the timeout.
Callback Outbound Prefix	Define the prefix of outbound route, which will be used to call the callback number.
	F Note: All agents in this queue must have permission to use this outbound route, or the callback would fail.

# Service level agreement

Setting	Description
SLA Time(s)	The maximum amount of time (in seconds) that an agent needs to answer an incoming call.
	The default SLA time is 60 seconds.
Evaluation Interval(min)	The time interval to compare the queue's SLA per- formance against the alarm threshold so the sys- tem can send a notification email accordingly.
Alarm Threshold(%)	The service level threshold for the queue.
	The default alarm threshold is 80%.

### Announcement

Setting	Description
Announcement	

Setting	Description
Join Announcement	The announcement played to callers before they join the queue.
Agent ID Announcement	The announcement played to callers to prompt the agent ID.
	<ul> <li>Default: The system plays the prompt "{extension_number} will be connected. Please wait".</li> <li>Custom prompt: If you choose your custom prompt, the system will play {extension_number} + your custom prompt.</li> </ul>
Play "Thank You for Your Pa- tience" Prompt	Play the prompt "Thank You for Your Patience" to callers periodically while the caller is waiting in a queue.
Call Position Announcement	
Announce Position	Announce position of caller in the queue.
Announce Hold Time	Announce the hold time to the caller periodically based on Frequency.
Frequency(s)	The time interval to announce queue position and estimated hold time to the caller.
Queue Announcements	
Prompt	The announcement played to callers periodically.
Frequency(s)	The time interval to play the announcements.

# Satisfaction survey

Setting	Description
Satisfaction Survey Prompt	The prompt played to caller to ask the caller to rate their satisfaction scale after the agent hangs up.
	The default prompt is "Please rate your satisfac- tion with our service, press 1 for satisfied, press 2 for dissatisfied. Thank you.". "Thanks for your call- ing, goodbye." is prompted after the caller presses a key.

### Key Press Event

Setting	Description
Кеу	The caller can press the key to enter the specific destination when waiting in queue.
	Generally, set a Periodic Announcements to guide the callers to press the key.
Key Destination	The destination to route the call when the caller presses a key.
	<ul> <li>Hang up: End the current call.</li> <li>Extension: Route the call to the specified extension.</li> <li>Extension Voicemail: Route the call to voicemail box of the specified extension.</li> <li>Group Voicemail: Route the call to group voicemail box of a queue, a ring group, or a custom group.</li> <li>IVR: Route the call to the specified IVR.</li> <li>Ring Group: Route the call to another ring group.</li> <li>Queue: Route the call to the specified ring group.</li> <li>External Number: Route the call to an external number.</li> <li>Play Prompt and Exit: Play a custom prompt, and then hang up the call.</li> </ul>

# Feature Code

# **Configure Feature Codes**

Feature codes are a set of digits that the extension user can dial to activate a specific feature. This topic describes how to configure feature codes.

### **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides various feature codes for users to activate or deactivate a specific feature. You can change, enable, or disable the code, and change the digit timeout for entering the feature code.

For more information about feature code, see <u>Feature Code Reference</u>.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. In the Feature Code Digit Timeout (ms) field, enter a number of seconds for inputting next digit.

The digit timeout is the time between consecutive key presses on the phone's keypad. 3. Decide whether to enable or disable a feature code.

- Enable a feature code: Select the checkbox of the specific feature code.
- Disable a feature code: Unselect the checkbox of the specific feature code.
- 4. Optional: Change the code according to your needs.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

### Feature Code Reference

This topic describes the list of default feature codes.

#### Recording

Name	Default Code	Usage
Switch Extension's Recording Status	*1	<ul> <li>An extension user with Pause/Resume recording operation permission dials *1 to pause or resume recording during a call that is specified to be recorded.</li> <li>An extension user with Start/Pause/Resume recording operation permission dials *1 to start, pause, or resume recording during any calls (except conference calls), be the calls specified to be recorded or not.</li> </ul>

### Call Flip

Name	Default Code	Usage
Call Flip	*01	Dial *01 to flip an active call from current de- vice to another device.

#### Voicemail

Name	Default code	Usage
Check Voice- mail/Subscribe Voicemail Status	*2	<ul> <li>To check the voicemail of extension 1000, dial *21000.</li> </ul>

Name	Default code	Usage
		<ul> <li>To check the group voicemail of queue 6400, dial *26400.</li> </ul>
Leave a Voicemail for Extension/Group Voicemail	*12	<ul> <li>To leave a voicemail message for extension 1000, dial *121000.</li> <li>To leave a voicemail message for queue 6400, dial *126400.</li> </ul>

### Call Transfer

Name	Default code	Usage
Attended Trans- fer	*3	Press *31000 to attended transfer a call to extension 1000.
Blind Transfer	*03	Press *031000 to blind transfer a call to extension 1000.

## Call Forwarding

Name	Default code	Usage
Enable "Forward All Calls"	*31	<ul> <li>Dial *31 to forward all calls to one's own voicemail.</li> <li>Dial *311000 to forward all calls to extension 1000.</li> </ul>
Disable "Forward All Calls"	*031	<ul> <li>Dial *031 to disable the automatic call for- warding of all calls.</li> </ul>
Enable "Forward When Busy"	*32	<ul> <li>Dial *32 to forward calls to one's own voicemail when busy.</li> <li>Dial *321000 to forward calls to extension 1000 when busy.</li> </ul>
Disable "Forward When Busy"	*032	• Dial *032 to disable the automatic call for- warding when busy.
Enable "Forward No Answer"	*33	<ul> <li>Dial *33 to forward the no-answered calls to one's own voicemail.</li> <li>Dial *331000 to forward the no-answered calls to extension 1000.</li> </ul>
Disable "Forward No Answer"	*033	• Dial *033 to disable the automatic call for- warding of no-answered calls.

# Call Pickup

Name	Default code	Usage
Group Call Pick- up	*4	Dial *4 to pick up the ringing call for a group member.
Extension Pick- up	*04	Dial *041000 to pick up the ringing call for extension 1000.

## Call Parking

Name	Default code	Usage
Call Parking	*5	Dial *5 during a call to park a call.
Directed Call Parking	*05	Dial *056000 during a call to park a call to parking number 6000.

### Intercom

Name	Default code	Usage
Intercom	*6	Dial *61001 to place an intercom call to extension 1001.

### Queue

Name	Default code	Usage
Log in/Log out	*7	A dynamic agent dials *76400 to log in to or log out of queue 6400.
Pause/Unpause	*07	A dynamic agent dials *076400 to pause or un- pause calls from queue 6400.

# Call Monitoring

Name	Default code	Usage
Listen	*51	An authorized user dials *511001 to listen to the call of extension 1001 in real time.
		The authorized user can NOT talk with both par- ties.
Whisper	*52	An authorized user dials *521001 to listen to the call of extension 1001 in real time.

Name	Default code	Usage
		The authorized user can talk with extension 1001 without being heard by the other party.
Barge-in	*53	An authorized user dials *531001 to listen to the call of extension 1001 in real time.
		The authorized user can talk with both parties.

# Speed Dial

Name	Default code	Usage
Speed Dial Prefix		Specify a number to speed dial code 1, dial *891 to dial the specified number.

### **Presence Status**

Name	Default code	Usage		
Available	*91	Dial *91 to switch one's own presence status to Available.		
Away	*92	Dial *92 to switch one's own presence status to Away.		
Do Not Disturb	*93	Dial *93 to switch one's own presence status to Do Not Disturb.		
Lunch Break	*94	Dial *94 to switch one's own presence status to Lunch Break.		
Business Trip	*95	Dial *95 to switch one's own presence status to Business Trip.		
Off Work	*96	Dial *96 to switch one's own presence status to Off Work.		

## Switch Business Hours and Holidays Status

Name	Default code	Usage
Keep the Business Hours Status or the Time Condition after Switching	/	If enabled, keep the status after users switched the PBX's Business Hours status or dialed a fea- ture code to switch the time condition of an in- bound route.

Name	Default code	Usage
Switch Global Business Hours and Holidays Sta- tus	*99	Dial *99 to override time condition for Global Business Hours and Holidays.
Time Condition Switch- ing Prefix	*8	Dial a feature code starting with *8 to switch the time condition of inbound routes that are based on Custom Business Hours or Custom Time Pe- riods.

# Conference

### **Conference Overview**

Conference calls increase employee efficiency and productivity, and provide a more cost-effective way to hold meetings. This topic describes what is conference call, and conference member.

### What is conference call

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports dial-in conference that allows multiple participants, including internal users and external users, to start a conference call, and talk to each other anywhere and anytime.

### Conference member

- Moderator: The conference moderator is a participant who can lock the conference call and manage the participants in a conference call.
- Participant: The conference member who can talk with each other and adjust the volume.

## Create a Conference Room

To make a conference call, you should create a conference room on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition first. This topic describes how to create a conference room.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Conference, click Add.
- 2. Set up the conference room.
  - Number: Enter a room number for callers to dial into the conference call.
  - Name: Enter a room name to help you identify it.

- Participant Password: Optional. The participants need to enter the password to join conference call.
- Moderator Password: Optional. The participants can enter the password to join conference call as moderators.
- Voice Prompt: Select a prompt to announce to the participants when someone joins or exits from the conference call.
  - Default: Prompt a tone when participant joins or exits from conference call.
  - Extension: Prompt the extension number of the participant when the participant joins or exits from conference call.
- Wait for Moderator: Whether to forbid the participants to talk with each other till the moderator joins the conference call.
- Allow Extension Participants to Invite: Whether to allow the extension participants to invite users to join the conference.
- Moderator(s): Select the moderators.

The moderators can join the conference calls without any password.

3. Click Save and Apply.

### What to do next

If the external participants want to join conference, you need to set an <u>inbound route</u> and specify the Destination to Conference.

# Join a Conference Call

Both the PBX extension users and the external users can join the conference. This topic describes how to join a conference call.

### Join as a conference participant

- 1. Dial the conference room number.
- 2. If participant password is required, enter the participant password.

If you are the first participant in the conference call, the system plays a <u>hold music</u> to you.

### Join as a conference moderator

For moderators

If you are a moderator specified by administrator, you can dial the conference room number to join the conference call.

If you are the first participant in the conference call, the system plays a <u>hold</u> <u>music</u> to you.

For participants who want to join conference as moderators

If you are not a moderator, and the moderator password is set for the conference room, you can also join conference call as a moderator

- 1. Dial the conference room number.
- 2. Enter the moderator password.

If you are the first participant in the conference call, the system plays a <u>hold music</u> to you.

## Invite Users to a Conference Call

By default, only the conference moderators can invite users to the conference. This topic describes how to allow participants to invite users and how to invite users to a conference call.

Allow participants to invite users

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Conference, edit the desired conference.
- 2. Select the checkbox of Allow Extension Participants to Invite.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

Invite users to a conference call

1. During a conference call, press the # key.

You are forced out of the conference call temporarily.

2. Dial the number that you want to invite.

After the invited user joins or rejects the conference call, you will return to the conference call.

## Manage Conference Rooms

This topic describes how to edit conference room settings and delete conference rooms.

### Edit a conference room

#### Note:

You can not change the conference room number after setting up a conference room.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Conference.
- 2. Click deside the conference room that you want to edit.
- 3. Change the conference room settings according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete conference rooms

You can delete a conference room, or delete conference rooms in bulk.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Conference.
- 2. To delete a conference room, do the following:
  - a. Click ៉ beside the conference room that you want to delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.
- 3. Delete conference rooms in bulk, do the following:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the conference rooms that you want to delete, click Delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.

# Conference Voice Menu

This topic describes the conference voice menu.

During the conference call, the participants can manage the conference by pressing \* key on their phones to access voice menu for conference room.

The following table shows the conference voice menu.

Key	Description	Moderator	Participant
1	Mute or unmute yourself.	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
2	Lock or unlock the conference.	$\checkmark$	×
3	Eject the last user.	$\checkmark$	×
4	Decrease the conference volume.	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
6	Increase the conference volume.	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
7	Decrease your volume.	$\checkmark$	√
8	Exit the voice menu.	$\checkmark$	√
9	Increase your volume.	√	√

# Speed Dial

# Speed Dial Overview

Speed dial is often the easiest way to quickly connect with people and extensions that you dial frequently. This topic describes what is speed dial, and how to use speed dial.

### What is speed dial

Speed dial is a feature that allows you to assign a speed dial code to a number that the users frequently dial. When dialing long strings of overseas numbers, the users do not have to remember or enter long telephone numbers on their phones.

### How to use speed dial

You can create speed dial with a Prefix in front of the Speed Dial Number to avoid interference with your extensions.

- Speed Dial Number: The shorter number you assign to the phone number.
- Prefix: The code to access the speed dial feature. The default prefix is \*89.

The users can dial {prefix}+{speed\_dial\_number} to call an assigned phone number. For example, assign 1 to phone number 5503302, dial \*891 to place a call to 5503302.

# Set up Speed Dial Prefix

You need to dial the speed dial code with a prefix. The prefix is used to access the speed dial feature, and avoid interference with the extensions. This topic describes how to set up speed dial prefix.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Speed Dial.
- 2. Click Prefix.
- 3. In the Speed Dial Prefix field, enter a prefix according to your needs..

The default speed dial prefix is \*89.

4. Click Save and Apply.

### 👔 Tip:

To disable the speed dial prefix, go to Call Features > Feature code > Speed Dial > Speed Dial Prefix.

# Add a Speed Dial Number

This topic describes how to add a speed dial number.

### **Background information**

• Assume that you have an outbound route that allows you to dial an external number 15990234988, and you want to dial speed number 111 to reach an external number 15990234988 through the route.

• The speed dial prefix is enabled and set to \*89.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Speed Dial, click Add.
- 2. In the Speed Dial Number field, enter 111.
- 3. In the Phone Number field, enter 15990234988.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Result

Dial \*89111 on your phone to call the external number 15990234988.

## Manage Speed Dial Numbers

This topic describes how to edit a speed dial number, or delete speed dial numbers.

### Edit a speed dial number

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Speed Dial.
- 2. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the speed dial entry that you want to edit.
- 3. Change the Speed Dial Number or Phone Number according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete speed dial numbers

You can delete a speed dial entry, or delete speed dial entries in bulk.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Speed Dial.
- 2. To delete a speed dial number, do the following:
  - a. Click ៉ beside the speed dial entry that you want to delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.
- 3. To delete speed dial numbers in bulk, do the following:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the speed dial entries that you want to delete, click Delete.
  - b. Click OK and Apply.

# Export and Import Speed Dial Numbers

The speed dial numbers configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired speed dial numbers in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import speed dial numbers.

### Export speed dial numbers

You can export all speed dial numbers to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Speed Dial.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Speed Dial Number Parameters</u>.

#### Import speed dial numbers

We recommend that you export speed dial numbers to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Speed Dial Number Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Speed Dial.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The speed dial numbers in the CSV file will be displayed in the Speed Dial list.

# **Call Transfer**

### **Call Transfer Overview**

Call transfer is an in-call feature that allows the users to transfer current calls from their phones to another phone number or extension. This topic describes the call transfer types, and call transfer options.

#### Call transfer types

There are two scenarios to transfer a call:

- Attended Transfer: An attended transfer, also called consult transfer or warm transfer, allows the transferor to consult with the transfer recipient before transferring a call, such as the assistant can confirm with the executive whether he is free to answer the call before transferring the call.
- Blind Transfer: A blind transfer, also called cold transfer, allows the transferor to transfer a call to transfer recipient immediately without consultative communication, such as transfer a call to ring group.

### Call transfer options

The following options are available for you to set up call transfer:

• Feature code: Extension users can use the call transfer code to transfer a call.

The default call transfer code:

- Attended Transfer: \*3
- Blind Transfer: \*03
- Digit Timeout(s): The timeout for transferor to enter the transfer recipient's number after dialing the feature code. The time interval between each digit should be within the digit timeout.
- Attended Transfer Timeout(s): The ring timeout for transfer recipient to take the transferring call.

If the transfer recipient does not answer the transferring call within the timeout, the system sends the call back to transferor.

# Set up Call Transfer

This topic describes how to set up call transfer.

### Set up attended transfer

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature code > Call Transfer.
- 2. Select the checkbox of Attended Transfer to enable the attended transfer feature.

If unselected, the extension users can not perform attended transfer by dialing the feature code.

- 3. Enter a code number according to your needs.
- 4. In the Digit Timeout(s) drop-down list, select a timeout for entering transfer recipient's number after you hear a dial tone.
- 5. In the Attended Transfer Timeout(s) field, enter a number of seconds for transfer recipient to take the transferring call.
- 6. Click Save and Apply.

Set up blind transfer

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature code > Call Transfer.

2. Select the checkbox of Blind Transfer to enable the blind transfer feature.

If unselected, the extension users can not perform blind transfer by dialing the feature code.

- 3. Enter a code number according to your needs.
- 4. In the Digit Timeout(s) drop-down list, select a timeout for entering transfer recipient's number after you hear a dial tone.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

## Perform an Attended Transfer

If you want to make sure someone is ready to take a transferred call or you need to explain something to the transfer recipient, you can perform an attended transfer. This topic describes how to perform an attended transfer.

### Procedure

1. During a call, press the feature code of attended transfer (default \*3).

The original call is placed on hold, and the system prompts "transfer" and the dial tone.

- 2. Dial the phone number of the contact where you want the call to be transferred.
- 3. Wait for the call to be answered.

When the call is answered, talk to the transfer recipient.

4. Hang up the call directly to complete the call transfer.

The original caller and the transfer recipient are connected.

# Perform a Blind Transfer

If you do not need any interaction with the user who receives the call, you can perform a blind transfer. This topic describes how to perform a blind transfer.

### Procedure

1. During a call, press the feature code of blind transfer (default \*03).

The original call is placed on hold, and the system prompts "transfer" and the dial tone.

2. Dial the phone number of the contact where you want the call to be transferred.

The call ends automatically, and the transfer recipient's phone rings.

A new call between original caller and transfer recipient is established after transfer recipient answers.

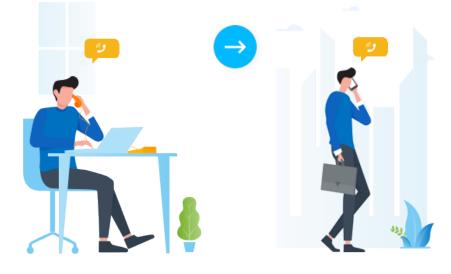
# Call Flip

## **Call Flip Overview**

Call Flip feature allows users to flip their ongoing calls from current device to another (with their extensions registered), without any interruption to the conversation.

### Scenario

Assume that a sales representative is in a call with a customer on the desk phone, but has to get out of the office. In this case, the sales representative can flip the call to his mobile phone, keeping talking without customer knowing the switchover.



### Methods of Call Flip

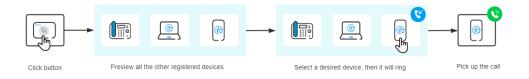
Extension users can flip an active call in the following ways:

- Flip an active call by clicking 'Call Flip' button
- Flip an active call by dialing 'Call Flip' feature code

Flip an active call by clicking 'Call Flip' button

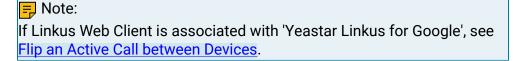
With a simple click of the Call Flip button, users can preview all the other devices where their extensions are registered, and select a device to flip the call.

We provide a flowchart to help you understand the workflow:



This method is supported on the following endpoints:

- Linkus Mobile Client
  - For more information, see How to flip an active call between devices?
- Linkus Web Client For more information, see <u>Flip an Active Call between Devices</u>.



Flip an active call by dialing 'Call Flip' feature code

By dialing the Call Flip feature code, all the other devices where users' extensions are registered will simultaneously ring. Users pick up the call on a desired device, then the call would be flipped.

We provide a flowchart to help you understand the workflow:



Dial feature code

All the other registered devices ring

Pick up the call on desired device

With the Call Flip feature code enabled on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, this method is supported on all endpoints.

For more information about how to enable the Call Flip feature code, see <u>Enable 'Call Flip' feature code</u>.

For more information about how to flip an active call by dialing the feature code, see <u>Flip an Active Call by Dialing a Feature Code</u>.

## Enable or Disable 'Call Flip' Feature Code

This topic describes how to enable or disable 'Call Flip' feature code.

### Enable 'Call Flip' feature code

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. In the Call Flip section, select the checkbox, then configure the feature code.

Call Flip			
* Call Flip	)		
✓ *01			

3. Click Save and Apply.

During a call, extension users can dial the feature code to flip the active call to another device where their extensions are registered. For more information, see <u>Flip an Active</u> <u>Call by Dialing a Feature Code</u>.

Disable 'Call Flip' feature code

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. In the Call Flip section, unselect the checkbox.

Call Flip		
* Call Flip		
*01		

3. Click Save and Apply.

Extension users can NOT flip an active call by dialing the feature code.

### Flip an Active Call by Dialing a Feature Code

This topic describes how to flip an active call from current device to another (with the same extension registered) by dialing a feature code.

Requirements

- PBX Server: 84.8.0.25 or later
- Extension: Extension has been registered on more than one device.

#### Procedure

1. During an active call, dial the Call Flip feature code (default: \*01).

All the other devices where the extension is registered simultaneously ring.

2. Answer the call on a desired device.

### Result

The call is flipped to the device, and the rest of the devices stop ringing.

# Call Pickup

### **Call Pickup Overview**

Call Pickup is a feature that allows employees to pick up colleagues' calls remotely, without having to walk to the his/her telephone. This topic describes the two pickup types including extension call pickup, group call pickup, and pickup code.

### Extension call pickup

Extension call pickup, also known as directed call pickup, allows employees to pick up a call for a specific extension.

For example, the executive's phone is ringing, and the assistant knows the executive is in a meeting and is unavailable to answer the call, the assistant can pick up the executive's call from his/her phone.

### Group call pickup

Group call pickup allows <u>extension group</u> members to share their incoming calls. For a group of employees working on the same subject, when a member receives an incoming call and is unavailable to take the call, other members can pick up the call from their phones.



- If the extension group has multiple ringing calls at the same time, the first ringing call will be picked up.
- The extension group does NOT include the group that contains all the PBX extensions.

### Pickup feature code

Extension users can use the pickup code to pick up a call.

The default pickup code:

- Group Call Pickup: \*4
- Extension Pickup: \*04



You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Call Pickup.

## Pick up a Call for a Group Member

This topic describes how to set up a Feature key on an IP phone to pick up a call for an extension group member.

### **Background information**

For the users who want to pick up a call for an extension group member, you can set a Feature key for each user by <u>auto provisioning</u>. Users can also set function keys on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

#### 🚽 Note:

The default feature code for picking up a group member's call is \*4. You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Call Pickup > Group Call Pickup.

#### Set up a Feature key

The following takes Yealink phone as an example to set a Speed Dial key for group pickup.

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor extension status.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for a specific extension user, click beside the desired extension.
    - If you want o assign function keys for multiple extensions, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, and click Edit.
  - b. Click the Function Keys tab.
  - c. Configure function keys.

#### Pote:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

- Type: Select Speed Dial.
- Value: Enter the code (\* 4).
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- d. Click Save.
- 2. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.

- 3. If the extension has been associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension.

#### Result

- When extension group members receive a call, the user can press the Feature key directly to answer the call.
- When the call is picked up, the IP phones of other extension group members display a missed call.

# Pick up a Call for a Specific Extension

This topic describes how to set up a BLF key on an IP phone to pick up a call for a specific extension.

### **Background information**

For the users who want to monitor call status changes of a specific extension, and pick up the call on their phones, you can set a BLF key for each user by <u>auto provisioning</u>. Users can also set function keys on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

#### 🚽 Note:

The default feature code for picking up an extension call is \*04. You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Call Pickup > Extension Pickup.

#### Set up a BLF key

The following takes Yealink phone as an example to set a BLF key for call pickup.

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor agent status.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for a specific extension user, click beside the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for multiple extensions, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, and click Edit.
  - b. Click the Function Keys tab.
  - c. Configure function keys.



The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

- Type: Select BLF.
- Value: Enter the code (\*04) followed by extension number (for example \*041001).
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- d. Click Save.
- 2. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.
- 3. If the extension has been associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension.

### Result

- When the monitored extension receives an incoming all, the BLF key fast flashes red. The user can press the BLF key directly to answer the call.
- When the call is picked up, the IP phone where the monitored extension is registered displays a missed call.

# Call Parking

# **Call Parking Overview**

Call parking is a method of holding a call on a phone, anyone can retrieve the call on another phone. This topic describes what is call parking, parking number, parking types, parking re-call, and parking code.

### What is call parking

Traditionally, you can only retrieve the call on the same phone when you hold a call. Call parking allows you to hold a call on a parking number, and allows you to dial the parking number on any phone to retrieve the call.

### Parking number

Parking number, also known as slot or orbit, is a virtual extension number that the system assigns to the parked call. One parked call occupies one parking number.

The maximum number of simultaneous parking number is 100.

### Parking types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports two parking types.

- Call parking: Park a call randomly on the first available parking number.
- Directed call parking: Park a call on the specified parking number.

### Parking timeout destination

The parked call remains on the parking number for a specified period of time (default 60 seconds). If no one retrieves the parked call within the timeout period, the system routes the call to a designated destination (default initiator).

### Parking feature code

Extension users can use the parking code to park a call.

The default parking code:

- Call Parking: \*5
- Directed Call Parking: \*05

### 7 Tip:

You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Call Parking.

# **Directed Call Parking**

This topic describes how to park a call on a specific parking number, and retrieve the parked call.

### **Background information**

For sales or support, it probably doesn't matter exactly who picks up the call. You can allocate different parking numbers to different departments. For example, 6099 for sales, 6098 for support, and so on. The receptionist can park the call directly on the parking number based on business. Anyone in the department can retrieve the call by the parking number.

### 📑 Note:

The default range of parking number is from 6000 to 6099. The randomly call parking occupies parking number from 6000. To avoid that the allocated parking number is occupied by randomly call parking, we recommend that you allocate the parking number backwards from 6099.

### Prerequisites

Make sure that the parking number is vacant. If the specified parking number is occupied, the system parks the call to the next available parking number.

#### 👔 Tip:

Set up a function key for users to monitor the status of parking number.

- For receptionist, he/she can press the function key to park the call to the parking number.
- For users in different departments, a parked call is visible on the function key, so that they can press the function key to retrieve the parked call easily.

### Procedure

Parking number 6099 is assigned to salesmen. The receptionist receives a call, and the customer wants to consult business information.

- 1. The receptionist dials \*056099 to park the call to parking number 6099.
- 2. The receptionist tells the sales there is a parked call for business.
- If function keys are configured on the sales' IP phones, they will be notified.
- 3. The sales who is available can dial 6099 or press the function key to retrieve the call.

### 🕡 Tip:

The default feature code for directed call park is \*05. You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Call Parking > Directed Call Parking.

# **Call Parking**

This topic describes how to park a call randomly on the available parking number, and retrieve the parked call.

### **Background information**

During a conversation, the employee may need to go to another office for retrieving an important file or for security, he/she can park the call, and to continue the conversation after arriving at the other office.

### Procedure

1. Dial the feature code (\*5) to park a call.

The system prompts you the parking number (6000) where the call is parked.

2. Go to another office, dial the parking number (6000) to retrieve the parked call.



The default feature code for call park is \*5. You can change, enable, or disable the code on PBX web portal: Call Features > Feature Code > Call Parking > Call Parking.

# Set up Parking Timeout Destination

By default, if a parked call is not retrieved after 60 seconds, the call will be transferred back to the originator. You can set up the parking timeout and timeout destination. This topic describes how to set up parking timeout and timeout destination for an unretrieved call.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code > Call Parking.
- 2. In the Parking Timeout (s) field, enter the number of seconds for the parked call.
- 3. In the Timeout Destination drop-down list, select a destination to receive the unretrieved call.

A parked call will be routed to the designated destination when the call parking times out.

- Call Parking Initiator: Route the call to the user who parks this call.
- Extension: Route the call to the designated extension number.
- Extension Voicemail: Route the call to the designated extension's voicemail.
- Group Voicemail: Route the call to the voicemail box of a queue, a ring group, or a custom group.
- External Number: Route the call to the designated external number.

#### - Note:

Set the <u>Prefix</u> according to your outbound route so that PBX can successfully route incoming calls to external number.

- If the Strip of outbound route is not set, you don't have to set the Prefix.
- If the Strip of outbound route is set, you need to set the Prefix according to the Patterns of outbound route.

4. Click Save and Apply.

# Set up Parking Number

The default range of parking number is from 6000 to 6099. This topic describes how to define the range of parking numbers for parked call.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature code > Call Parking.
- 2. In the Parking Number Range field, enter a number range for parked call.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

#### 7 Tip:

You can also change the parking number range at PBX Settings > Preferences > Extension Preference > Parking Extension.

# Monitor a Parking Number on an IP Phone

This topic describes how to set up a function key on a user's phone to monitor a parking number.

### **Background information**

For users who use directed call parking and want to monitor a specific parking number, you can set a function key for each user by <u>auto provisioning</u>.

#### 🚽 Note:

Users can also set function keys on their own IP phones. For more information, contact the phone manufacturer.

### 👔 Tip:

Agents can also press the function keys to park or retrieve a call.

### Procedure

- 1. Assign function keys for extension users to monitor parking number.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
    - If you want to assign function keys for a specific extension user, click beside the desired extension.
    - If you want o assign function keys for multiple extensions, select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, and click Edit.
  - b. Click the Function Keys tab.
  - c. Configure function keys.

#### 🚽 Note:

The number of programmable keys varies by phone models. If the number of function keys you assign to an extension exceeds the number of programmable keys, the redundant function keys cannot take effect.

- Type: Select Park & Retrieve.
- Value: Select a parking number.
- Label: Optional. Enter a value, which will be displayed on the phone screen.
- d. Click Save.

- 2. If the extension hasn't been associated with a phone, see <u>Auto Provision IP Phones</u> to bind a phone with the extension.
- 3. If the extension has been associated with a phone, reprovision the phone to take effect.
  - a. Go to Auto Provisioning > Phones.
  - b. Click  $^{\rm C}$  beside the phone assigned to this extension.

### Result

The function key shows the real-time status of the parking number.

• Green: The parking number is idle.

The user can press the function key to park an active call to the idle parking number.

• Red: The parking number is occupied.

The user can press the function key to retrieve a parked call from the monitored parking number.

#### 🚽 Note:

The key LED status may vary by phone models.

# **Call Monitoring**

# Call Monitoring Overview

Call monitoring feature allows you to listen in on employee calls without interference or joining in the conversation as a third party. It helps you check on the quality of teams' sales calls, learn more about customer reactions and insights, and gain a better view for coaching and training the team.

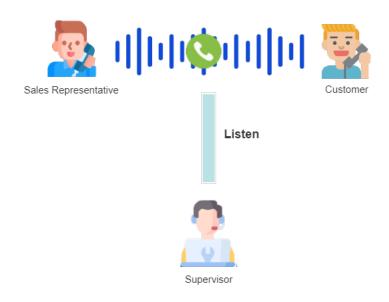
#### Modes of call monitoring

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following monitoring modes:

#### Listen mode

Listen mode allows the authorized user to listen in on a call in real time, but can NOT talk with either party.

This mode is often used for supervisor to track the daily actions of sales representatives and evaluate their performance on the sales process.



Whisper mode

Whisper mode allows the authorized user to listen in on a call in real time, and directly talk with the monitored extension without being heard by the other party.

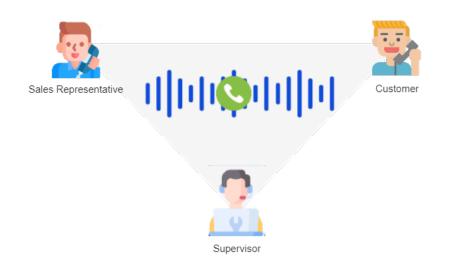
This mode is often used for supervisor to coach remote sales representatives and train them as they work on a sales call.



Barge-in mode

Barge-in mode allows the authorized user to listen in on a call in real time, and talk with both parties.

This mode is often used for supervisor to help sales representatives handle a difficult objection and move deals forward.



#### Methods of call monitoring

An authorized user can listen in on a call in the following ways:

- Operator Panel
- <u>Queue Panel</u>
- Dial Feature Code + Extension Number

#### **Operator Panel**

For users who have access to Operator Panel, you can assign the permission of call monitoring operations to them. In this way, the authorized users can listen in on an active call using any one of the three monitoring modes when they are working on Operator Panel.

To assign the permission of call monitoring operations on Operator Panel, see <u>View or Change Permissions for Group Members</u>.

To listen in on a call on Operator Panel, see Monitor a Call.

#### **Queue Panel**

For queue managers who have access to Queue Panel, you can assign the permission of call monitoring operations to them. In this way, the queue managers can listen in on an active call using any one of the three monitoring modes when they are working on Queue Panel.

To assign the permission of call monitoring operations on Queue Panel, see <u>Grant Queue Panel Permissions</u>.

To listen in on a call on Queue Panel, see Monitor a Call.

Dial 'Feature Code + Extension Number'

For users who only have phones on hand, you can configure feature codes for each call monitoring mode, then assign permission to specific users. In this way, the authorized users can listen in on an active call using the specified monitoring mode by dialing Feature Code + Extension Number on their phones.

To configure the feature code and assign the permission of call monitoring operations, see <u>Allow Users to Monitor a Call by Dialing a Feature Code</u>.

# Allow Users to Monitor a Call by Dialing a Feature Code

If users only have phones on hand, you can configure feature codes for each monitoring mode, then assign permission to users. In this way, the authorized users can listen in on a call by dialing a feature code on their phones.

#### **Background information**

By default, all the extension users can NOT monitor others' calls by dialing a feature code, but their calls can be monitored instead.

To allow specific extension users to monitor others' calls by dialing a feature code, follow the procedure shown below.

To prevent specific extension users from being monitored, see <u>Disallow Users to be Moni-</u> tored by Others.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Feature Code.
- 2. In the Call Monitoring section, configure the feature code and assign permission to users.

Call	Monitoring		
	* Listen	Listen Permission	
	*51	2000-Leo Ball × 2001-Phillip Huff × 2002-Terrell Smith ×	
	* Whisper	Whisper Permission	
~	*52	2004-Troy Daniel ×	
	* Barge-in	Barge-in Permission	
	*53	2004-Troy Daniel $ imes$	

- a. Select the checkbox of a desired call monitoring mode, then configure the feature code.
  - Listen: Listen in on a call in real time, but can NOT talk with either party.
    - The default feature code is \*51.
  - Whisper: Listen in on a call in real time, and directly talk with the monitored extension without being heard by the other party.

The default feature code is \*52.

• Barge-in: Listen in on a call in real time, and talk with both parties.

The default feature code is \*53.

- b. In the Listen/Whisper/Barge-in Permission drop-down list, select the allowed extensions for each call monitoring mode respectively.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

The authorized user can dial Feature Code + Extension Number to monitor the calls of the extensions that are allowed to be monitored.

#### Important:

- Monitoring Conference Calls via feature code is NOT supported.
- Monitoring calls of extensions that are invisible on Linkus clients is NOT supported.
- During an internal call where one party allows being monitored while the other party disallows, the call can NOT be monitored even by the authorized user.

# Disallow Users to be Monitored by Others

By default, all the extension users are allowed to be monitored. To keep specific users' calls private, you can disable the monitoring feature for users.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. To prevent an extension from being monitored, do as follows:
  - a. Click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired extension.
  - b. Click Features tab.
  - c. In the Call Monitor section, unselect the checkbox of Allow Being Monitored.

Call Monitor
Allow Being Monitored

- d. Click Save and Apply.
- 3. To prevent multiple extensions from being monitored, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of the desired extensions, then click Edit.
  - b. Click Features tab.
  - c. Select the checkbox of Call Monitor, then unselect the checkbox of Allow Being Monitored.

User	Presence	Voicemail	Features	Advanced	Security	Linkus Clients	Function Keys
🔽 Call M	onitor						
Allow	Being Monitored						

#### d. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

The users' calls can NOT be monitored by anyone.

# Fax

## **Fax Overview**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to connect your fax machine to PBX system. Then you can send or receive faxes on a fax machine, and receive faxes by email. This topic describes how fax works with Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, and introduces fax to email, fax detection, and Fax over VoIP settings.

#### T.38 Fax

T.38 is a protocol that enables fax over the Internet and is supported on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. T.38 utilizes Voice over IP (VoIP) to send a fax. This process is known as virtual fax or FoIP (Fax over IP).

The diagram below explains how T.38 Fax works:

- 1. A fax machine sends a fax through a T.38 compatible gateway, which acts as an emitting server.
- 2. The emitting server partitions data from the fax into an image that can be encoded and sent over the Internet in real time, then sends the T.38 data stream to another T.38 compatible server, such as a PBX, which acts as a receiving server.
- 3. The receiving server converts the T.38 data stream to analog signal, and sends to the terminal fax machine.



## Fax to email

Faxes traditionally are sent directly to a fax machine; the recipient receives a printed copy. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides fax to email feature that allows you to receive faxes as PDF by email.

The benefits of fax to email:

- Keep your faxes private without paper trail.
- Access faxes in real-time from anywhere.
- No need to pay for expensive hardware, printer paper, ongoing maintenance or a dedicated fax line.

## Fax detection

Fax detection is used to detect automatically whether an incoming call is voice or fax. It is useful when you have fax call and voice call on the same line.

- If the PBX detects a fax signal, the PBX immediately routes the call to the designated fax destination.
- If the PBX does not detect a fax signal, the PBX handles the call as a regular voice call.

#### Fax over IP (FoIP) settings

The following settings are available when you want to improve the Fax transmission over VoIP network.

- T.38 Support: Enable or disable T.38 protocol for extension and trunk according to your needs.
- T.38 Max BitRate: The maximum bit rate of the fax transmission.

The default value is 14400.

- No T.38 Attributes in re-INVITE SDP: Whether to contain T.38 attributes in SDP re-invite packet.
- Error Correction Mode: Error Correction Mode (ECM) is an optional transmission mode. ECM automatically detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process that are sometimes caused by telephone line noise.

# Receive Faxes by Email

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides fax to email feature that allows you to receive faxes as PDF by email. This topic describes how to receive faxes by email.

## Prerequisites

• Make sure the PBX <u>system email</u> works, or the PBX cannot forward the received faxes to an extension user's email.

- Make sure there is a valid email address assigned to extension.
- Optional: Customize the fax email template.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Control > Inbound Route, edit the inbound route for incoming faxes.
- 2. If you receive faxes through a dedicated line, go to Default Destination section.
  - a. In the Default Destination drop-down list, select Fax To Email.
  - b. Select an extension user to receive faxes by email.

Default Destination			
Default Destination		*	
Fax To Email	$\sim$	2171-2171	~

- 3. If you receive faxes through a shared line, go to Fax Detection section.
  - a. In the Fax Destination drop-down list, select Fax To Email.
  - b. In the Extension's Email drop-down list, select an extension user to receive faxes by email.

Default Destination				
Default Destination		*		
IVR	$\sim$	6202-6202	~	
Time Condition				
- Fax Detection				
* Fax Destination			* Extension's Email	
Fax To Email		$\sim$	2185-2185	$\sim$

4. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

When receiving a fax, PBX converts the received fax and simply forwards it to the email address as an PDF attachment.

# Set up Fax over IP (FoIP)

Fax over IP (FoIP) is the process of using T.38 protocol to send a fax from a fax machine to another fax machine over the Internet. This topic describes how to enable T.38 for extension and trunk respectively, and how to change T.38 settings to improve the Fax transmission over VoIP network.

## Enable T.38 protocol for SIP extension

If you want to register a SIP extension on a SIP compatible fax machine, you need to enable T.38 Support for this extension.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Extension, edit the desired extension.
- 2. Go to Advanced > VoIP Settings.
- 3. Select the checkbox of T.38 Support.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Enable T.38 protocol for SIP trunk

If you want to use a SIP trunk to send or receive faxes, you need to enable T.38 Support for this trunk.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Extension and Trunk > Trunk, edit the desired trunk.
- 2. Go to Advanced > VoIP Settings.
- 3. Select the checkbox of T.38 Support.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

#### Change T.38 settings

If the Fax over IP doesn't work, you can change the T.38 settings.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > SIP Settings > T.38.
- 2. Change the T.38 settings.
  - T.38 Max BitRate: Set the maximum bit rate of the fax transmission.
  - No T.38 Attributes in re-INVITE SDP: If enabled, SDP re-invite packet does not contain T.38 attributes.
  - Error Correction Mode: If enabled, after receiving the packet for a complete fax page, PBX notifies the transmitting fax machine of the frames with errors. The transmitting fax machine then retransmits the specified frames.

This process is repeated until all frames are received without errors. 3. Click Save and Apply.

# Paging/Intercom

# Overview of Paging and Intercom

This topic describes what is Paging and Intercom, scheduled paging call and intercom call.

#### What is Paging and Intercom

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition Paging and Intercom feature helps users broadcast announcements over one or more speakers, without the called party picking up the handset.

Paging

Paging feature is used to make a one-way announcement to users via a phone speaker.

There are two kinds of Paging:

• One-way Paging: One-way announcement to users with extensions registered.

When a broadcaster makes a paging call, the group members' phones automatically answer into speakerphone mode. Group members can not talk with the broadcaster during the call.

For more information, see <u>Set up a One-way Paging Group</u>.

• One-way Multicast Paging: One-way announcement to users who have their phones listen on the same multicast IP and port as the PBX.

When trying to make an announcement to group members, the broadcaster's phone sends out an RTP stream to the multicast IP and port. Upon receiving the forwarded RTP packets from local network switch and router, the listening phones play RTP stream out of speakers.

For more information, see <u>Set up a One-way Multicast Paging Group</u>.

#### Intercom

Intercom feature is used to establish two-way communication with users via a phone speaker.

When a broadcaster makes an intercom call, the group members' phones automatically answer into speakerphone mode. The broadcaster and all the group members can talk with each other during the call.

For more information, see Set up a Two-way Intercom Group.

#### Scheduled paging call and intercom call

Besides real-time paging calls or intercom calls, you can set a time schedule to automatically start your broadcast. The Scheduled Paging/Intercom feature is perfect for schools, airports, or other facilities that require routine notifications set in advance.

For more information, see Schedule a Paging Call or an Intercom Call.

# Paging/Intercom Group

# Set up a One-way Paging Group

One-way Paging feature allows a broadcaster to make an announcement to users. The called parties' phones will not ring, but instead directly answering into speakerphone mode. This topic describes how to set up a one-way paging group.

#### Scenario

A company has different departments on different floors in a building. Each department is deployed with a phone for communication. The boss has an urgent case that needs to confirm with marketers. In this case, you can set up a One-way paging group for Marketing Department. The boss can make a paging call to the department and ask marketers concerned to go to the office.

## Procedure

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom, click Add.

* B	Number 6600 Type One-way Paging roadcaster		~		* Name Marketing Department Prompt [None]			v
Μ	Dial * to Answer Iembers 12 items Search here Extension Number	Available		1 item Search h	ere ension Number	Caller ID Name	Selected	Ť
	<ul> <li>Extension Group</li> <li>2000</li> <li>2001</li> <li>2002</li> <li>2003</li> <li>2004</li> <li>2005</li> </ul>	Default_All_Extensions Leo Ball Phillip Huff Kristin Hale Naomi Nichols Terrell Smith		_ B	tension Group	Marketing Department		* *

2. Configure a one-way paging group.

- Number: Enter a number for the paging group. In this example, enter 6600.
- Name: Enter a name for the paging group. In this example, enter Marketing Department.
- Type: Select One-way Paging.
- Prompt: Optional. To play a prompt before making an announcement, you can select a custom prompt. In this example, leave it as None.

#### Note:

To customize a prompt, see <u>Record a Custom Prompt</u> or <u>Upload a Custom</u> <u>Prompt</u>.

- Broadcaster: Optional. To restrict users from making an announcement to the paging group, select allowed extensions or extension groups from the dropdown list. In this example, leave it blank.
- Dial \* to Answer: Optional. To allow users to dial \* to talk to the broadcaster privately, enable this option. In this example, keep the option disabled.

#### - Note:

When a user dials \*, announcement will terminate, and the user can have a private talk with the broadcaster.

- Members: Select desired members from Available box to Selected box. In this example, select Marketing Department.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

#### What to do next

The boss dials 6600 from any endpoint with extension registered. The marketers' phones automatically answer into speakerphone mode.

#### 🚽 Note:

If called parties' extensions are registered on the following endpoints, these endpoints will ring first, instead of automatically answering into speakerphone mode.

• Softphone, including Linkus Web Client, Linkus Mobile Client, and softphones of other brands.

#### **Related information**

Schedule a Paging Call or an Intercom Call

# Set up a One-way Multicast Paging Group

One-way Multicast Paging feature allows a broadcaster to make an announcement to the users who are listening to a specific multicast group on a specific channel. The called parties' phones will not ring, but instead directly answering into speakerphone mode. This topic describes how to set up a one-way multicast paging group.

#### Scenario

For a warehouse, the work flow in product line is closely connected and tends to be complex. For example, one zone is responsible for packaging goods, another zone is for dispatching goods. To facilitate supervisors in coordinating daily warehouse activities, you can set up paging groups for each zone.

#### Requirements

The phone that will receive One-way Multicast Paging must meet the following requirements:

• A Yealink or Fanvil IP phone that supports multicast feature.

#### Procedure

Based on the above scenario, you need to create two paging groups on the PBX and set up multicast listening on two phones.

- 1. On Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, create two paging groups.
  - a. Create a paging group 6601 for Packaging Area.
    - i. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom, click Add.
    - ii. Configure a one-way multicast paging group.

* Number		* Name	
6601		Packaging Area	
* Туре		Prompt	
One-way Multicast Paging	$\checkmark$	[None]	$\vee$
Broadcaster			
	~		
IP of Multicast Channel			
* IP of Multicast Channel	* Port		Operations
224.5.6.20	10008		<b>茴</b>

- Number: Enter a number for the paging group. In this example, enter 6601.
- Name: Enter a name for the paging group. In this example, enter Packaging Area.
- Type: Select One-way Multicast Paging.
- Prompt: Optional. To play a prompt before making an announcement, you can select a custom prompt. In this example, leave it as None.

#### PNote:

To customize a prompt, see <u>Record a Custom Prompt</u> and <u>Upload a</u> <u>Custom Prompt</u>.

- Broadcaster: Optional. To restrict users from making an announcement to the paging group, select allowed extensions or extension groups from the drop-down list. In this example, leave it blank.
- IP of Multicast Channel: Enter a multicast IP address and port.
  - IP of Multicast Channel: Enter a multicast IP address. In this example, enter 224.5.6.20.
  - Port: Enter a multicast port. In this example, enter 10008.

- Note:

- The range of multicast IP address is 224.0.0.0 239.255.255.255.
- You can add at most 30 IP addresses.
- iii. Click Save and Apply.
- b. Repeat step a to create another paging group 6602 for Dispatching Area.

Note:

Set a multicast IP address and port that are different from Packaging Area. For example, set IP of Multicast Channel to 224.5.6.21 and set Port to 10010.

* Number		* Name			
6602		Dispatching Area			
* Туре		Prompt			
One-way Multicast Paging	$\sim$	[None]	1. V		
Broadcaster					
	$\sim$				
IP of Multicast Channel					
* IP of Multicast Channel	* Port		Operations		
224.5.6.21	10010		固		

- 2. Set up multicast listening for the two phones in Packaging Area and Dispatching Area.
  - a. Set up multicast listening for the phone in Packaging Area. In this example, we take Yealink T56A as an example.
    - i. Log in to the phone web interface, go to Directory > Multicast IP.
    - ii. In the Listening Address field, enter the same multicast IP address and port as the PBX. In this example, enter 224.5.6.20:10008.

Multicast Listening				
Paging Barge		1	· ?	
Ignore DND		Disabled	· ?	
Paging Priority Active			?	
IP Address	Listening Address	Label	Channel	Priority
1 IP Address	224.5.6.20:10008		0 -	1
2 IP Address			0 •	2

- iii. Click Confirm.
- b. Set up multicast listening for the phone in Dispatching Area. In this example, we take Fanvil X210 as an example.
  - i. Log in to the phone web interface, go to Phone Settings > MCAST.

ii. In the Host:Port field, enter the same multicast IP address and port as the PBX. In this example, enter 224.5.6.21:10010.

Features Media Settings	MCAST	Action	Time/Date	Time Plan	Tone
MCAST Listening					
Priority:	1	~			
Enable Page Priority:					
Enable Prio Chan:					
Enable Emer Chan:					
Index/Priority	Name		Host:port		Channel
1			224.5.6.21:10010		0 .
2					0 .

iii. Click Apply.

#### What to do next

- Supervisor dials 6601 to reach employees in Packaging Area. Yealink T56A automatically answers into speakerphone mode.
- Supervisor dials 6602 to reach employees in Dispatching Area. Fanvil X210 automatically answers into speakerphone mode.

#### **Related information**

Schedule a Paging Call or an Intercom Call

# Set up a Two-way Intercom Group

Two-way Intercom feature allows you to establish two-way communication with an individual user or a group of users. The called parties can respond without picking up the handset. This topic describes how to set up a two-way intercom group.

#### **Background information**

In office complexes, hospitals, or schools, there are either static guards or patrol guards to ensure safety within the workplace. The Two-way Intercom feature helps improve communication efficiency. For example, a security guard can ask for help when security incidents happen, a supervisor can flexibly dispatch employees in daily activities.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports to place an intercom call to one or more users:

Place an intercom call to a specific user

Dial Intercom feature code (default: \*6) followed by a desired extension number.

For example, dial \*61002 to place an intercom call to 1002.



To change intercom feature code, go to Call Features > Feature Code > Intercom.

Place an intercom call to multiple users

Set up a two-way intercom group on the PBX and place a call to group numbers.

For more information, see the following instructions.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom, click Add.
- 2. Configure a two-way intercom group.

* Number			* Name			
6602			Security Office			
* Туре			Prompt			
Two-way Intercom		$\sim$	[None]			~
Broadcaster						
		$\sim$				
Dial * to Answer						
Members						
12 items	Available		1 item		Selected	
Search here	٩		Search here		Q	
Extension Number	Caller ID Name		Extension Number	Caller ID Name		
Extension Group	Default_All_Extensions		Extension Group	Security Office		$\overline{\uparrow}$
2000	Leo Ball					
2001	Phillip Huff					
2002	Kristin Hale					4
	Kristin Hale Naomi Nichols					Ŧ
2002						<b>王</b>

- Number: Enter a number for the intercom group. In this example, enter 6602.
- Name: Enter a name for the intercom group. In this example, enter Security Office.
- Type: Select Two-way Intercom.
- Prompt: Optional. To play a prompt before making an announcement, you can select a custom prompt. In this example, leave it as None.

#### - Note:

To customize a prompt, see <u>Record a Custom Prompt</u> or <u>Upload a Custom</u> <u>Prompt</u>.

• Broadcaster: Optional. To restrict users from placing an intercom call to the intercom group, select allowed extensions or extension groups from the dropdown list. In this example, leave it blank. • Dial \* to Answer: Optional. To allow users to dial \* to talk to the broadcaster privately, enable this option.

#### - Note:

When a user dials \*, the call is ended from other users' side, and the user can have a private talk with the broadcaster.

- Members: Select desired members from Available box to Selected box. In this example, select the group Security Office.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

#### What to do next

Dial 6602 to reach all the security guards. The security guards' phones automatically answer into speakerphone mode.

#### **Related information**

Schedule a Paging Call or an Intercom Call

# Manage Paging Groups and Intercom Groups

This topic describes how to edit or delete paging groups and intercom groups.

Edit a paging/intercom group

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom.
- 2. On Paging/Intercom List page, click 🖉 beside desired group.
- 3. Edit group settings.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

Delete a paging/intercom group

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom.
- 2. On Paging/Intercom List page, click 🔟 beside desired group.
- 3. Click OK and Apply.

#### 🚽 Note:

If you have scheduled a paging call or an intercom call for the group, the scheduled call will also be deleted.

# Scheduled Paging/Intercom Call

# Schedule a Paging Call or an Intercom Call

A scheduled paging call or intercom call allows Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition or an extension user to make an announcement at a specific date and time. For facilities that require routine notifications set in advance, you can schedule a paging call or an intercom call.

## Prerequisites

You have set up a paging group or an intercom group.

- <u>Set up a One-way Paging Group</u>
- <u>Set up a One-way Multicast Paging Group</u>
- <u>Set up a Two-way Intercom Group</u>

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom, click Scheduled Paging/Intercom tab.
- 2. Schedule a paging call or an intercom call.
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Configure the following settings:
    - Paging: Select a pre-configured paging group from the drop-down list.
    - Caller: Select a broadcaster.
      - {extension\_user}: The extension user will make the announcement. On the specified date and time, the PBX will place a call to the user. When the user answers the call, group members' phones directly answer into speakerphone mode.

#### 🚽 Note:

If the user rejects the call, the announcement will be cancelled.

• None: The PBX will make the announcement.

On the specified date and time, the PBX will place a call to group members and play a specific custom prompt. After the prompt ends, the PBX hangs up. The option can be applied to school bells, church bells, etc.

#### 🚽 Note:

The option is available only when a custom prompt is assigned to the selected paging group or intercom group.

- Start Date: Set the start date of the scheduled paging call or intercom call.
- Time: Set the start time of the scheduled paging call or intercom call.



You can set up to 8 timings, which means that the paging call or intercom call can be placed at different time on the same day.

• Days of Week: Select the days of week.

The scheduled paging call or intercom call will be weekly placed on the specified days of week.

c. Click Save and Apply.

# Manage Scheduled Paging Calls and Intercom Calls

This topic describes how to edit or delete scheduled paging calls and intercom calls.

Edit a scheduled paging/intercom call

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom.
- 2. On Scheduled Paging/Intercom page, click 🖉 beside desired group.
- 3. Edit relevant settings.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

Delete a scheduled paging/intercom call

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Paging/Intercom.
- 2. On Scheduled Paging/Intercom page, click 🛄 beside desired group.
- 3. Click OK and Apply.

The announcement will not be made on the specified date and time.

# **PIN List**

# Add a PIN List

A PIN list allows you to define groups and then assign a list of passwords to each group. The PIN list can be used to restrict outbound routes to enhance communication security. Users need to enter a correct PIN code when making outbound calls through a restricted outbound route.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > PIN List, click Add.
- 2. In the pop-up window, configure the following settings:
  - Name: Specify a name to help you identify it.
  - PIN List: Enter the PIN codes. Press the Enter key to separate multiple PIN codes.

Note:

- The PIN code only allows numeric value.
- The length of each PIN code is limited from 3 to 15.
- Record in CDR: Whether to record the PIN code in CDR when the PIN code has been used.
- 3. Click Save.

## What to do next

- 1. Assign the PIN codes included in the PIN list to different users.
- 2. Select a PIN list in an outbound route to restrict outbound calls. For more information, see <u>Restrict Outbound Calls by PIN Codes</u>.

# Blocked/Allowed Numbers

# Block Calls To or From a Phone Number

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports to block incoming and/or outgoing calls by phone number. To stop nuisance calls, you can add phone numbers to system blocklist. Numbers in the blocklist will be blocked to dial in, dial out, or both.

## Limitations

The maximum number of Blocked Numbers Lists and Numbers per Blocked Numbers List varies depending on the number of your extensions.

Table 34.								
Maximum Number of Exten- sions (N)	Blocked Numbers Lists	Numbers per Blocked Num- bers List						
N ≤ 200	256	100						
N >200	512	200						

## **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to handle calls by phone number in the following ways:

Call Handling Based on Caller ID

This feature makes it possible for routing or blocking incoming calls from internal or external users by phone number. You can customize different call handling rules for each extension. For more information, see <u>Handle Incoming Calls Based on Caller ID</u>.

#### **Blocked Numbers**

This feature makes it possible for blocking inbound and/or outbound calls to external users by phone number. If you list a phone number in the system blocklist, all the PBX extensions can NOT reach or be reached by the phone number.

For more information, see the following instructions.

#### Note:

System blocklist has higher priority than individual blocklist.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Blocked Numbers.
- 2. Click Add to set up a blocked number list.
- 3. In the pop-up window, configure as follows:

Add		Х
* Name		
Blocked numbers-1		
* Number		
10000		
10001		- I
10002		
10003		
10004		×
* Туре		
Inbound		$\vee$
	× Cancel	Save

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify the number(s) to be blocked.
- Number: Enter a specific number or a number pattern per line.
  - To block a specific number, enter a specific number. For example, enter 10086.
  - To block a range of numbers, enter a wildcard pattern. For example. enter 9011. to block numbers starting with 9011.

For more information about wildcard pattern, see <u>DID Pattern and Caller ID</u> <u>Pattern</u>.

- Type: Select a type from the drop-down list.
  - Inbound: Block the number(s) from calling into the PBX.
  - Outbound: Block PBX extensions from calling the number(s).
  - Both: Block the number(s) from calling into the PBX and block the PBX extensions from calling the number(s).
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

The blocked numbers list is displayed on the web page as the following figure shows. The added numbers will be blocked based on the type you selected.

Note:

Blocked numbers do NOT work for the extensions within the PBX. When an extension number matches a blocked number, the extension can still be used for outgoing and incoming calls.

Name	Туре	Number	Operations
Blocked numbers-1	Inbound	10000 10001 10002	2 🗇

# Export and Import Blocked Numbers

The blocked numbers added on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired blocked numbers information in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import blocked numbers.

#### Export all blocked numbers

You can export all the blocked numbers to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Blocked Numbers.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Blocked Numbers Parameters</u>.

## Import blocked numbers

We recommend that you export blocked numbers to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file

- Format: UTF-8 .csv
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information, see <u>Blocked Numbers Parameters</u>.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Blocked Numbers.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse to select the UTF-8.csv file you prepared.
- 4. Click Import.

#### Result

The blocked numbers in the CSV file are displayed in the Blocked Numbers list.

# Manage Blocked Numbers

This topic describes how to edit and delete blocked numbers lists.

## Edit blocked numbers lists

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Blocked Numbers.
- 2. Click 🖉 beside a desired list.
- 3. In the pop-up window, edit the name, the blocked number(s), or blocked type as need-ed.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

Delete blocked numbers lists

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Blocked Numbers.
- 2. To delete a blocked numbers list, do as follows:

- a. Select the checkbox of a desired list, then click  $\overline{\square}$ .
- b. In the pop-up window, click OK.
- 3. To bulk delete blocked numbers lists, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of desired lists, then click Delete.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.

The blocked numbers lists are deleted successfully. All the numbers in the deleted lists are no longer blocked, they can call into the PBX and be called by PBX extension users.

# Allow Calls To or From a Phone Number

If trusted phone numbers happen to be listed in system blocklist, you can add the trusted phone numbers to system allowlist. Numbers in the allowlist are allowed to dial in, dial out, or both.

#### PNote:

The Allowed Number has higher priority than the Blocked Number; Adding numbers in Allowed Number doesn't mean that PBX only allow these numbers to dial in or be dialed out.

#### Limitations

The maximum number of Allowed Numbers Lists and Numbers per Allowed Numbers List varies depending on the number of your extensions.

Table 35.

Maximum Number of Exten- sions (N)	Allowed Numbers Lists	Numbers per Allowed Num- bers List
N ≤ 200	256	100
N >200	512	200

## Background information

If your customers' phone numbers happen to be listed in system blocklist or individual blocklist, you can add trusted phone numbers to the allowlist.

To add trusted phone numbers to individual allowlist, see <u>Handle Incoming Calls Based on</u> <u>Caller ID</u>.

To add trusted phone numbers to system allowlist, see the following instructions.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Allowed Numbers .
- 2. Click Add to set up an allowed number list.

3. In the pop-up window, configure as follows:

Add		Х
* Name Allowed numbers - 1		
* Number		
10000 10001 10002 10003		z
* Type Both		$\vee$
	× Cancel	G Save

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify the number(s) to be allowed.
- Number: Enter a specific number or a number pattern per line.
  - To allow a specific number, enter a specific number. For example, enter 10086.
  - To allow a range of numbers, enter a wildcard pattern. For example. enter 9011. to allow numbers starting with 9011.

For more information about wildcard pattern, see <u>DID Pattern and Caller ID</u> <u>Pattern</u>.

- Type: Select a type from the drop-down list.
  - Inbound: Allow the number(s) to call into the PBX.
  - Outbound: Allow PBX extensions to call the number(s).
  - Both: Allow the number(s) to call into the PBX and allow PBX extensions to call the number(s).
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

The allowed numbers list is displayed on the web page as the following figure shows. The added numbers can communicate with the PBX extensions based on the type you selected.

	Name	Туре	Number	r		Opera	ations
	Allowed numbers - 1	Both	10000	10001	10002		団

# Export and Import Allowed Numbers

The allowed numbers added on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired allowed numbers information in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import allowed numbers.

## Export all allowed numbers

You can export all the allowed numbers to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Allowed Numbers .
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Al-</u><u>lowed Numbers Parameters</u>.

## Import allowed numbers

We recommend that you export allowed numbers to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .csv
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information, see <u>Allowed Numbers Parameters</u>.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Allowed Numbers .
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse to select the UTF-8.csv file you prepared.
- 4. Click Import.

Result

The allowed numbers in the CSV file are displayed in the Allowed Numbers list.

# Manage Allowed Numbers

This topic describes how to edit and delete allowed numbers lists.

## Edit allowed numbers lists

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Allowed Numbers .
- 2. Click 🖉 beside a desired list.
- 3. In the pop-up window, edit the name, the allowed number(s), or type as needed.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Delete allowed numbers lists

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Call Features > Blocked/Allowed Numbers > Allowed Numbers .
- 2. To delete an allowed numbers list, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkbox of a desired list, then click  $\mathbf{\hat{\square}}$ .
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.
- 3. To bulk delete allowed numbers lists, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of desired lists, then click Delete.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.

The allowed numbers lists are deleted successfully. If the numbers in the deleted lists match the numbers or the number patterns from Blocked Numbers, they would be blocked based on the blocking type.

# **PBX System**

# System Preferences

This topic describes the preference settings that will be applied globally to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

Go to PBX Settings > Preferences to configure preferences settings.

## **Basic preferences**

Table 36.

Setting	Description
Device Name	Set a name for the PBX. The name will be used as the sender name when PBX sends emails out.
Name Display For- mat	Set display format for extension user's name and contact's name.
	<ul> <li>First Name Last Name with Space Inbetween</li> <li>Last Name First Name with Space Inbetween</li> <li>Last Name First Name without Space Inbetween</li> </ul>
Max Call Duration (s)	Set the global maximum call duration for an active call. When the call duration reaches the limit, the call will be ended. The default value is 10800.
	Note: For outbound calls, the Max Call Duration (s) setting of the caller's extension takes precedence.
Tone Region	Select your country or the nearest neighboring country to enable the default dial tone, busy tone, and ring tone.

## **Organization Management**

Table 37.

Setting	Description
Organization Man- agement	If enabled, you can arrange extension users into organizations.

#### Table 37. (continued)

Setting	Description		
Company Name	Set your company name, which will be used as the root organiza- tion name.		

## Distinctive Caller ID Name

#### Table 38.

-	
Setting	Description
Display Call Feature Name	If enabled, the Caller ID will display the originated name when users receive a call from a ring group, queue, and IVR.
Display DID/DDI Name	If enabled, the Caller ID will display the DID name of the source trunk.

## DTMF preferences

#### Table 39.

Setting	Description
DTMF Passthrough	If enabled, PBX will pass DTMF tones directly to the other end without processing the DTMF tones.
DTMF Duration (ms)	Set the duration (in millisecond) of DTMF audio signal sent by the PBX. The default value is 120.
DTMF Gap (ms)	Set the interval (in millisecond) between two DTMF audio signals sent by the PBX. The default value is 120.

## Extension preferences

Below are default extension ranges. You can change the extension range according to your needs.

## Note:

PBX treats the followings as extensions. Extension users can dial extension numbers to reach them directly.

Table 40.

Extension Type	Default Range
User Extension	1000 - 5999

Extension Type	Default Range
Parking Extension	6000 - 6099
Group Voicemail Extension	6100 - 6199
IVR Extension	6200 - 6299
Ring Group Extension	6300 - 6399
Queue Extension	6400 - 6499
Conference Extension	6500 - 6599
Paging Extension	6600 - 6699
Account Trunk	6700 - 6799

Table 40. (continued)

# Voice Prompt

# Voice Prompt Overview

This topic describes the definition, types, and preference settings of voice prompt on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### What is a voice prompt

A voice prompt is a recorded audio message that is played to callers. The voice prompt can be a request that requires callers to input data through DTMF, or an intermediary that provides instructions and directions to help callers obtain information.

#### Voice prompt types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports 3 types of voice prompt:

• System Prompt: System prompt is Yeastar-provided prompt to provide instructions for callers. For example, if a password is required for a meeting, users will be prompted to enter password before they successfully join the meeting.

You can use pre-defined system prompt, or change system prompt by downloading online prompts or uploading custom system prompts.

For more information, see <u>Change System Prompt</u> and <u>Customize System Prompt</u>.

• Custom Prompt: Custom prompt can be company-specific prompt, which is used in specific call scenario. For example, when a call is forwarded to another destination, the caller will be prompted that the call is forwarded.

You can record new prompt on your phone, or upload pre-recorded prompt to the PBX.

For more information, see Record a Custom Prompt and Upload a Custom Prompt.

• Music on Hold: Music on Hold (MoH) is the business practice of playing recorded music to fill the silence that would be heard by callers who have been placed on hold.

You can use pre-defined music on hold, or customize your own music on hold.

For more information, see <u>Set up a Custom MoH Playlist</u>.

## Voice prompt preference settings

Navigation path: PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Prompt Preferences.

Table 41.

Setting	Description		
Music on Hold	The playlist to be played when a call is on hold.		
	PNote:		
	The available playlists are synchronized with playlists in Music on Hold.		
Music on Hold for Call Forwarding	The music to be played when the caller is put on hold dur ing call forwarding.		
	<ul> <li>Music on Hold: Play <u>Music on Hold</u> to the caller.</li> <li>Ringing Tone: Play ringing tone to the caller.</li> </ul>		
Invalid Phone Number Prompt	The prompt to be played when a callee number is invalid.		
	루 Note:		
	The available prompts are synchronized with <u>Custom</u> <u>Prompt</u> .		
Busy Line Prompt	The prompt to be played when a trunk is in use.		
	📑 Note:		
	The available prompts are synchronized with Custom Prompt.		
Call Failure Prompt	The prompt to be played when a call is failed to be sent out.		
	PNote:		
	The available prompts are synchronized with Custom Prompt.		
Event Notification Prompt	The prompt to be played when PBX places a call to notify callee that a specific event occurs.		

Setting	Description	
	Note: The available prompts are synchronized with Custom Prompt.	
Play Call Forwarding Prompt	Whether to inform the user that the current call will be for- warded.	

#### Table 41. (continued)

# System Prompt

# **Change System Prompt**

This topic describes how to download an online prompt and change it to the default system prompt.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > System Prompt.
- 2. Download the desired system prompt.
  - a. Click Download Online Prompts.

All the supported system prompts are displayed on Download Online Prompts page.

- b. Select a prompt, click  $\bigcirc$ .
- c. Click  $\times$  to close the window.

The downloaded prompt is displayed on System Prompt list.

- 3. In the Default column, set the desired system prompt to default.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

The prompt is applied to the system.

# **Customize System Prompt**

This topic describes how to customize system prompt and change it to the default prompt.

## **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides <u>multiple online prompts</u> for your choice. If you want to use custom system prompt, you need to contact Yeastar Support to record your own prompt, and upload it to your PBX.

## Prerequisites

- Contact Yeastar Support to record your own prompt.
- The prompt file must meet the following requirements:
  - File Type: .tar
  - File Name: Special characters are NOT allowed.
  - File Size: Up to 100 MB

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > System Prompt.
- 2. Upload the custom system prompt.
  - a. Click Upload System Prompts.
  - b. In the pop-up window, select a .tar file from your local PC, click Open.
  - The uploaded prompt file is displayed on System Prompt list.
- 3. In the Default column, set the desired system prompt to default.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

The prompt is applied to the system.

# Music on Hold

# Set up a Custom MoH Playlist

Music on Hold (MoH) is intended to reassure callers that they are connected to their calls. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition has a default local audio playlist with built-in MoH files. This topic describes how to set up and use a custom MoH playlist.

## **Background information**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports two types of MoH playlists:

- Local audio MoH playlist
- <u>Streaming music MoH playlist</u>

Playlist Type	Description
Local audio MoH playlist	This type of playlist contains a list of audio files that are up- loaded to the system, and play back when a caller is placed on hold.
	For more information, see <u>Set up a local audio MoH playlist</u> .

Playlist Type	Description
Streaming music MoH playlist	This type of playlist contains a URL that is used to connect to a live audio feed from a particular source.
	For more information, see <u>Set up a streaming music MoH</u> <u>playlist</u> .

## Set up a local audio MoH playlist

#### Requirements

The audio files to be uploaded must meet the following requirements:

Item	Requirements
File Format	.wav, .mp3, or .gsm • PCM, 8K, 16bit, 128kbps • A-law(g.711), 8k, 8bit, 64kbps • u-law(g.711), 8k, 8bit, 64kbps
	<i>i</i> Tip: If file format does not meet the requirement, you can <u>convert audio files via WavePad or G711 File Con-</u> <u>verter online</u> .
File Size	Up to 8 MB

#### Limitations

Item	Limitations
Max. local audio MoH playlists	16
Max. audio files in a playlist	8

Step1. Add a local audio MoH playlist

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Music on Hold.
- 2. Create a new playlist.
  - a. Click Create New Playlist.
  - b. In the pop-up window, configure the playlist.
    - Playlist Type: Select Local Audio.
      - Playlist Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.

- Play Order: Decide whether to play the playlist alphabetically or randomly.
- c. Click Save.
- 3. Add one or more audio files to the playlist.
  - a. Select the created playlist, click M.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click Upload.
  - c. Click Browse to choose the desired audio file, then click Upload.
  - d. Optional: To add more audio files, repeat step b-c.

The uploaded audio files are displayed on the MoH Files list.

- 4. Optional: Check sound quality and completeness of the audio files.
  - a. On MoH Files page, select the desired audio file, click 🕑.
  - b. In the pop-up window, set where to play the audio file.
    - In the Play on Web section, click 🕑 to play the audio file.
    - In the Extension drop-down list, select an extension and click Play.

PBX will call and play the audio file to the extension.

- c. Click OK.
- 5. Click Apply.

Step2. Change the system MoH playlist

- 1. Click Prompt Preferences tab.
- 2. In the Music on Hold drop-down list, select the desired playlist.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.
- Result

When a call is put on hold, the system will play audio files in the playlist to the waiting party.

#### Set up a streaming music MoH playlist

Limitation

Max. streaming music MoH playlists: 5

Step1. Add a streaming music MoH playlist

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Music on Hold.
- 2. Create a new playlist.
  - a. Click Create New Playlist.
  - b. In the pop-up window, configure the playlist.
    - Playlist Type: Select Streaming Music.
    - Playlist Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.

- Streaming Music URL: Enter the URL of an existing music stream.
- c. Click Save.
- 3. Click Apply.

Step2. Change the system MoH playlist

- 1. Click Prompt Preferences tab.
- 2. In the Music on Hold drop-down list, select the desired playlist.
- 3. Click Save and Apply.

#### Result

When a call is put on hold, the system will play the streaming music from the URL to the waiting party.

#### 🚽 Note:

If PBX can not access the URL or if there is no available audio in the URL, the system will not play any sound to the waiting party.

# Manage MoH Playlists

This topic describes how to edit or delete MoH playlists.

#### Edit a MoH playlist

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Music on Hold.
- 2. Select the desired playlist, click  $\angle$ .
- 3. Edit the playlist according to your needs.
  - Playlist Name: Change the playlist name.
  - Play Order: Decide whether to play the playlist alphabetically or randomly.

#### - Note:

This option is only available for Local Audio MoH Playlists.

• Streaming Music URL: Change the URL of the streaming music.

#### 🚽 Note:

This option is only available for Streaming Music MoH Playlists.

4. Click Save and Apply.

#### **Delete MoH playlists**

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Music on Hold.

- 2. Select the desired playlist, click  $\mathbf{\overline{\square}}$ .
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.
- 4. Click Apply.

If the deleted playlist is used for <u>Music on Hold</u> or <u>Music on Hold for Call Forwarding</u>, the system will not play any sound to the party who is put on hold during a call or call forward-ing.

# Manage MoH Audio Files

This topic describes how to manage audio files of a local audio MoH playlist.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Music on Hold.
- 2. In the Operations column, click 🔤 beside the desired local audio MoH playlist.
- 3. In the pop-up window, manage MoH audio files according to your needs, then click OK.
  - To upload an audio file, click Upload and select the desired file.
  - To listen to an audio file, click  $\bigcirc$ , decide whether to play the audio file to an extension or on web.
  - To download an audio file, click igodot.
  - To delete an audio file, click ៉.
- 4. Click OK and Apply.

# **Configure Call Forwarding Prompt**

This topic describes how to configure call forwarding prompt.

## Background information

Call forwarding prompt is used to prompt a caller that the call is forwarded to another destination. By default, when PBX is forwarding an incoming call to another number, the PBX will play the call forwarding prompt "please hold when I try to locate the person you are calling", and then play the MoH music. If you do not want the caller to find out that the call is being forwarded, you can disable Play Call Forwarding Prompt.

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Prompt Preferences.
- 2. Unselect the checkbox of Play Call Forwarding Prompt.
- 3. Optional: To change MoH music, select Music on Hold or Ringing Tone from the dropdown list of Music on Hold for Call Forwarding.

## 📑 Note:

The Music on Hold is the playlist that you have defined in Music on Hold (PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Prompt Preferences > Music on Hold).

4. Click Save and Apply.

# **Custom Prompt**

# **Record a Custom Prompt**

This topic describes how to record a custom prompt on a phone.

## Prerequisites

At least one extension is ready for use.

## Limitation

Maximum Number of Extensions (N)	N ≤50	50 < N ≤ 200	N > 200
Max number of Cus- tom Prompts	64	128	128

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt.
- 2. Record a custom prompt.
  - a. Click Record New.

A window pops up.

- b. In the Name field, enter a name to help you identify the prompt.
- c. In the Extension drop-down list, select an extension to record the prompt.
- d. Click Record.

The system places a call to the selected extension. After you answer the call, you will hear a prompt for the recording.

e. Record your prompt on the phone.

When done, hang up or press the # key.

## Result

Refresh the web page and click Custom Prompt tab.

The recorded prompt is displayed on the Custom Prompt page.

- To listen to the prompt, click  $oldsymbol{ imes}$ .
- To change the voice content, click  ${}^{igodoldsymbol{ heta}}$  to record again.

# Upload a Custom Prompt

This topic describes how to upload a custom prompt.

#### Prerequisites

Prepare an audio file that meets the following requirements:

- File format: .wav, .mp3, or .gsm
  - PCM, 8K, 16bit, 128kbps
  - A-law(g.711), 8k, 8bit, 64kbps
  - u-law(g.711), 8k, 8bit, 64kbps

#### 👔 Tip:

If the audio file does not meet the requirements, you can <u>convert the audio file via</u> WavePad or G711 File Converter online.

• File size: Up to 8MB.

#### Limitation

Maximum Number of Extensions (N)	N ≤50	50 < N ≤ 200	N > 200
Max number of Cus- tom Prompts	64	128	128

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt.
- 2. Click Upload.
- 3. In the pop-up window, select an audio file from your local PC and click Open.

#### Result

The uploaded file is displayed on Custom Prompt page.

# Manage Custom Prompts

This topic describes how to manage custom prompts, such as re-record, play, download, and delete a prompt.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Voice Prompt > Custom Prompt.
- 2. In the Operations column, manage custom prompts according to your needs.
  - To re-record a prompt, click  $\mathcal{Q}$ , select an extension to record.
  - To listen to a prompt, click O, decide whether to play the audio file to an extension or on web.
  - To download a prompt, click igodot.
  - To delete a prompt, click 🛄, click OK and Apply.

### **Convert Audio Files**

This topic describes how to convert audio files via WavePad or G711 File Converter online.

#### **Background information**

Audio files to be uploaded as MoH files or custom prompts must <u>meet the requirements</u>. If your audio file does not meet the requirement, you can use audio editor to convert file format.

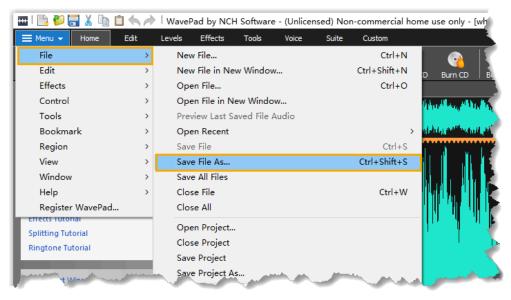
In this topic, we take the followings as examples to show you how to convert file format.

- <u>Convert Audio Files via WavePad</u>
- <u>Convert Audio Files Online</u>

#### Convert audio files via WavePad

To use WavePad to convert audio files to new formats, download <u>WavePad</u> to your local PC, and proceed as follows.

- 1. Launch WavePad, open your audio file.
- 2. Click File > Save File As.



3. In the Save as type drop-down list, select Wave(\*.wav), MPEG Layer-3(\*.mp3), or GSM(\*.gsm), click Save.

time	
· → · ↑ ♪	Wave (*.wav)
1	MPEG Layer-1 (*.mp1)
Organize 🔻 🛛 Ne	MPEG Layer-2 (*.mp2)
	MPEG Layer-3 (*.mp3)
🗧 🧑 print	Windows Media Audio (*.wma)
🔜 🛃 web-client-us	Ogg Vorbis (*.ogg)
	Opus (*.opus)
OneDrive	Apple AIFF(*.aif, *.aiff, *.aifc)
Onconve	iPhone铃声(*.m4r)
This PC	Sun AU (*.au)
THIS PC	FLAC (*.flac)
🔪 🧊 3D Objects	AAC (*.aac)
	MPEG-4a Audio (*.m4a)
🔊 👩 Desktop	MPEG-4b Audio (*.m4b)
🦕 🔮 Documents	GSM (*.gsm)
	Dialogic Vox (*.vox)
Downloads	Raw Audio (*.raw)
Music	RSS Podcast Audio (*.rss)
	AMR Narrowband Audio (*.amr)
Pictures	Musepack Audio (*.mpc)
5	Monkey's Audio Codec (*.ape)
File name:	Speex (*.spx)
	Scribe (*.dct)
Save as type:	Wave (*.wav) V
1	
Č.	
<ul> <li>Hide Folders</li> </ul>	Save Cancel
<u></u>	

4. If you save the audio file as Wave(\*.wav) or MPEG Layer-3(\*.mp3), you need to configure the encoder options and click OK.

#### - Note:

Select any one of the encoders, and configure relevant options as below.

- PCM Uncompressed, Mono, 8000 Hz, 16 bits Integer
- CCITT A-law, Mono, 8000 Hz, 8 bits Integer
- CCITT u-law, Mono, 8000 Hz, 8 bits Integer

Wave Encoder Options		?	×
Settings:	Custom		$\sim$
Encoding:	PCM Uncompressed		$\sim$
Channels:	Mono		$\sim$
Sample rate:	8000 Hz		$\sim$
Sample size:	16 bits Integer		$\sim$
Enable Shaped Dithering			
Restore Defaults	OK Cancel	Help	

#### Convert audio files online

If you don't want to download an app, you can quickly convert your audio files via G711 File Converter online.

- 1. Go to <u>g711.org</u>.
- 2. Click Browse to upload your audio file.
- 3. Set the Output Format.

#### Note:

Select any one of u-law WAV (8Khz, Mono, u-law), a-law WAV (8Khz, Mono, a-law), and Standard Definition WAV (8Khz, Mono, 16-Bit PCM).

This free tool will convert just about any DRM-free media file in with most telephony vendors' Music on Hold and IVR Announce	
Source File	
C:\fakepath\whatif123.mp3	Browse
Note: 50MB Maximum File Size	
Output Format	
u-law WAV (8Khz, Mono, u-law)	
<ul> <li>a-law WAV (8Khz, Mono, a-law)</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Standard Definition WAV (8Khz, Mono, 16-Bit PCM)</li> </ul>	
High Definition WAV (16Khz, Mono, 16-Bit PCM)	
Asterisk G.722 (16Khz, Mono, G.722)	
Asterisk G.729 (8Khz, Mono, G.729)	
Asterisk RAW (8Khz, Mono, RAW)	
Development (Non-Functional: Coming Soon)	
Volume	
Quiet Lower O Medium High	Maximum

4. Click Submit to start converting the file.

### Audio Files Requirements

This topic describes the requirements for audio files to be uploaded to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### Applications of audio files

You may need to upload a custom audio file in the following scenarios:

- Voicemail greetings
- Custom prompt
- Local audio MoH playlists

#### Audio file requirements

Audio files to be uploaded to the PBX must meet the following requirements:

Option	Requirement
File Name	Should NOT contain special characters.
File Size	Up to 8 MB.

Option	Requirement
File Format	.wav, .mp3, Or .gsm.
	<ul> <li>PCM, 8K, 16bit, 128kbps</li> <li>A-law (g.711), 8k, 8bit, 64kbps</li> <li>u-law (g.711), 8k, 8bit, 64kbps</li> </ul>

# **SIP Settings**

This topic describes the SIP settings on the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition for reference.

The SIP configurations require professional knowledge of SIP protocol, incorrect configuration may cause calling issues on the SIP extensions and SIP trunks.

Go to PBX Settings > SIP Settings to configure SIP settings.

#### SIP general settings

Table 42.

Setting	Description	
Basic Settings		
SIP UDP Port	UDP Port used for SIP registration. The default value is 5060.	
SIP TCP Port	TCP Port used for SIP registration. The default value is 5060.	
SIP Endpoint Registrat	tion Timer	
Max Registration Time (s)	Maximum duration (in seconds) of incoming registrations and subscriptions.	
Min Registration Time (s)	Minimum duration (in seconds) of incoming registrations and subscriptions.	
Qualify Frequency (s)	How often to send SIP OPTIONS packet to SIP device to check if the device is up.	
Outbound SIP Registration Timer		
Registration At- tempts	The number of registration attempts before giving up (0 indi- cates no limit).	
Default Registration Time(s)	Default registration duration (in seconds).	
	PNote:	

#### Table 42. (continued)

· · · · ·	
Setting	Description
	The actual duration needs to subtract 10 seconds from the value you fill in.
SIP Endpoint Subscrip	tion Timer
Max Subscription Time(s)	Maximum duration (in seconds) of incoming subscriptions.
Min Subscription Time(s)	Minimum duration (in seconds) of incoming subscriptions.

#### SIP codec

A codec is a compression or decompression algorithm used in the transmission of voice packets over a network or the Internet.

#### Table 43.

Setting	Description
iLBC Mode	<ul> <li>The iLBC codec supports the following modes:</li> <li>20 ms</li> <li>30 ms</li> <li>To get better voice quality, you need to set the iLBC mode according to your SIP endpoints.</li> </ul>
Codec Selection	<ul> <li>Select the codec.</li> <li>Available values: u-law, a-law, GSM, H264, VP8, H263, H263P, i-LBC, G722, G726, SPEEX, ADPCM, G729A, MPEG4, Opus.</li> <li>Note:</li> <li>To ensure that users can have audio calls on Linkus Web Client, you must enable at least any one of u-law, a-law, or G722.</li> <li>To ensure that users can have video calls on Linkus Web Client after you subscribe Yeastar P-Series Ultimate Plan, you must enable either VP8 or H264.We recommend that you enable VP8 or set VP8 to a higher priority.</li> </ul>

### TLS settings

Setting	Description
TLS	Enable or disable TLS.
SIP TLS Port	TLS port used for SIP registration. The default value is 5061.
When PBX acting as a Se	ver
TLS Verify Client	Verify client certificate when PBX acts as a server.
	Note: If enabled, you need to upload a client certificate to the PBX and TLS client.
When PBX acting as a Cli	ent
TLS Connection Method	<ul><li>Specify a protocol for outbound client connections.</li><li>TLS V1.0</li><li>TLS V1.2</li></ul>
	F Note: It's recommended to use the more secure TLS V1.2.
TLS Verify Server	Verify server certificate when PBX acts as a client.
	Note: If enabled, you need to upload a server certificate to the PBX.

#### Session Timer

A periodic refreshing of a SIP session that allows both user agent and proxy to determine if the SIP session is still active.

Setting	Description
Session Timer	Select a session timer mode.
	<ul> <li>No: Do not include "timer" value in any field.</li> <li>Supported: Include "timer" value in Supported header.</li> <li>Required: Include "timer" value in Required header.</li> <li>Forced: Include "timer" value in both Supported and Required header.</li> </ul>

Setting	Description
Session-Expires (s)	The max refresh interval in seconds.
Min-SE (s)	The min refresh interval in seconds. The value should not be smaller than 90.

#### QoS

Quality of Service (QoS) is a major issue in VoIP implementations. The issue is how to guarantee that packet traffic for a voice or other media connection will not be delayed or dropped due to interference from other traffic of lower priority.

When the network capacity is insufficient, QoS can provide users with priority by setting the value.

Setting	Description	
ToS (Type of Service	ToS (Type of Service)	
ToS SIP	Type of Service for SIP packets.	
ToS Audio	Type of Service for RTP audio packets.	
ToS Video	Type of Service for RTP video packets.	
CoS (Class of Service)		
Cos SIP	Class of Service for SIP packets.	
Cos Audio	Class of Service for RTP audio packets.	
Cos Video	Class of Service for RTP video packets.	

#### T.38

Adjust T.38 settings if T.38 Fax doesn't work.

Setting	Description
T.38 Max BitRate	Adjust the max BitRate for T.38 fax.
No T.38 Attributes in re-IN- VITE SDP	If enabled, SDP re-invite packet will not contain T.38 at- tributes.
Error Correction Mode	Enable or disable Error Correction for the fax.

### Advanced SIP settings

Setting	Description		
Incoming Caller ID/DID Retrieval			
Get Caller ID From	Decide the system will retrieve Caller ID from which header field. • From • Contact • Remote-Party-ID • P-Asserted-Identity • P-Preferred-Identity		
Get DID From	Decide the system will retrieve DID from which header field. • To • Invite • Diversion • Remote-Party-ID • P-Asserted-Identity • P-Preferred-Identity • P-Called-Party-ID • Note: If Remote-Party-ID is selected but the SIP trunk doesn't support this, the system will retrieve DID from Invite header.		
SIP Request Header	·		
User Agent	Set the user agent that will be included when sending SIP packages out.		
Internal Alert Info	Set an "alert info text" to add to Alert-info header in IN- VITE request for internal calls. When receiving an internal call, the phone will inspect "Alert-Info" header to determine which ring tone it		
	should use for ringing.		
Other Options			
Support Message Request	Whether to support SIP Message Request or not.		
Inband Progress	Whether to enable inband progress or not. The Inband Progress setting applies to all the extensions.		

Setting	Description
	Note: To configure global Inband Progress setting, you need to contact Yeastar support to configure a custom con- figuration file.
	<ul> <li>Check this option: PBX will send a 183 Session Progress to the extension when told to indicate ringing and immediately start sending ringing as audio.</li> <li>Uncheck this option: PBX will send a 180 Ringing to the extension when told to indicate ringing, but will NOT send it as audio.</li> </ul>
Enable uaCSTA Connection	If this option is enabled, the PBX will allow user agent Computer Supported Telecommunications Application (uaCSTA) to remotely control the IP phone via Linkus Web Client CTI or Linkus Desktop Client CTI.
	Note: Your IP phone should support uaCSTA standard to use this function.

# **Jitter Buffer**

### **Jitter Buffer Overview**

This topic describes what is and when to use jitter buffer, and introduces two jitter buffer types supported on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### What is jitter buffer

Jitter is a variation between the time that voice packets are sent and received. For example, two packets may arrive at the same time, or out of order due to network congestion, which can cause the problem of audio quality. In this case, jitter buffer can be used to arrange packets according to their expected timing values.

#### Jitter buffer types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports two types of jitter buffer:

• Fixed jitter buffer: The fixed jitter buffer has a fixed size and the packets leaving the jitter buffer have a constant delay.

• Adaptive jitter buffer: Adapting to network's delay, the adaptive jitter buffer has a variable size and the packets leaving the jitter buffer have a variable delay.

#### When to use jitter buffer

If you have networking issues like packet loss or packets arriving out of order, you can enable jitter buffer to improve call quality.

#### Packets loss

If the packets are partially lost, the jitter buffer inserts the lost frame and passes them on in an evenly spaced continuous stream.

Packets arriving out of order

If the arriving packets are out of order, the jitter buffer inserts the packets into the buffer in the correct order, and passes them on in the expected order.

For more information of jitter buffer configuration, see Configure Jitter Buffer.

### **Configure Jitter Buffer**

This topic describes how to configure jitter buffer on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### **Background information**

If you have networking issues like <u>packet loss</u> or <u>packets arriving out of order</u>, you can enable jitter buffer to improve call quality.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to PBX Settings > Jitter Buffer.
- 2. Enable Jitter Buffer.
- 3. To enable jitter buffer for trunks, select the desired trunks from Available box to Selected box.

The outbound audio through the selected trunk will be dejittered on the other side.

4. To enable jitter buffer for extensions, select the desired extensions from Available box to Selected box.

The received audio on the selected extensions will be dejittered.

- 5. In the Implementation drop-down list, select the implementation of jitter buffer.
  - Adaptive: Adapting to network's delay, the adaptive jitter buffer has a variable size and the packets leaving the jitter buffer have a variable delay. If you choose the option, specify the adjustment size and the max jitter buffer size as follows.
    - Adaptive Adjustment Size (ms): The size of each adaptive adjustment of jitter buffer. The default value is 50. If you retain the default value, the jitter buffer size will be adjusted dynamically based on current network condition. It will start from 0 ms and grow at a size of 50 ms each time.

- Max Jitter Buffer Size (ms): The maximum value of adaptive jitter buffer. The default value is 200.
- Fixed: The fixed jitter buffer has a fixed size and the packets leaving the jitter buffer have a constant delay.

If you choose the option, enter a value in the Jitter Buffer Size (ms) field. The default value is 200.

6. Click Save and Apply.

# Date and Time

### Change System Time Manually

In case you want to change system time when the PBX can not access the Internet, you can change system time manually. This topic describes how to manually change system time to your local time.

#### **Background information**

To ensure that the time of logs and CDRs generated on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is consistent with your local time, you need to adjust system time to your local time.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Date and Time.
- 2. In the Date and Time section, set your local date and time.
  - a. In the Time Zone drop-down list, select your current time zone.
  - b. Optional: Configure Daylight Saving Time according to your needs.
- 3. In the Display Format section, set the display format of date and time.
  - Date Display Format
    - Year/Month/Day
    - Month/Day/Year
    - Day/Month/Year
  - Time Display Format
    - 12-hour format
    - 24-hour format
- 4. Click Save and Apply.
- 5. Reboot the PBX to take effect.

#### Result

The current system time is updated; the time of logs and CDRs are also updated.

# **Email Server**

### **Email Server Overview**

This topic describes SMTP server, email template, email daily sending limit, and email sent logs.

#### Email server

Emails to users or the administrator are required in the following situations:

- Send Linkus welcome email.
- Send fax to email.
- Send voicemail to email.
- Send event notifications.

You can use the default SMTP server or custom SMTP server to send emails.

For the default SMTP server, see <u>Set up Default SMTP Server as an Email Server</u>.

For the custom SMTP server, see <u>Set up Gmail as an Email Server</u> and <u>Set up Outlook as an Email Server</u>.

#### Email template

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition has default email templates for different events, you can also customize email templates according to your needs.

For more information, see <u>Customize Email Templates</u>.

#### Email daily sending limit

If you use custom email server to send emails, you need to know that email server may limit the number of emails that users can send per day to keep system healthy and account safe.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition obtains the quantity from the email server. If reaching the sending limit, users can NOT send emails via the email server.

#### Email sent logs

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides email sent logs, which allows you to monitor mail delivery, and offers you error messages to help you troubleshoot delivery issues more quickly.

For more information, see Email Sent Logs.

### Set up Default SMTP Server as an Email Server

This topic describes how to set up default SMTP server as the email server of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Email > Email Server.
- 2. In the Type of Email Server drop-down list, select Default SMTP Server.
- 3. Test if the email server can successfully send emails.
  - a. Click Test.
  - b. In the pop-up window, enter a recipient's email address in the Email Address field.
  - c. Click Test.

#### Result

- If the test email is sent successfully, the page displays "Success" and the recipient's mailbox would receive the email.
- If the test email is failed to be sent, the page displays "Failed to send" and prompts you an error message. You can check the error in <u>Email Sent Logs</u>.

### Set up Gmail as an Email Server

This topic describes how to set up Gmail as an email server in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### Prerequisites

Make sure Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can access Google Server.

#### Step1. Create an app password on Google Account

To ensure that the PBX can access Gmail server, you need to turn on 2-Step verification and create an app password as follows.

- 1. Sign in to <u>Google Account</u> by your Gmail account.
- 2. On the left navigation bar, click Security.
- 3. Turn on 2-Step Verification.
  - a. In the Signing in to Google section, click 2-Step Verification and enter your Gmail password to verify your account.
  - b. On the 2-Step Verification page, click GET STARTED and enter your Gmail password to verify your account.
  - c. Select a verification method, verify your account according to the prompt.
  - d. Click TURN ON to turn on 2-step verification.

← 2-Step Verification
It worked! Turn on 2-Step Verification?
Now that you've seen how it works, do you want to turn on 2-Step Verification for your Google Account becky6235l@gmail.com?
Step 3 of 3 TURN ON

- 4. Right above the page, click  $\leftarrow$  to back to the security page.
- 5. Create an app password.
  - a. In the Signing in to Google section, click App passwords and enter your Gmail password to verify your account.
  - b. In the Select app drop-down list, select Other (Custom name).
  - c. In the text field, enter a name to help you identify the app password. For example, enter Yeastar PBX.
  - d. Click GENERATE.

← App passw	ords	
111 5 0	in to your Google Account from apps o to enter it once so you don't need to r	
You don't have any app	asswords.	
Select the app and devi	e for which you want to generate the	app password.
Yeastar PBX	×	
		GENERATE

An app password is generated. Note down the password, which is used to verify your Gmail account when you configure Gmail as the mail server in the PBX.

securesally@gmail.com       the application or device you are trying to s         up. Replace your password with the 16-       character password shown above.         Just like your normal password, this app       password grants complete access to your		Your app password for your device
Email       Go to the settings for your Google Account         securesally@gmail.com       the application or device you are trying to s         Password       up. Replace your password with the 16-         character password shown above.       Just like your normal password, this app         password grants complete access to your       Google Account. You won't need to remember		jpko fwxn igsh jqbz
anyone.	securesally@gmail.com	Go to the settings for your Google Account in the application or device you are trying to set up. Replace your password with the 16- character password shown above. Just like your normal password, this app password grants complete access to your Google Account. You won't need to remembe it, so don't write it down or share it with

#### Step2. Configure Gmail as mail server of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

To ensure that the PBX can access Gmail server via your Google account, you need to proceed as follows:

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Email > Email Server.
- 2. In the Type of Email Server drop-down list, select Custom Email Server.
- 3. Configure email server settings.
  - Sender Email Address: Enter your Gmail address, which will appear as the From address for outgoing emails sent by the PBX.
  - Email Address or Username: Enter your Gmail address.
  - Password: Enter the 16-digit app password, which is used to access Gmail server.
  - Outgoing Mail Server (SMTP): Retain the default value smtp.gmail.com.
  - Port: Retain the default value 587.
  - Enable TLS Encryption: Keep the option unselected.
- 4. Test if the mail server can successfully send emails.
  - a. Click Test.
  - b. In the pop-up window, enter a recipient's email address in the Email Address field.
  - c. Click Test.
- 5. Click Save.

#### Result

- If the test email is sent successfully, the page displays "Success" and the recipient's mailbox would receive the email.
- If the test email is failed to be sent, the page displays "Failed to send" and prompts you an error message. You can check the error in <u>Email Sent Logs</u>.

### Set up Outlook as an Email Server

This topic describes how to set up Outlook as an email server in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

#### Step1. Create an app password on Microsoft Account

To ensure that PBX can access Outlook server via your Microsoft account, you need to turn on 2-Step verification and create an app password as follows.

- 1. Sign in to Microsoft Account.
- 2. At the top navigation bar, click Security tab and enter your Outlook password to verify your account.
- 3. Turn on 2-Step Verification.
  - a. In the Two-step verification section, click Turn on, and verify your account according to the prompt.

 Microsoft account Your info	Privacy	Security	Payment & billing $ \smallsetminus $	Services & subscriptions	Devices Family
Security				Change password Last update: 7/1/2020 Change >	℃ Two-step verification OFF Turn on ≻

- b. In the Two-step verification section, click Set up two-step verification.
- c. Read the tips and click Next.
- d. In the Verify my identity with drop-down list, select a method and verify your account according to the prompt.

Two-step verification is enabled.

- 4. Create an app password.
  - a. At the top navigation bar, click Security tab.
  - b. In the Two-step verification section, click Manage.
  - c. In the App passwords section, click Create a new app password.

Use this app password to sign in
Enter the app password below in the password field of the app or device that can't accept security codes. If you're not sure how to update your app or device with an app password, follow these steps.
App password pvqyxftoubbiwylg
For each app or device that can't accept security codes, you need to create a new app password to use instead.
Create another app password
Done

An app password is generated. Note down the password, which is used to verify your Outlook account when you configure Outlook as the mail server of the PBX.

#### Step2. Configure Outlook as email server of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

To ensure that the PBX can access and send mails from Outlook server via your Microsoft account, you should proceed as follows:

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Email > Email Server.
- 2. In the Type of Email Server drop-down list, select Custom Email Server.
- 3. Configure email server settings.
  - Sender Email Address: Enter your Outlook address, which will appear as the From address for outgoing emails sent by the PBX.
  - Email Address or Username: Enter your Outlook address.
  - Password: Enter the 16-digit app password, which is used to access Outlook server.
  - Outgoing Mail Server (SMTP): Retain the default value smtp-mail.outlook.com.
  - Port: Retain the default value 587.
  - Enable TLS Encryption: Keep the option unselected.
- 4. Test if the mail server can successfully send emails.
  - a. Click Test.
  - b. In the pop-up window, enter a recipient's email address in the Email Address field.
  - c. Click Test.
- 5. Click Save.

#### Result

- If the test email is sent successfully, the page displays "Success" and the recipient's mailbox would receive the email.
- If the test email is failed to be sent, the page displays "Failed to send" and prompts you an error message. You can check the error in <u>Email Sent Logs</u>.

### **Customize Email Templates**

This topic describes how to customize email notification language and email templates.

#### **Background information**

If you have enabled notification for a specific event, and have chosen to send emails to notify contacts, the system will send emails in the pre-configured email template to inform contacts when the event is triggered.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides the following types of email templates:

- Operations: Changes of password and login status.
- Telephony: SIP trunk registration and emergency calling.
- System: System performance, such as new system firmware detected, system upgrade completed, etc.
- Security: Such as web login block, auto defense, etc.
- Event Reminder: Reminders related with the subscribed plan and services.
- Email: Email notifications related with extensions.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Email > Email Templates.
- 2. Set the language of notification emails.

#### 🗾 Note:

If you fail to find the desired language, you can update templates based on English.

- a. Click Notification Email Language.
- b. In the pop-up window, select a language from the drop-down list.
- c. Click Save.

The system will send emails in the selected language.

- 3. Edit a desired email template.
  - a. In the Email Templates list, click  $\checkmark$  beside the desired email template.
  - b. In the Template drop-down list, select Custom.
  - c. Edit email subject and content according to your needs.

#### = Note:

Images, videos, and audios are not supported.

4. Click Save and Apply.

### **Email Sent Logs**

This topic introduces email sent logs and describes how to query logs.

#### Email sent logs overview

Email sent logs allow you to monitor mail delivery and provide you with error messages to help you troubleshoot delivery issues more quickly.

Auto cleanup of email sent logs

By default, when logs reach 50,000, the newest logs will replace the oldest logs. You can change the value, or restrict how long logs can be saved.

For more information, see <u>Auto Cleanup Settings</u>.

#### Query email sent logs

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Email > Email Sent Logs.
- 2. Query logs by the following criteria according to your needs.
  - Send Result: Query all logs or query logs by send result.
  - Email Template Name: Query logs by email template.
  - Generated Time: Query logs by the generated date and time.
  - Email Recipient: Query logs by emails' recipients.

After logs are filtered, you can hover your mouse over Failed beside the failed log to check the error message.

Generated Time	Email Template Name	Email Recipient	Last Send Time	Send Result	Return Code
08/13/2020 14:46:26	Extension User Password Changed	becky@yeastar.com	08/13/2020 14:46:26	Succeeded	-
08/13/2020 14:45:56	Extension User Password Changed	becky@yeastar.com	08/13/2020 14:45:56	Succeeded Unknown mail server err	or.
08/13/2020 14:04:53	SLA Alarm Threshold Reached		08/13/2020 14:05:09	Failed	

### Storage

### Auto Cleanup Settings

Data of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is stored in a default storage area. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides an Auto Cleanup feature, which can automatically and periodically cleans up your CDR, voicemails, backup files, and logs (including event logs, email sent logs, operation logs, and system logs). This topic describes relevant configuration parameters of auto cleanup.

### CDR Auto Cleanup

#### Table 44.

Setting	Description
Max Number of CDR	Set the maximum number of CDR that should be retained.
	When it reaches 90% of the maximum number, the Auto Cleanup Reminder event will be triggered, the system will no- tify contacts concerned via specific methods.
	When it reaches the maximum number, the oldest CDR will be deleted.
	Default value: 200,000
	•
	Maximum value: 1,000,000
	•
CDR Preservation Days	Set the maximum number of days that CDR should be re- tained.
	When it reaches 90% of the maximum preservation days, the Auto Cleanup Reminder event will be triggered, the system will notify contacts concerned via specific methods.
	When it reaches the maximum preservation days, the oldest CDR will be deleted.
	Default value: 0, which means no limit.

### Voicemail Auto Cleanup

Table 45.

Setting	Description
Max Number of Voice- mail	Set the maximum number of voicemails that should be re- tained.
	When it reaches 90% of the maximum number, the Auto Cleanup Reminder event will be triggered, the system will notify contacts concerned via specific methods.
	When it reaches the maximum number, the oldest voice- mails will be deleted.

Setting	Description
	Default value: 100
	Maximum value: 500
Voicemail Preservation Days	Set the maximum number of days that voicemails should be retained.
	When it reaches 90% of the maximum preservation days, the Auto Cleanup Reminder event will be triggered, the system will notify contacts concerned via specific methods.
	When it reaches the maximum preservation days, the oldest voicemails will be deleted.
	Default value: 0, which means no limit.

### System Backup Files

Table 46.

Setting	Description
Max Number of Files	Set the maximum number of backup files that should be re- tained.
	When it reaches 90% of the maximum number, the Auto Cleanup Reminder event will be triggered, the system will notify contacts concerned via specific methods.
	When it reaches the maximum number, the oldest backup files will be deleted.
	Default value: 5
	Maximum value: 8

### Event Logs Auto Cleanup

Table 47.

Setting	Description
Max Number of Logs	Set the maximum number of event logs that should be re- tained. When it reaches the maximum number, the oldest event logs will be deleted.

Table 47. (	(continued)
10010 171 1	(continuou)

Setting	Description
	Some event logs are not allowed to be automatically cleaned up. When those logs reach 5,000, the oldest event logs will be deleted.
	Default value: 50,000 Maximum value: 1,000,000
Logs Preservation Days	Set the maximum number of days that event logs should be retained.
	When it reaches the maximum preservation days, the oldest event logs will be deleted.
	Default value: 0, which means no limit.

### Email Sent Logs Auto Cleanup

#### Table 48.

Setting	Description
Max Number of Logs	Set the maximum number of email sent logs that should be retained.
	When it reaches the maximum number, the oldest email sent logs will be deleted.
	Default value: 50,000
	Maximum value: 1,000,000
Logs Preservation Days	Set the maximum number of days that email sent logs should be retained.
	When it reaches the maximum preservation days, the oldest email sent logs will be deleted.
	Default value: 0, which means no limit.

### Operation Logs Auto Cleanup

Table 49.

Setting	Description
Max Number of Logs	Set the maximum number of operation logs that should be retained.

#### Table 49. (continued)

Setting	Description
	When it reaches the maximum number, the oldest operation logs will be deleted.
	Default value: 50,000
	Maximum value: 1,000,000
Logs Preservation Days	Set the maximum number of days that operation logs should be retained.
	When it reaches the maximum preservation days, the oldest operation logs will be deleted.
	Default value: 0, which means no limit.

#### System Logs Auto Cleanup

#### Table 50.

Setting	Description
(MB)	Set the maximum file size for a system log package.
	When it reaches the maximum file size, the oldest logs in the package will be deleted.
	Default value: 10
	•
Logs Preservation Days	Set the maximum number of days that a system log should be retained.
	Default value: 7
	Maximum value: 15

# **Event Notification**

### **Event Notification Overview**

Event Notification feature is designed to provide information about changes on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition and helps you monitor operations on the PBX. When an event occurs, the system will record the event and notify contacts concerned via specific methods. This topic describes event types, event levels, notification methods, notification email templates, and auto cleanup of events.

#### Event types

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following event types:

- <u>Operations</u>
- Telephony
- System
- Security
- <u>Reminder</u>

#### Table 51. Operations

Event	Description
Administrator Login Suc- cess	The administrator successfully logged in to the PBX management portal.
Web User Login Success	A user successfully logged in to the PBX web portal or the Linkus Web Client.
Web User Login Failed	A user failed to log in to PBX web portal or the Linkus Web Client.
Linkus Client Login Failed	An extension user failed to log in to Linkus Mobile Client or Linkus Desktop Client.
Administrator Password Changed	The administrator's password was changed.
Extension User Password Changed	An extension user's user password was changed.
RPS Request Success	The RPS request of the IP Phone(s) succeeded.
RPS Request Failed	The RPS request of the IP Phone(s) failed.
PBX Hot Standby Failover	A PBX failover has occurred, and the PBX system is tak- en over by the other server.
Secondary Server Takeover (For Only 30 Days)	The Primary Server was down and the Secondary Serv- er has taken over the PBX system. The Secondary Server will take over the system for only 30 days.
Secondary Server Will Ex- pire Soon	The Secondary Server that is taking over the PBX system is going to expire.
Primary Server Data Restoration Completed	The Primary Server is fixed and the data synchronization is completed now.
Both PBX Servers Failed to Function	Both the Primary Server and the Scondary Server of your PBX system were down.

### Table 51. Operations (continued)

Event	Description
Data Synchronization Error Due to Server Missing	The data synchronization could not function properly as the opposite PBX server is not detected.
Data Synchronization Error Due to Storage Missing	The data synchronization could not function properly as the storage device of the opposite PBX server is not de- tected.

#### Table 52. Telephony

Event	Description
SIP Trunk Registration Failed	Failed to register or connect to a SIP trunk.
SIP Trunk Re-registered	Successfully re-registered or re-connected to a SIP trunk.
Emergency Call Dialed Out	An extension user placed an emergency call.

#### Table 53. System

Event	Description	
Auto Cleanup Reminder	Reach 90% of the allowed storage limit.	
New System Firmware De- tected	The PBX automatically detected a new firmware version.	
System Upgrade Complet- ed	The PBX was upgraded.	
System Reboot	<ul> <li>Either of the following situations triggered the event:</li> <li>The PBX rebooted after configuration.</li> <li>The PBX automatically rebooted after system crash.</li> </ul>	
System Restore	The PBX was restored.	
Default SMTP Server Error	Default SMTP server failed to send emails. Provide the system will only notify the system vill only notify the sy	
	sion or Call Mobile. Please make sure these notification methods have been enabled in notification contacts.	

#### Table 53. System (continued)

Event	Description
Recording Usage is About to Reach the Capacity Limit	The recording is about to reach the total capacity limita- tion.

\_\_\_\_\_

#### Table 54. Security

Event	Description
Web User Locked Out	PBX blocked the source IP when either of the following situations was met:
	<ul> <li>Web Login failure for more than 5 times in 24 hours.</li> <li>More than 5 accounts were locked in 24 hours.</li> </ul>
Linkus User Blocked Out	PBX blocked the source IP when either of the following situations was met:
	<ul> <li>Login failure (Linkus Mobile Client or Linkus Desktop Client) for more than 5 times in 24 hours.</li> <li>More than 5 accounts were locked in 24 hours.</li> </ul>
Extension Registration Blocked Out	PBX blocked the source IP when either of the following situations was met:
	<ul> <li>Registration failure for more than 20 times.</li> <li>More than 3 accounts were locked.</li> </ul>
Auto Defense IP Blocked Out	The monitored service or port reached the limit of Num- ber of Packets during specific Time Interval.
Outbound Call Frequency Exceeded	An extension has exceeded the limit of Number of Calls during specified Time Period set in an Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rule.
Outbound Call to a Disal- lowed Country	An extension user made an outbound call to a disal- lowed country.
API Authentication Blocked Out	PBX blocked the source IP due to too many failed API authentication attempts.

#### Table 55. Reminder

Event	Description
Plan Expiration Reminder	The current plan will expire soon.

#### Table 55. Reminder (continued)

Event	Description
Video Conferencing Usage Has Reached 90% of Time Limit	Reach 90% of the annual time limit of video confer- encing.
Video Conferencing Usage Limit Reached	Reach annual usage limit of video conferencing.

#### Event levels

Event level is used to indicate how severe or important an event is. Choosing an appropriate level prevents recipients from receiving repetitive information.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following event levels:

- Information: Events that pass general information to recipients.
- Warning: Events that indicate specific components or applications are not in ideal states, and further action could result in errors.
- Alert: Events that indicate problems require timely attention.

#### Note:

- When an event occurs, the system gives you a pop-up reminder on the right of PBX web portal.
- For event whose default level is not Alert, the system will NOT give you a pop-up reminder even if you change the level from Information or Warning to Alert.

#### Notification contacts and methods

You can set notification contacts to internal users or external users, and notify users in the following ways when events occur:

- Send Email
- Call Extension
- Call Mobile

For more information, see Manage Notification Contacts.

#### Notification email templates

If notification method is set to Send Email for a specific contact, the system will send notification emails in corresponding email template when an event occurs. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides default email template for each event, you can also customize email templates according to your needs.

For more information, see <u>Customize Email Templates</u>.

### Auto cleanup of event logs

By default, when event logs reach 50,000, the system automatically deletes the oldest logs. You can change the value, or set the maximum days that logs can be retained.

For more information, see Auto Cleanup Settings.

### **Configure Event Notifications**

This topic describes how to configure event notifications.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Event Notification > Event Type.
- 2. In the Notification column, enable notifications for desired event.

Event Type	Notification Contacts	Event Logs		
peration				
Event Name		Event Level	Notification	Email Template
Administrator Logi	in Success	<ul> <li>Information</li> </ul>	-•	Ż
Web User Login St	Iccess	<ul> <li>Information</li> </ul>	0-	Ż
Web User Login Fa	iled	Information	0=	1

- 3. Configure notification settings for a desired event.
  - Event Level: A proper level helps you identify seriousness of an event. Use default level or select a level from the drop-down list.
  - Email Template: To customize template of the email that will be sent to relevant

contacts when the event occurs, click  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

 Notification Contacts: Add notification contacts and select proper notification methods.

For more information, see <u>Manage Notification Contacts</u>.

#### Result

When the event occurs, the followings can be achieved:

- The PBX sends notifications to relevant contacts via specific notification methods.
- On <u>Event Trend</u> section, the event is included in the statistics of corresponding event level.
- At the top right corner of the page, Ö automatically adds 1 in the color that indicates the event level.

- Note:

If default level for the event is Error, the system also gives you a pop-up reminder on the right of PBX web portal.

#### What to do next

At the top right corner, click  $\dot{\Box}$  to check event details.

### Manage Notification Contacts

This topic describes how to add, edit, or delete a notification contact.

#### Add a notification contact

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Event Notification > Notification Contacts, click Add.
- 2. In the pop-up window, configure contact settings.
  - Notification Contact: Select an internal user or set an external user. If you choose Custom, enter a name in the Contact Name field.
  - Notification Methods: Set how to notify the contact when events occur.
    - Call Extension: The PBX will call the extension number of the contact when an event occurs.
    - Send Email: The PBX will send notifications to the email address of the contact when an event occurs.
    - Call Mobile: The PBX will call the mobile number of the contact when an event occurs.

#### 🚽 Note:

To ensure that PBX can successfully call the mobile number, make sure that the <u>Prefix</u> is configured correctly according to the outbound route rule.

- The Event Levels to Notify: Select the level of events that you want to notify the contact. The contact will only receive notifications when events at the level occur.
- 3. Click Save.

#### Edit a notification contact

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Event Notification > Notification Contacts.
- 2. Select a desired contact, click **2**.

#### - Note:

To edit the event notifications of super administrator, click the 🔇 at the top-right corner and select Administrator Settings.

- 3. Change the notification methods and notification level according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save.

Delete notification contacts

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Event Notification > Notification Contacts.
- 2. Delete one or more contacts according to your needs.
  - To delete a contact, click 🔟 beside the desired contact, click OK.
  - To delete contacts in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired contacts, click Delete and OK.

The contacts are removed from the list, and will not receive notifications when events occur.

### Manage Event Logs

All the occurred events are saved in event logs so that you can trace the events. This topic describes how to view, download, and mark event logs as read.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to System > Event Notification > Event Logs.
- 2. Set the search criteria to search events.

Event Type	Notification Contacts	Event Logs		
event Type E	Event Level Status	Event Name	Time	
Operation $\lor$	● Informat∨ All	∨ All	✓ 09/15/2020 00:00:00 ~ 09/1	5/2020 23:59:59
L Download	Mark All as Read Event Type	Event Level	Event Name	Operations
09/15/2020 09:36:1	8 Operation	Information	Administrator Login Success	R
09/15/2020 09:34:2	1 Operation	Information	Web User Login Success	R
09/15/2020 09:34:0	9 Operation	Information	Extension User Password Changed	R
	4 Operation	Information	Web User Login Success	R
09/15/2020 09:33:4				

- Event Type: Search all the event logs or search logs by a specific event type.
- Event Level: Search all the event logs or search logs by a specific event level.
- Status: Search all the event logs or search logs by a specific acknowledgement status.
- Event Name: Search all the event logs or search a specific event.
- Time: Set the start date and end date of the events.

The matched events are displayed on the page.

- 3. Handle the searched events according to your needs.
  - To check log details, click 🗟 beside the desired event log.

The event log will be marked as read.

- To download all the searched logs, click Download.
- To mark all the searched logs as read, click Mark All as Read.

#### 🗐 Note:

At the top right corner, the number of unread events of the event level prompted on 泣 will be cleared.

⑦ ♠ ♣ Admin↓
Email Template

# Security

# Security Overview

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides robust security options to ensure a secure and reliable phone service to your business operation.

#### Allowed IPs

Allowed IPs is used to add specific IP addresses or domain names to the PBX allowlist to prevent from being blocked by the system.

For more information, see <u>Add an Allowed IP Address</u> and <u>Manage Allowed IP Addresses</u>.

#### **Blocked IPs**

The blocked IP addresses would be listed in the Blocked IPs. If a trusted IP address was blocked, you can go to Blocked IPs to delete the IP address.

For more information, see <u>Manage Blocked IP Addresses</u>.

#### **Outbound Call Frequency Restriction**

Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rule is used to limit the number of outbound calls over specified time period.

The PBX has a default rule to limit extension users to make maximum 5 outbound calls in 1 second.

You can also set up new rules according to your needs. For more information, see <u>Add an</u> <u>'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rule</u>.

#### **Console/SSH Access**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports SSH access. Technical supporter engineers can establish a temporary SSH connection on the PBX to check logs and debug the PBX.

For more information, see <u>Access the System via SSH</u>.

#### Allowed Country IPs

You can set up Allowed Country IPs to only allow specific countries or regions to access your phone system, thus preventing the situations that hackers remotely access your phone system to make international and long-distance calls, monitor conversations, or do other operations that may cause security threats to your phone system.

For more information, see <u>Restrict Specific Countries or Regions from Accessing Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition</u>.

### Allowed Country Codes

You can set up Allowed Country Codes to restrict users from making international calls to specific countries or regions, thus effectively preventing toll fraud.

For more information, see <u>Restrict International Calls to Specific Countries or Regions</u>.

#### Passwordless Login

If you need the service provider to access your PBX system for remote technical support, and don't want to expose the administrator account credentials, you can set up the PBX to allow passwordless login.

For more information, see <u>Allow Passwordless Login to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition</u>.

# Allowed IPs

### Add an Allowed IP Address

To prevent trusted IP address or domain from being blocked by the system, you can add desired IP addresses or domains to the allowlist.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Allowed IPs, click Add.
- 2. In the Name field, enter a name to help you identify the rule.
- 3. Optional: In the Description field, enter the rule description if necessary.
- 4. In the Type drop-down list, select the desired type.
  - IP Address: If you choose this type, enter an IP address in the IP Address field.
  - Domain: If you choose this type, enter a domain in the Domain field.
- 5. Click Save.

#### Result

For IP address or domain that is allowed to access the PBX, the system will always accept connections from the address.

### Manage Allowed IP Addresses

This topic describes how to edit or delete the allowed IP address or domain.

#### Edit an allowed IP address

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Allowed IPs.
- 2. Select the desired IP address or domain, click  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

- 3. Edit the IP address or domain according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save.

#### Delete allowed IP addresses

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Allowed IPs.
- 2. Delete one or more IP addresses or domains according to your needs.
  - To delete an IP address or domain, click 🛄, then click OK.
  - To delete IP addresses or domains in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired IP addresses, click Delete and OK.

# **Blocked IPs**

### Manage Blocked IP Addresses

This topic describes how to view or delete IP addresses that were blocked.

View blocked IP address

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Blocked IPs.
- 2. Check details of the IP address that was blocked.
  - Defense Type: The defense type.
  - Block Type: Whether an account or an IP address was blocked.
  - Block Range: The account range or port range that was blocked.
  - Time of Attack: The time that the blocked account or IP address tried to attack the system.
  - Protocol: The protocol that the blocked account or IP address tried to attack.
  - Attacked Port: The port that the blocked account or IP address tried to attack.
  - Source IP Address: The IP address from which the attack was originated.
  - Expiration Date: The date and time on which the block would expire.

Delete blocked IP address

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Blocked IPs.
- 2. Delete one or more IP addresses according to your needs.
  - To delete an IP address, click 🔟 beside the desired IP address, click OK.
  - To delete IP addresses in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired IP addresses, click Delete and OK.

# **Outbound Call Frequency Restriciton**

### Add an 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rule

For security purpose, we recommended that you use Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rule to restrict the outbound call frequency in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. The PBX has a default rule to limit extension users to make maximum 5 outbound calls in 1 second, you can also set up your own rules according to your need. With the restriction rules, the system can be protected against the threat of toll fraud.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Outbound Call Frequency Restriction, click Add.
- 2. In the pop-up window, configure the following settings:
  - a. In the Name field, set a name to help you identify the rule.
  - b. Click Add and set up the restriction parameters:
    - Number of Calls: Set the limit number of outbound calls.
    - Time Period: Set a specific time period, and then select the time unit as Minute(s) or Second(s).
  - c. Click Save and Apply.

#### What to do next

Apply the Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rule to limit the extensions. For more information, see Limit Outbound Call Frequency of an Extension.

### Manage 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rules

This topic describes how to edit or delete Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rules.

Edit an 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' rule

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Outbound Call Frequency Restriction.
- 2. Select the desired rule, click  $\checkmark$ .
- 3. Edit rule settings according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

#### Delete 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' rules

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Outbound Call Frequency Restriction.
- 2. Delete one or more rules according to your needs.

- To delete a rule, click 🔟 beside the desired rule, click OK.
- To delete rules in bulk, select the checkboxes of the desired rules, click Delete and OK.

## Export and Import 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rules

The Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rules configured in Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired Outbound Call Frequency Restrictions in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again.

## Export 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' rules

You can export all Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rules to a CSV file, and then make additions, removals, and changes to the file.

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Outbound Call Frequency Restriction.
- 2. Click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Outbound Call Frequency Restriction Rule Parameters</u>.

## Import 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' rules

We recommend that you export Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rules to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the import parameters meet requirements. For more information , see <u>Outbound Call Frequency Restriction</u> <u>Rule Parameters</u>.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Rules > Outbound Call Frequency Restriction.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The Outbound Call Frequency Restriction rules in the CSV file will be displayed in the Outbound Call Frequency Restriction list.

# Console/SSH Access

## Access the System via SSH

This topic takes Putty as an example to introduce you how to access Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition via SSH.

Procedure

- 1. Enable SSH, check SSH address, SSH port, console account, and console password on the PBX.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Settings > Console/SSH Access.
  - b. Enable SSH Access.
  - c. Set up the connection timeout in the pop-up window.
    - i. In the Timeout drop-down list, select the desired time.
    - ii. Click Save.

The SSH connection is enabled, and the countdown of connection time is displayed on the web page.

루 Note: You can rese	et the Timeout by clicking on the Reset Timeout $_\circ$	
- SSH Access	00:26:18	Reset Timeout

d. Check SSH address, SSH port, console account, and console password.

i	Tip:
С	lick 👾 to view the password.
_	

Console		
* Console Account	* Console Password	
support	kDmT2zb35H	© 0
SSH Access 00:19:05		Reset Timeo
SSH Address	SSH Port	
SSFI Address	oorri ort	

- 2. Enter access information on Putty.
  - a. In the Connection type field, choose SSH.
  - b. In the Host Name (or IP address) field, enter the SSH address of PBX.
  - c. In the Port field, enter the SSH port of PBX.

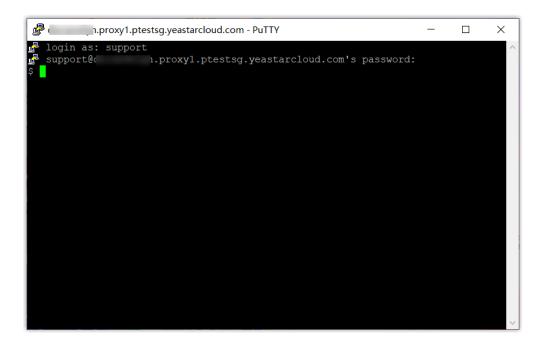
- d. Optional: On the left navigation bar, click Window > Lines of scrollback, set a scrollback line number, so that you can get sufficient lines of log for debug analysis.
- e. Click Open.

🕵 PuTTY Configuration		? ×
Category:		
Category: - Session - Logging - Terminal - Keyboard - Bell - Features - Window - Appearance - Behaviour - Translation - Selection - Colours - Connection - Data - Proxy - SSH - Serial - Telnet - Rlogin - SUPDUP	Basic options for your PuTTY ses Specify the destination you want to connect to Host Name (or IP address) 	Port 15025 t ~
		San GAIL
About Help	Open	Cancel

- 3. Verify your account and password.
  - a. In the login as field, enter support.
  - b. Copy console password from PBX.
  - c. In the password field, right click to paste the password.

## Result

If the following figure shows, you can successfully access and debug the PBX.



# Allowed Country IPs

## Restrict Specific Countries or Regions from Accessing Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

By default, all the countries and regions are allowed to access Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. Sometimes hackers may remotely access your phone system to make international and long-distance calls, monitor conversations, or do other operations that may cause security threats to your phone system. In this case, you can restrict specific countries or regions from accessing your phone system.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Settings > Allowed Country IPs.
- 2. Turn on the option Enable Allowed Country/Region IP Access Protection.

The system tries to identify whether the connection from your current IP address is accepted in the Allow IPs of your PBX.

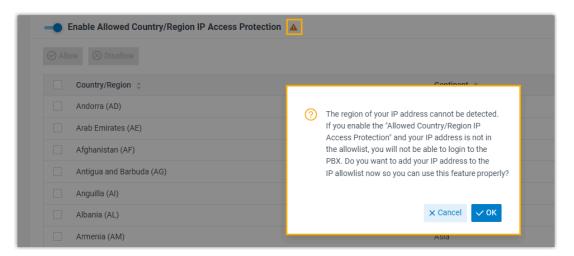
- 3. If current IP address is not accepted in the Allow IPs of your PBX, the system would try to identify the country/region from which your current IP address is originated. You need to allow connections from your current country/region. Otherwise, you can NOT enable and use the IP access protection feature.
  - If the system successfully detects your country/region, a warning icon A and a pop-up window will be displayed, prompting you to allow access for your current country/region.

Enable Allowed Country/Region IP Access Protection	<b>A</b>
Country/Region \$	Continent 👙
Andorra (AD)	
Arab Emirates (AE)	(?) It's detected that your login address is China, the People's Republic of China (PRC) (CN). To
Afghanistan (AF)	configure this feature, you will need to allow IP from China, the People's Republic of China (PRC)
Antigua and Barbuda (AG)	(CN) to access the PBX. Do you want to allow the access now?
Anguilla (AI)	
Albania (AL)	× Cancel V OK
Armenia (AM)	Asia

You should click OK to allow IPs from your current country/region to access the PBX. In doing so, the warning icon  $\triangle$  is disappeared, and operation status of your country/region is changed to  $\frown$ .

Enable Allowed Country/Region IP Access Protection			
⊘ Allow ⊗ Disallow		china Q	
Country/Region 💠	Continent 💠	Operations 💠	
China, the People's Republic of China (PRC) (CN)	Asia	-•	
China, Hong Kong S.A.R. (HK)	Asia	<b></b>	
Taiwan(Province of China) (TW)	Asia	0-	

• If the system fails to detect your country/region, a warning icon A and a popup window will be displayed, prompting you to allow access for your current IP address.



You should click OK to add your IP address to the Allow IPs. In doing so, the warning icon  $\triangle$  is disappeared, and connections from your IP address are accepted.

Tip:
 You can check the added IP address on Security > Security Rules > Allowed IPs.

Name	IP/Domain	Operations
Automatically add	142 148 28 15	2 🗇

4. To allow desired countries/regions to access the PBX, do as follows:

• To allow a country/region to access the PBX, do as follows:

Enable Allowed Country/Region IP Access Protection			
C Allow Disallow		a austr Q	
Country/Region 👙	Continent 💠	Operations 💠	
Austria (AT)	Europe	b 🗖	
Australia (AU)	Oceania	<b>~</b>	

- a. In the search box, enter a desired country or region.
- b. In the Operations column, set the status to 🔫 .
- To allow multiple countries/regions to access the PBX, do as follows:

Enable Allowed Country/Region IP Access Protection			
ØA	low Since Disallow		Search Q
	Country/Region 🚖	Continent 💠	Operations 👙
	Andorra (AD)	Europe	<b>—</b>
	Arab Emirates (AE)	Asia	<b>—</b>
	Afghanistan (AF)	Asia	<b>—</b>

- a. Select the checkboxes of desired countries or regions.
- b. Click Allow.

The status will be changed to 🔫 .

5. Click Apply.

#### Result

Only the devices with IP addresses originating from the allowed countries or regions can access the PBX.

## 🕡 Tip:

For the disallowed countries or regions, if you want to allow a specific IP address to access the PBX, you can add the IP address to Allowed IPs list. For more information, see <u>Add an</u> <u>Allowed IP Address</u>.

## Check Allowed Country/Region IP

By default, all the countries and regions are displayed in ascending (A to Z) alphabetical order, whether they are allowed to access Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition or not. To check the allowed country/region IP, you need to sort all the countries and regions again.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Settings > Allowed Country IPs.
- 2. Click beside Operations.

console/SSH Access	Allowed Country IPs	Allowed Country Codes		
Enable Allowed	Country/Region IP Access	Protection		
⊘ Allow ⊗ Disallov	N			Search Q
Country/Region	÷		Continent 🌲	Operations 💠
Andorra (AD)			Europe	0-
Arab Emirates (	AE)		Asia	0-
Afghanistan (Al	=)		Asia	0-
Antigua and Ba	rbuda (AG)		South America	<b>—</b>
Anguilla (AI)			South America	0=

## Result

All the countries and regions that are allowed to access the PBX are moved to the top.

Enable Allowed Country/Region IP Access Protection			
Allow 🛞 Disallow		Search Q	
Country/Region \$	Continent 🌲	Operations 🌲	
China, Hong Kong S.A.R. (HK)	Asia	-•	
Taiwan(Province of China) (TW)	Asia	-•	
China, the People's Republic of China (PRC) (CN)	Asia	-•	
Canada (CA)	North America	0-	
Anguilla (AI)	South America	0=	

# **Allowed Country Codes**

## Restrict International Calls to Specific Countries or Regions

If there is an outbound route on your PBX that allows outbound international calls, the authorized users can make international calls to all the countries and regions. To prevent toll fraud, you can restrict users from making international calls to specific countries or regions.

## Scenario

A manufacturer has a factory in Mexico, and his or her target customers are in Argentina. The manufacturer wants to restrict employees from making international calls to countries and regions except Argentina (country code 54).

### Procedure

Based on the above scenario, you need to follow the instructions below to realize restrictions on international dialing:

- <u>Step1. Allow international calls to Argentina only</u>
- <u>Step2. Allow employees to make international calls</u>

Step1. Allow international calls to Argentina only

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Settings > Allowed Country Codes.
- 2. Enable international dialing protection, and set international dialing code.
  - a. Turn on the option Enable Allowed Country/Region Code Dialing Protection.
    - b. In the International Dialing Code field, enter the prefix of international call according to your country. In the scenario, enter 00.

When an employee tries to call a number starting with 00, the PBX's outbound route will identify this call as an international call.

=_	Note:
=	Note:

Make sure there is at least one outbound route that matches with the international dialing code to route international calls out.

- c. Click 🗖 and Apply.
- 3. Set the countries or regions to which employees can make international calls.
  - a. In the search box, enter a desired country or region. In the scenario, enter Argentina.

Enable Allowed Country/Region IP	Access Protection	
⊘ Allow ⊗ Disallow		Argentina Q
Country/Region ≑	Continent 👙	Operations 🔶
Argentina (AR)	South America	Q <b>—</b>

b. In the Operations column, set the status to 🔫 .

#### Note:

Some countries or regions share the same code (e.g. the country code for Canada and America is 1). If you allow international dialing to a country or a region, employees can also make calls to the countries or regions that share the same code.

c. Click Apply.

## Step2. Allow employees to make international calls

By default, after you enable country/region code dialing protection, all the users are not allowed to make international calls. To allow employees to make international calls, you need to grant permission to desired employees.

- 1. Go to Extension and Trunk > Extension.
- 2. Select the checkboxes of desired extensions, click Edit.
- 3. Click Security tab.
- 4. In the Call Restrictions section, select the checkbox of Bulk Edit and unselect the checkbox of Disallow International Calls.
- 5. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

Authorized employees can make international calls to Argentina (country code 54).

The PBX has an outbound route configured as follows:

Dial Pattern			
Dial Matching Settings			
* Pattern	Strip	Prepend	Operations
00.			围

When an authorized employee dials a number, PBX's outbound route will check if the dialing is valid:

- When an authorized employee dials 00541938384, the dialing is considered as valid.
- When an authorized employee dials 00621938384, the dialing is considered as invalid.
- When an authorized employee dials 541938384, it will not be considered as an international dialing, and the PBX will check if there is a matched outbound route to route the call out.

## **Block Outbound International Calls**

To restrict users from making international calls, you can restrict dial pattern of outbound routes, or set up international dialing protection. This topic describes how to set up international dialing protection to block outbound international calls.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Settings > Allowed Country Codes.
- 2. Turn on the option Enable Allowed Country/Region Code Dialing Protection.

- 3. In the International Dialing Code field, enter the prefix of international call according to your country.
- 4. Click 🗖 and Apply.

## Result

All the extension users can NOT make international calls.

# Passwordless Login

## Allow Passwordless Login to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

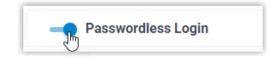
In case that you need the service provider to access your PBX system for remote technical support, and don't want to expose the administrator account credentials, you can set up the PBX to allow passwordless login. In this way, the service provider can directly log in to your PBX system without password.

## Requirements

The firmware version of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is 84.8.0.49 or later.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Settings > Passwordless Login.
- 2. Turn on the Passwordless Login switch.



## Result

• Supprise on the top-right corner of the PBX administrator portal (the web portal of super administrator), indicating that the 'Passwordless Login' feature is enabled.

🍳 🎧 🎦 🔗 PBXadmin1∨
Passwordless login is enabled.
() Information

• Service provider can directly log in to the PBX web portal with a dedicated Passwordless account, which has the same permissions as the PBX super administrator.

### - Note:

The PBX system automatically records the operations of the Passwordless account, you can check the records on Maintenance > Operation Logs.

r	Module	IP Address		Time	
asswordless $\vee$	All	/		09/29/2022 00:00:00 ~ 10/0	1/2022 23:59:59
Download					
Time	User	IP Address	Module	Operations	Details
09/29/2022 20:00:46	Passwordless	10.01	Ethernet Capture Tool	Download	R
09/29/2022 20:00:44	Passwordless	100.000.000.000	Ethernet Capture Tool	Stop	R
09/29/2022 20:00:36	Passwordless	100.000.000.000	Ethernet Capture Tool	Start	R
09/29/2022 20:00:27	Passwordless	100.00.000.000	Backup and Restore	Add: IPPBXCE-Backup-84	R
09/29/2022 19:59:32	Passwordless		User	Login	R

#### **Related information**

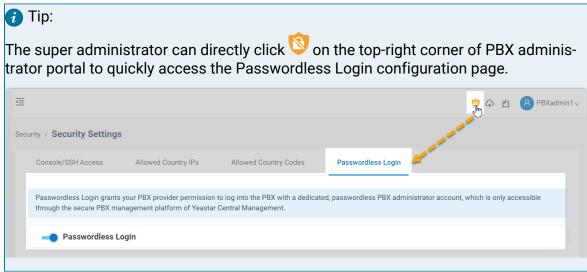
Disallow Passwordless Login to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

## **Disallow Passwordless Login to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition**

This topic describes how to disallow passwordless login to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## Procedure

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Security > Security Settings > Passwordless Login.



2. Turn off the Passwordless Login switch.

## Result

If the provider on the top-right corner of the PBX administrator portal disappears; The service provider can NOT log in to the PBX system via passwordless login method.

# Maintenance

# Upgrade

## Check for Available Firmware Updates

This topic describes how to automatically or manually check for firmware updates.

### Note:

If you couldn't find the Upgrade feature, contact your PBX provider if needed.

## Automatic check for firmware updates

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Upgrade.
- 2. In the Automatic Upgrade section, select Check for updates and notify me.
- 3. In the Automatically check for updates at drop-down list, set when the system should check for new version. This can be a daily or weekly check.
- 4. Click Save.

#### Result

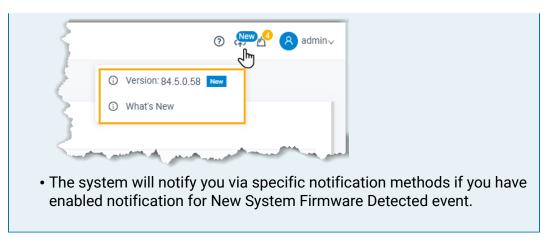
The system will regularly check for new firmware.



If a new firmware is detected, the followings can be achieved:

• At the top-right corner of PBX web portal, 🙌 is displayed. Click

click What's New to check release notes for the new version or click Version to go to upgrade page.



Manual check for firmware updates

Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Upgrade.
- 2. Click Check for the New Firmware.

Result

If a new firmware is detected, you will find a table as below. Click the link under Release Notes to check what's updated in the new version, and decide whether to upgrade the firmware now.

Version	Release Notes	Upgrade
84.5.0.58	https://help.yeastar.com/en/p-series-cloud-edition/release-notes/v84.5.0.58.html	Upgrade now

# **Backup and Restore**

## Overview of Backup and Restore

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports to back up configuration data, and restore data on the same PBX or another PBX.

How Backup and Restore feature benefits your work

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition integrates backup and restore feature, which helps you achieve the followings:

- Create regular and scheduled backups.
- Easy data transfer from one PBX to another.
- Quick restoration and recovery in case of system failure.

## Backup data

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports to back up the following configuration data:

- System Configuration: All the configurations on the system.
- Custom Prompts
- CDR
- Company Contacts and Phonebooks Settings

## **Backup locations**

Backup files are stored in a default storage area, and can NOT be changed.

## Backup file cleanup

By default, when the number of backup files reaches 5, the oldest files will be replaced by the newest files. You can retain the default value, or change the value according to your needs.

For more information, see Auto Cleanup Settings.

## Backup and restore logs

The PBX always makes records whoever backs up or restores the PBX configuration data, you can check the operation details on PBX web interface.

For more information, see Manage Operation Logs.

## Create an On-Demand Backup

This topic describes how to manually back up PBX configurations.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Backup and Restore, click Backup.
- 2. Configure backup settings.
  - File Name: Retain the default name or enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Comments: Add a note to the backup file.
  - The backup file will include: Select the items that will be backed up.
    - System Configuration: All the configurations on the system.
      - Custom Prompts
      - CDR
    - Company Contacts and Phonebooks Settings
- 3. Click Save.

## Result

The created backup file is displayed in Backup and Restore list and is stored in the selected location.

## Set up an Automatic Backup Schedule

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports to automatically back up specific configuration data at the scheduled time. This topic describes how to set up an automatic backup schedule.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Backup and Restore, click Backup Schedule.
- 2. In the pop-up window, enable Backup Schedule.
- 3. Configure an automatic backup schedule.
  - a. Set the automatic backup period. This can be a daily, weekly, or monthly backup.
    - Frequency: Choose to make a daily, weekly, or monthly backup.
      - Daily: If you choose the option, select a time from the drop-down list. The system backs up the settings at this time of the day.
      - Weekly: If you choose the option, choose a day of week and select a time from the drop-down list. The system backs up the settings at this time of the week.
      - Monthly: If you choose the option, choose a day and select a time from the drop-down list. The system backs up the settings on this day and time of the month.

#### PNote:

If you set the day to 31, but the month only has 29 or 30 days, the system will not make a backup.

- b. In the The backup file will include section, choose the items that will be backed up.
  - System Configuration: All the configurations on the system.
  - Custom Prompts
  - CDR
  - Company Contacts and Phonebooks Settings
- 4. Click Save.

## Result

The system will back up the specified configuration data at the scheduled time. The automatic generated backup file will be displayed in the Backup and Restore list.

D Backup 🗘 Upload 🔂 Backup Schedule	T Delete		Search Q
File Name 🍦	Backup Time 🍦	Comments	Operations
PCE-Backup-84.5.0.55-20210901113839	09/01/2021 11:38:58		<b>今</b>   <b>つ</b>   <b>団</b>

## Restore Your System from a Backup

In case of data loss or system failure, you can restore the PBX from a backup. This topic describes how to restore data on the PBX.

Prerequisites

- Make sure that you have backed up system configurations and required files, such as custom prompts and CDR.
- Read and understand restrictions for data restoration.
  - $\,{}^{\circ}$  You can restore a backup file that is created from an older version of PBX.
  - Example: Restoring a backup file (v84.5.0.55) to PBX (v84.5.0.57) would work. • You can NOT restore a backup file that is created from a newer version of PBX.
  - Example: Restoring a backup file (v84.5.0.57) to PBX (v84.5.0.55) would NOT work.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Backup and Restore.
- 2. Select a backup file to which you want to restore, click  $\mathcal{O}$ .
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.
- 4. Reboot the PBX to take effect.

## Result

The current configurations on your PBX are OVERWRITTEN with the backup data.

## **Related information**

<u>Create an On-Demand Backup</u> Set up an Automatic Backup Schedule

# Reboot

## Reboot Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition on Web Interface

This topic describes how to reboot Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition on web interface.

## Prerequisites

Make sure there aren't ongoing calls, or the calls would be disconnected.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Reboot.
- 2. In the Reboot Now section, click Reboot Now.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click Yes to reboot the PBX.

## Result

It takes about one minute to reboot the system.

If you have enabled notification for System Reboot event, the system will inform relevant contacts of the reboot via specific notification methods.

# Reset

## Reset the System on Web Interface

This topic describes how to reset Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition on web interface. After you reset the system, the domain name of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition does not change, but you need to re-activate the PBX.

## Prerequisites

- Make sure there aren't ongoing calls, or the calls would be disconnected.
- We recommend that you create a backup file for PBX configurations.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Reset.
- 2. Set which configurations and data that you want to clear.
  - Reset All: Clear all the configurations and data on the PBX.
  - Reset CDR: Clear all call logs.
  - Reset Backup Files: Clear backup files.
  - Reset Prompts: Clear custom prompts.

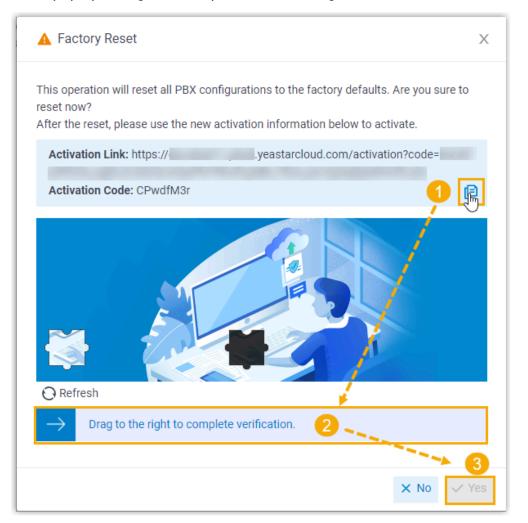
## - Note:

Whether the option is enabled or not, system prompts, music on hod, and preference settings for all the prompts would be cleared.

- Reset Company Contacts: Clear company contacts, phonebooks, and Caller ID match settings.
- Reset Other System Configurations: Reset all the logs and configurations except CDR, backup files, prompts, and contacts.
- 3. Click Factory Reset.

#### A Factory Reset dialog box pops up.

4. In the pop-up dialog box, complete the followings.



a. Click 🗐 to take note of the Activation Link and Activation Code.

Important:

You need to use the new activation link and activation code to activate the PBX after resetting.

- b. Drag to verify your operation.
- c. Click Yes.

#### Result

It takes several minutes to reset the PBX. After resetting, the current web page prompts that the PBX is not activated.

## What to do next

- Click the activation link, you are redirected to the PBX activation page. Paste the activation code and click Confirm.
- You are redirected to Installation Wizard page, follow the <u>Installation Wizard</u> to set up the PBX.

# **Operation Logs**

## **Operation Logs Overview**

This topic describes what are operation logs, what operations are recorded, and introduces the storage and auto cleanup of operation logs.

### What are operation logs

Operation logs record successful operations performed on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition, and provide you with the followings to help you monitor and analyze the causes of systems errors or other types of problems.

- Who: Check who performed the operation. You can query all users' operations, or query operations by administrator or a specific extension.
- When: Check when the operation was performed. You can query operations by specific date and time.
- What: Check what operation was performed.
- Where: Check on which module the operation was performed. You can query operations by a specific module.

## Storage of operation logs

Operation logs are saved in a default storage area, you can NOT change the storage location.

## Auto cleanup of operation logs

By default, when operation logs reach 50,000, the system automatically deletes the oldest logs. You can change the value, or set the maximum days that logs can be retained. For more information, see <u>Auto Cleanup Settings</u>.

#### - Note:

A few logs related with system security and user privacy are RETAINED so that Yeastar Support can help you troubleshoot problems when toll fraud happens or PBX suffers from attack.

The operation logs that will NOT be automatically cleaned up are as follows:

Event Type	Event
	Administrator Login Success
	Administrator Password Changed
Onenetien	Web User Login Success
Operation	Web User Login Failed
	Linkus Client Login Failed
	Extension User Password Changed
Telephony	Emergency Call Dialed Out
System	Yeastar SMTP Server Error
	Web User Locked Out
	Linkus User Blocked Out
Security	Extension Registration Blocked Out
	Auto Defense IP Blocked Out
	Outbound Call Frequency Exceeded
	Outbound Call to a Disallowed Country

## Manage Operation Logs

This topic describes how to view and download operation logs on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

View operation logs

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Operation Logs.
- 2. Set the filter criteria.
  - User: Query all users' operations, or query operations by administrator or a specific extension.
  - Module: Query operations on all modules, or query operations by a specific module.
  - IP Address: Query operations by the originated IP address.
  - Time: Query operations by specific date and time.
- 3. Optional: Click 🗟 beside the desired log to check operation details.

## Download operation logs

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Operation Logs.
- 2. To download all the operation logs, click Download.
- 3. To download the filtered operation logs, set the filter criteria, click Download.

Logs are exported to a CSV file.

# Troubleshooting

## **Capture Network Packet**

This topic describes how to capture network packets of your PBX.

## **Background information**

Ethernet Capture Tool may be required to capture packets in the following situations:

- Extension registration failure.
- No audio or one-way audio during a call.
- Occasional VoIP interconnection failure.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Troubleshooting > Ethernet Capture Tool.
- 2. Click Start.

The PBX starts to capture the Ethernet packet. During the time period, you should reproduce the problem of your VoIP trunks or extensions.

3. Click Stop to stop capturing.

The packets are intercepted and saved on PBX's local flash.

4. Click Download to download the captured packet.

## What to do next

Decompress the .tar file and use <u>Wireshark</u> software to open the packet file.

## Use IP Ping Tool to Diagnose Network Issues

This topic describes how to use IP Ping tool to test if Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can reach a specific hostname or IP address, and introduces the test result.

### **Background information**

Based on the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP), IP Ping is a network tool to determine if a destination server is accessible and estimate how long a packet takes to send and receive data from the server.

If you are suffering from the followings, you can use IP Ping to diagnose:

• Network issues.

For example, you can use IP Ping to check if the PBX can access to a specific IP address or domain name.

• Poor VoIP call quality.

For example, if you are experiencing echo, buzzing, or latency during a call, you can use IP Ping to check jitter and latency, or if there are any packet loss.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Troubleshooting > IP Ping.
- 2. In the Target Host field, enter the target domain or IP address.
- 3. Click Start.
- 4. Click Stop as your need.

### Read the output

Example1: A successful Ping

```
start...
PING 192.168.6.11 (192.168.6.11): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.6.11: seq=0 ttl=64 time=8.853 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.6.11: seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.778 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.6.11: seq=2 ttl=64 time=1.394 ms
--- 192.168.6.11 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.778/3.675/8.853 ms
```

The above example shows the followings:

- The device sends 3 ping packets and receives response for all the 3 packets.
- The ping packets' size are 64 bytes.
- The TTL value is 64, which indicates that packets are always forwarded to the same region.
- The time indicates that how long it takes to receive an Echo Response message after an Echo Request message is sent. This parameter can be used as a reference to determine whether the network is congested.

#### Example2: A failed Ping

```
start...
PING 192.168.7.2 (192.168.7.2): 56 data bytes
--- 192.168.7.2 ping statistics ---
60 packets transmitted, 0 packets received, 100% packet loss
```

The above example indicates that there is an issue of either the connection or the target device.

## Use Traceroute Tool to Diagnose Network Issues

This topic describes how to use Traceroute tool to trace routes to a specific hostname or IP address, and introduces test results.

### **Background information**

Traceroute is a network tool that tracks the gateways that packets pass through from Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition to a destination server and helps you check network connectivity and locate network faults.

### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Troubleshooting > Traceroute.
- 2. In the Target Host field, enter the target domain or IP address.
- 3. Click Start.

The PBX starts to trace routes to the target domain or IP address.

4. Click Stop, or the traceroute will terminate automatically when completed.

#### Read the output

Example1: A good traceroute

```
start...
traceroute to www.baidu.com (36.152.44.95), 30 hops max, 46 byte
packets
1 * *
         *
 2 * *
         *
 3 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1) 1.853 ms 11.642 ms 19.951 ms
 4 110.80.36.161 (110.80.36.161) 3.008 ms 2.966 ms 3.943 ms
 5 61.154.238.133 (61.154.238.133) 7.369 ms 27.982 ms 7.808
ms
6 117.30.27.177 (117.30.27.177) 6.125 ms 117.30.24.213 (117.
30.24.213) 4.664 ms 4.376 ms
7 202.97.36.117 (202.97.36.117) 26.446 ms 202.97.64.178 (202
            22.534 ms 202.97.79.33 (202.97.79.33) 20.897 ms
.97.64.178)
8 202.97.63.18 (202.97.63.18) 33.276 ms 202.97.76.238 (202.9
7.76.238) 36.685 ms 202.97.18.46 (202.97.18.46) 33.961 ms
```

```
9
10
11
12
   *
13
   *
14 221.183.14.14 (221.183.14.14) 40.599 ms 221.183.18.2 (221.
183.18.2) 54.233 ms
15 21.22.207.183.static.js.chinamobile.com (183.207.22.21) 43.
056 ms 53.602 ms 50.481 ms
16 122.23.207.183.static.js.chinamobile.com (183.207.23.122) 4
7.251 ms 126.23.207.183.static.js.chinamobile.com (183.207.23.1
26) 47.401 ms 110.23.207.183.static.js.chinamobile.com (183.20
7.23.110) 54.380 ms
17 *
      *
   *
      *
         *
18
19
         *
20
  *
      *
21 *
22
   *
      *
23 202.97.23.149 (202.97.23.149) 14.133 ms * 202.97.23.157 (
202.97.23.157) 28.851 ms
24 61.154.238.69 (61.154.238.69) 7.096 ms 117.30.24.213 (117.
30.24.213) 4.682 ms 117.30.27.189 (117.30.27.189) 2.758 ms
25
  113.96.4.170 (113.96.4.170) 14.663 ms 113.96.5.118 (113.96
.5.118) 17.857 ms 113.96.4.190 (113.96.4.190) 20.665 ms
26 *
      *
         *
27
   *
      *
      *
28 *
         *
29 110.80.36.161 (110.80.36.161) 4.278 ms 2.696 ms 3.900 ms
30 61.154.238.133 (61.154.238.133) 11.424 ms 4.690 ms 7.770
ms
```

The above example displays in the format of HOP Domain Name (IP Address) RTT1 RTT2 RTT3.

- Hop: Whenever a packet is passed between a router, this is referred to as a "hop." For example, in the output above, we can see that it takes 14 hops to reach www.baidu.com from the current location.
- Domain Name [IP Address]: The domain name, if available, often helps you see the location of a router. If this is unavailable, only the IP address of the router is displayed.
- RTT1, RTT2, RTT3: This is the round-trip time that it takes for a packet to get to a hop and back to your computer (in milliseconds). This is often referred to as latency, and is the same number you see when using ping. Traceroute sends three packets to each hop and displays each time, so you have some idea of how consistent (or inconsistent) the latency is. If you see a \* in some columns, you didn't receive a response which could indicate packet loss.

Example2: A failed hop

```
start...
traceroute to www.baidu.com (14.215.177.38), 30 hops max, 46 byt
e packets
 1 * *
    *
         *
 2
       *
   192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1) 1.702 ms 4.912 ms
 3
                                                  1.873 ms
 4 110.80.36.161 (110.80.36.161) 16.068 ms 2.642 ms 2.705 ms
 5 61.154.238.129 (61.154.238.129) 5.405 ms 61.154.238.133 (6
1.154.238.133) 9.038 ms 61.154.238.129 (61.154.238.129)
                                                           4.084
ms
 6 117.30.27.185 (117.30.27.185) 3.183 ms 117.30.24.213 (117.
30.24.213) 5.256 ms 29.543 ms
 7 202.97.19.125 (202.97.19.125) 23.899 ms 202.97.23.153 (202
.97.23.153) 15.059 ms 202.97.21.69 (202.97.21.69) 12.542 ms
 8 113.96.4.130 (113.96.4.130) 20.978 ms 113.96.4.54 (113.96.
      17.600 ms 113.96.4.102 (113.96.4.102)
4.54)
                                              18.980 ms
9 113.96.4.209 (113.96.4.209) 18.324 ms 25.160 ms 106.96.13
5.219.broad.fs.gd.dynamic.163data.com.cn (219.135.96.106)
                                                           29.13
5 ms
10 14.29.117.242 (14.29.117.242) 22.918 ms 121.14.67.150 (121
            15.187 ms 14.215.32.126 (14.215.32.126) 15.963 ms
.14.67.150)
11
   *
      *
         *
12
    *
       *
          *
   *
       *
          *
13
14
    *
       *
          *
    *
          *
       *
15
16
    *
       *
          *
   *
       *
          *
17
   *
18
19
   *
       *
          *
   *
20
       *
21
   *
       *
          *
22
    *
       *
    *
       *
          *
23
   *
       *
24
          *
25
   *
       *
          *
   *
26
       *
          *
27
    *
28
   *
       *
          *
29
    *
30
    *
       *
```

In the above example, hop1 and hop2 do not respond to the request, but they forward traffic to hop3. The test fails at hop11, and continues to fail all the way to hop30 (the max hops).

# System Logs

## System Logs Overview

This topic describes what are system logs, which level's logs are recorded, and introduces the storage and auto cleanup of system logs.

## What are system logs

System logs are log files that contain information about system activities, which helps you troubleshoot and debug the system. The daily-generated system logs are displayed on System Logs, you can view and download logs on PBX web portal.

## Log levels

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides multiple log levels, each of them records different information. The supported log levels are as follows:

- Information: Basic information.
- Notice: Notice information.
- Warning: Warning information.
- Error: Error information.
- DTMF: DTMF information.
- Time Log: Add time stamp of system logs.
- Debug: Debug information.
  - Enable SIP Debug
  - $\circ$  Enable RTP Debug

## Storage of system logs

System logs are saved in a default storage area, you can NOT change the storage location.

## Auto cleanup of system logs

By default, the system automatically deletes the oldest system logs every 7 days, or when logs reach 10MB. You can change the maximum file size or days that logs can be retained. For more information, see <u>Auto Cleanup Settings</u>.

## Configure Log Level

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to configure log level to gather only information that you consider important. This topic describes how to configure log level.

## Procedure

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > System Logs.

- 2. Click Log Level.
- 3. In the pop-up window, decide which level's logs that you want to trace.
  - Information: Basic information.
  - Notice: Notice information
  - Warning: Warning information.
  - Error: Error information.
  - DTMF: DTMF information.
  - Time Log: Add time stamp of system logs.
  - Debug: Debug information.
    - Enable SIP Debug
    - Enable RTP Debug
- 4. Click Save and Apply.

## Result

The system will generate logs of the specified levels every day.

## Manage System Logs

This topic describes how to download or delete system logs on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## Download system logs

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > System Logs.
- 2. Download one or more system logs according to your needs.
  - To download a system log, click  $\bigcirc$  beside the desired log.
  - To bulk download system logs, select the checkboxes of the desired logs, click Download.

The desired logs are downloaded and compressed into a .tar file.

🕜 Tip:

You can decompress the file and open logs by Notepad++ or other editor software.

## Delete system logs

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > System Logs.
- 2. To delete a system log, click  $\frac{1}{100}$  beside the desired log.
- 3. To bulk delete system logs, select the checkboxes of the desired logs, click Delete.

# **CDR and Reports**

# CDR

## Call Detail Record (CDR) Overview

The Call Detail Record (CDR) feature provides information about calls over Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition. This topic describes parameters and auto cleanup of CDR.

## CDR parameters

A CDR contains the following information:

- ID: A unique identifier for each call.
- Time: When the call was made or received.
- Call From: The number or the name of the caller.
- Call To: The number or the name of the callee.
- Call Duration: The time between the call started and the call ended.
- Ring Duration: The time between the call started and the call answered.
- Talk Duration: The time between the call answered and the call ended.
- Status: Call status.
  - ANSWERED
  - NO ANSWER
  - $\circ$  BUSY
  - $\circ$  FAILED
  - VOICEMAIL
- Reason: The reason why the call was ended.
- Source Trunk: The call was received via which trunk.
- Destination Trunk: The call was sent out via which trunk.
- Communication Type:
  - Internal
  - Outbound
  - Inbound
- DID/DDI: The phone number that the caller dialed.
- Outbound Caller ID: The phone number that was displayed on the callee's phone.
- Caller IP Address: The IP address of the caller's device.
- PIN Code: The PIN code entered when making a call via a restricted outbound route.
- Recording File: The call recording file.

## CDR auto cleanup

By default, when the number of call logs reaches 200,000, the system automatically deletes the oldest call logs (relevant recordings are retained.). You can change the maximum value, or you can also set the maximum preservation days.

For more information, see <u>Auto Cleanup Settings</u>.

## Manage CDR

This topic describes how to view, download, and delete call logs.

## View CDR

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > CDR.
- 2. Optional: Set the basic filter criteria.
  - Time: Set the start date and the end date.
  - To specify a time period, click select time to set the start time and the end time.
  - Call From: Set the caller's number or name.
  - Call To: Set the callee's number or name.



To swap the callee for the caller, click  $\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\rightharpoondown}$ .

- Status: Select a call status.
  - ∘ All
  - ANSWERED
  - $^{\circ}$  NO ANSWER
  - BUSY
  - FAILED
  - VOICEMAIL
- 3. Optional: Set the advanced filter criteria.
  - a. Click 🏹
  - b. On the Filter page, set the advanced criteria.
    - Extension Group: Select an extension group. The system only queries group members' calls.
    - Ring Duration: Set how long the callee's phone rang before the call was answered.

## 🚽 Note:

Only numbers, -, =,<, <=, >, and >= are allowed.

• Talk Duration: Set the time between the call was answered and the call was ended.

## 🚽 Note:

Only numbers, -, =, <, <=, >, and >= are allowed.

- Status: Select call status.
  - ∘ All
  - ANSWERED
  - NO ANSWER

- BUSY
- FAILED
- VOICEMAIL
- Communication Type: Select a type.
  - ∘ All
  - Internal
  - Outbound
  - Inbound
- ID: Enter the unique identifier for a call.
- Trunk: Select a trunk, which specifies the source or the destination trunk that the call went through.
- Enable Number Fuzzy Search: Set whether to search for the fuzzy equivalent for the phone number.
- PIN Code: Enter an existed PIN code, the system only queries the calls using this PIN code.
- c. Scroll up to click  $\times$  to close the window.

The filtered call logs are displayed on the page.

	ote:					
ou o	can click 🍞	to decide	which item will	be displaye	ed.	
Time		7/2020 22 52 52	Call From	Call To	Status	
	19/2020 00:00:00 ~ 08/2		4	7	All	V
ΦD	ownload CDR V					
	Time 🌲	Call From	Call To	Call Duration 👙	Ring Duration 💠	Talk Duration 7
	08/25/2020 14:55:22	RecordFile	Cora Rowland<1000>	00:00:10	00:00:05	00:00:05
	08/25/2020 14:54:20	RecordFile	Cora Rowland<1000>	00:00:20	00:00:04	00:00:16
	08/25/2020 14:45:59	RecordFile	Cora Rowland<1000>	00:00:15	00:00:04	00:00:11

#### Download CDR

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > CDR.
- 2. To download all the call logs, select Download All CDR from the drop-down list of Download CDR.
- 3. To download the filtered call logs, <u>set the filter criteria</u> and select Download Filtered CDR from the drop-down list of Download CDR.

Call logs are exported to a CSV file.

#### **Delete CDR**

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > CDR.

#### 2. Optional: Filter call logs.

3. Select the checkboxes of the desired call logs, click Delete and OK.

Important: The relevant recording files will also be deleted.

Both call logs and recording files are deleted.

# **Call Report**

## **Call Reports Overview**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition provides intuitive visual call reports, which allow you to check call statistics of different objects, such as extensions, trunks, queues, ring groups, etc. This topic describes category of call reports, and methods of getting an instant or a scheduled call report.

### Types of Call Reports

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following types of call reports:

- Extension Call Statistics
- Extension Call Activity
- <u>Trunk Activity</u>
- DID/Outbound Caller ID Activity
- Queue AVG Waiting & Talking Time
- Queue Performance
- <u>Queue Callback Summary</u>
- Queue Callback Activity
- Satisfaction Survey
- <u>Agent Login Activity</u>
- <u>Agent Pause Activity</u>
- <u>Agent Missed Call Activity</u>
- <u>Agent Call Summary</u>
- <u>Ring Group Statistics</u>
- Extension Call Accounting
- Extension Call Accounting Details

## Methods of getting a call report

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to have an instant search and view of call reports on PBX web portal, or schedule call reports to be sent to your mailbox at the specified time and download the reports to your local device. For more information about searching and viewing call reports on PBX web portal, see <u>View</u> <u>Call Reports</u>.

For more information about scheduling call reports, see <u>Schedule Call Reports</u>.

## **Call Reports**

## **View Call Reports**

This topic describes how to view call reports on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports > Call Reports.
- 2. Set search criteria.
  - a. In the Report Type drop-down list, select the desired report.
  - b. Set a time period that the report covers.
  - c. Set one or more objects that you want to query.

## Result

Relevant call statistics are displayed on the page.

## **Extension Call Statistics Report**

Extension Call Statistics Report is a summary report displayed in pie chart, which makes it possible for you to query statistics of calls that have been made or received by a specific extension or extensions within a specific group/organization, and view percentage and proportional data of call statistics.

## **Report details**

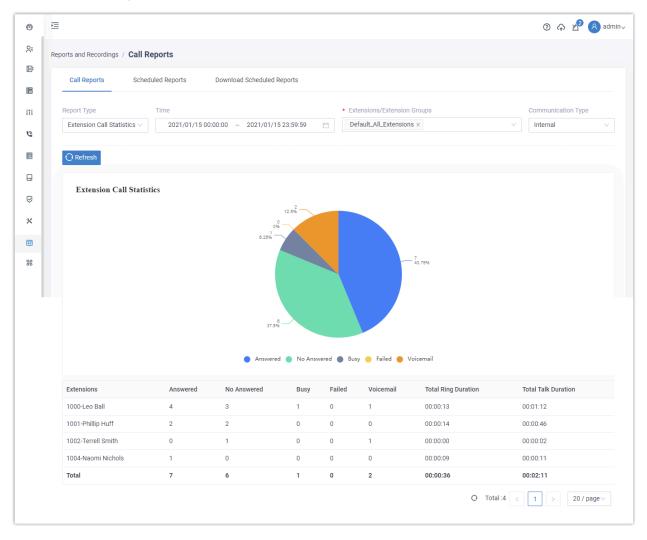
The following table lists the related parameters for Extension Call Statistics report.

Parameter	Description
Answered	The total number of calls that the extension answered.
No Answered	The total number of calls that were routed to the designated des- tination when the extension didn't answer the calls.
Busy	The total number of calls that were routed to the designated des- tination when the extension was busy.
Failed	The total number of calls that were failed to be made by the ex- tension.

Parameter	Description
Voicemail	The total number of voicemails that the extension received.
Total Ring Dura- tion	The total time between calls started and calls answered.
Total Talk Dura- tion	The total time between calls answered and calls ended.

## Report example

The following report shows internal call statistics of all the extensions in group Default\_All\_Extensions during 2021/01/15 00:00:00-2021/01/15 23:59:59.



## **Extension Call Activity Report**

Extension Call Activity Report is a summary report displayed in line graph, which makes it possible for you to query statistics of calls that have been made or received by a specific extension or extensions within a specific group/organization. The report allows you to track changes of call activity over a specific period of time, or compare changes over the same period of time.

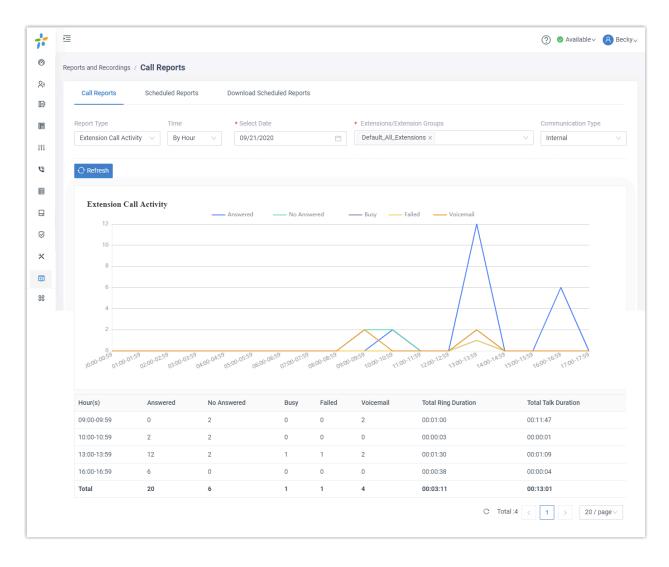
## Report details

The following table lists the related parameters for Extension Call Activity report.

Parameter	Description
Answered	The total number of calls that the extensions answered.
No Answered	The total number of calls that were routed to the designated des- tination when the extensions didn't answer the calls.
Busy	The total number of calls that were routed to the designated des- tination when the extensions were busy.
Failed	The total number of calls that were failed to be made by the ex- tensions.
Voicemail	The total number of voicemails that the extensions received.
Total Ring Dura- tion	The time between the call started and the call answered.
Total Talk Dura- tion	The time between the call answered and the call ended.

## Report example

The following report shows daily inbound call statistics of all the extensions in group Default\_All\_Extensions on September, 2020.

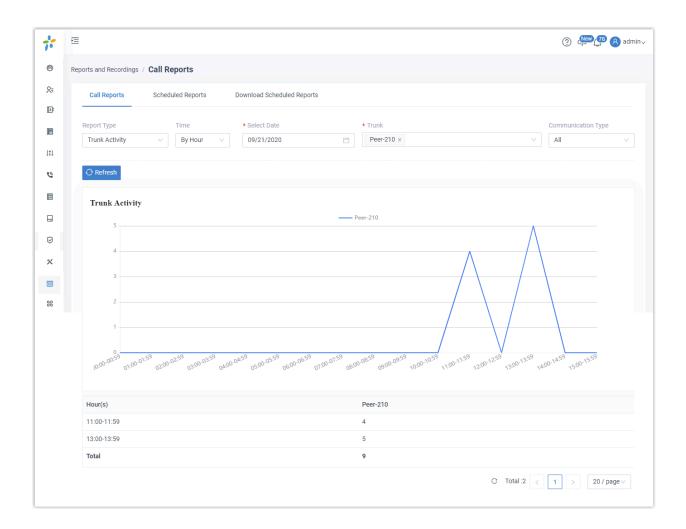


## Trunk Activity Report

Trunk Activity Report is a summary report displayed in line graph, which makes it possible for you to query how many inbound and outbound calls have been received or made via a specific trunk. The report allows you to track changes of trunk activity by hour, by date, or by month.

## Report example

The following report shows daily inbound & outbound call statistics of all the extensions in group Default\_All\_Extensions on September, 2020.



# DID/Outbound Caller ID Activity Report

DID/Outbound Caller ID Activity Report is a summary report displayed in line graph, which allows you to track changes of DID/Outbound Caller ID activity by hour, by date, or by month.

### Report example

The following report shows hourly call statistics of all the extensions in group Default\_All\_-Extensions on September 21, 2020. \* È ⑦ . New 76 A admin√ Ø Reports and Recordings / Call Reports 8ª Call Reports Scheduled Reports Download Scheduled Reports Ŀ Report Type Time \* Select Date Communication Type 眉 DID/Outbound Caller I...  $\,\,\vee\,\,$ By Hour 09/21/2020 Ë Peer-210 All ļţļ 0 DID/Outbound Caller ID Activity \_\_\_\_\_ dod1000 \_\_\_\_\_ dod1001 \_\_\_\_\_ dod1002 Ø × 12 88 11:00-11:55 15:00-15:59 16:00-16:59 07:00-07:5 12:00-12:5 13:00-13:55 09:00-05:00-1 10:00-00.40 Hour(s) dod1000 dod1001 dod1002 11:00-11:59 4 0 0 13:00-13:59 1 1 2 Total 5 1 2 C Total :2 < 1 > 20 / page  $\vee$ 

# **Ring Group Statistics Report**

Ring Group Statistics Report allows you to query the number of received and answered calls for a specific ring group, thus helping you evaluate performance of members within the ring group.

# **Report details**

The following table lists the related parameters for Ring Group Statistics report.

Parameter	Description		
Answered	The total number of calls that were answered.		
Received	The total number of calls that were received.		
Answered Rate	The answered rate for the ring group or for each group member.		

# Report example

The following report shows call statistics of ring group 6300 and 6301 during 09/21/2020 00:00:00-09/21/2020 23:59:59.

	E			🕐 🥏 Available 🗸 🤱 Beck
0	Reports and Recordings / Call Re	eports		
R⊧	Call Reports Schedu	uled Reports Download Scheduled Reports		
C:	Report Type	Time	* Ring Group	
ţ.	Ring Group Statistics V	09/21/2020 00:00:00 ~ 09/21/2020 23:59:59		V
0				
3	Ring Group	Answered	Received	Answered Rate
	6300<6300>	4	5	80%
Ø	Becky<1000>	1		20%
	Caroline<1001>	1		20%
×	Anderson<6666>	2		40%
<b>1</b>	6301<6301>	2	2	100%
96	Becky<1000>	1		50%
	Anderson<6666>	1		50%
	Total	6	7	86%
				C Total:7 < 1 > 20 / page ∨

# Scheduled Reports

# Schedule Call Reports

This topic describes how to schedule a call report to be sent to a recipient's mailbox at the specified time.

# **Background information**

A scheduled call report is a diagram containing call statistics for the selected objects within a specific time frame. It automatically runs at a pre-defined frequency and is emailed to a specific address as a link and can be downloaded in CSV, XLS, or PDF.

# Prerequisites

- Make sure <u>email server</u> works.
- <u>Customize Email Template for Scheduled Reports.</u>

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports.
- 2. Under Scheduled Reports tab, click Add Report.
- 3. In the Report Type drop-down list, choose the desired report, and select one or more objects that you want to query.

Scheduled Reports	
Report Type Extension Call Statistics	X
Extension Call statistics Time	<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>• Extensions/Extension Groups</li> </ul>
Today	V Sales X V
Communication Type	
All	v

### - Note:

Descriptions for specific parameters:

- Communication Type: Select a communication type Inbound, Outbound, and Internal. You can use the parameter to filter call statistics in the following reports:
  - Extension Call Statistics
  - Extension Call Activity
  - Trunk Activity
  - DID/Outbound Caller ID Activity
- Short Abandoned Calls: Set a time. Calls abandoned within the specified time will not be included in report. You can use the parameter to filter call statistics in the following reports:
  - Queue Performance
  - Agent Missed Call Activity
- Organization: Select one or more departments. Calls of the department and its sub-departments will be included in the report.

#### - Note:

This option is available only when you enable the Organization Management feature.

You can use the parameter to filter call statistics in the following reports:

- Extension Call Statistics
- Extension Call Activity
- Extension Call Accounting
- Extension Call Accounting Details
- 4. Schedule the report.
  - Time: Set a time frame that the desired report covers.
  - Report Name: Enter a name to help you identify it.
  - Email Address: Enter a recipient's email address.

The report will be sent to the email address at the specified time.

• Report Frequency: Set how often to send the report.

- Once: If you choose the option, the system sends the report immediately after you save the setting.
- Daily: If you choose the option, select a time from the drop-down list. The system sends the report at this time of the day.
- Weekly: If you choose the option, choose a day of week and select a time from the drop-down list. The system sends the report at this time of the week.
- Monthly: If you choose the option, choose a day and select a time from the drop-down list. The system sends the report on this day and time of the month.

### - Note:

If you set the day to 31, but the month only has 29 or 30 days, the system will not send the report.

- Format: Set in which format the report can be downloaded.
  - $\circ \text{CSV}$
  - ∘ XLS
  - PDF
- 5. Click Save.

# Result

On Scheduled Reports list, check status of the scheduled call report.

Call Reports Sched	uled Reports	Download Scheduled Reports	Rate				
🕀 Add Report 🛛 🖓 Email Te	mplate					Search	Q
Name		Status		Scheduled Time	Report Frequency	Operations	
Support		Scheduled		2022/03/14 13:18:58	Daily , 18:00:00	2 🖻	
Sales		Finished		2022/03/14 13:18:53	Once	∠ 🗇	

- Finished: The one-off call report was sent to the recipient's email address.
- Scheduled: The call report is scheduled and valid. The system will send the report to the recipient's email address at the specified time.
- Paused: The scheduled call report is on hold because the Call Center Service expired. To renew it, go to Yeastar P-Series Enterprise Plan or Ultimate Plan.

# Manage Scheduled Reports

This topic describes how to edit and delete scheduled reports.

### Edit scheduled reports

1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports, click Scheduled Reports.

- 2. Select the desired report, click  $\mathbb{Z}$ .
- 3. Edit the scheduled report according to your needs.
- 4. Click Save.

### Delete scheduled reports

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports, click Scheduled Reports.
- 2. Select the desired report, click 🛄.
- 3. In the pop-up dialog box, click OK.

# Download Scheduled Reports on Web Interface

After the system sends scheduled reports to recipients' mailboxes, the recipients can download reports via attached links and system administrator can view and download reports on PBX web portal. This topic describes how to download scheduled reports on PBX web portal.

### Prerequisites

A scheduled report was sent out.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports, click Download Scheduled Reports tab.
- 2. Select the desired call report, click  $\overline{\mathbf{a}}$ .

The report contains a snapshot of data for the time frame you have selected.

3. At the top-right corner, click Download.

#### Result

The report is downloaded to your computer in the pre-defined format.

# **Customize Email Template for Scheduled Reports**

This topic describes how to customize email template for scheduled reports.

### **Background information**

By default, Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition sends scheduled call reports in the pre-defined language and email template.

The language is what you have set in <u>system email template</u>, and the email template contains the following information:

- A download link for call report.
- Soft reminder of the download link.
  - The link is valid for 24 hours.
- System information, including PBX name, PBX serial number.

## Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports > Scheduled Reports.
- 2. Click Email Template.
- 3. Configure template settings.
  - a. In the Template drop-down list, select Custom.
  - b. Edit email subject and content according to your needs.
  - c. Click Save.

#### Result

The PBX will use the email template to send scheduled reports.

# **Call Accounting**

# **Call Accounting Overview**

The Call Accounting feature collects and records telecom usage, as well as estimating the expenses incurred based on the destination number and call duration, allowing you to get an eagle-eye overview of the telephone activity and cost of all employees.

## Scenario

In customer service businesses, many employees need to call potential customers via National Direct Dialing (NDD) or International Direct Dialing (IDD). Leaving such outbound calls unattended makes the way for telecommunication misuse, and eventually causes financial losses. These companies need a management tool to track telephone activity of employees, so as to keep telecom usage and expenses in control.

## Highlights

S Collect and record call statistics

Monitor, record, and track individual and department calls. Based on the historical and real-time call logs, you can measure and analyze employees' performance and identify telephone misuse and abuse.

# () Flexible call rate settings

Apply different call rate rules to local calls, long distance calls, and international calls. In this way, you can monitor the billing statistics for each type of call, and estimate call charges before telecommunications provider sends the bill.

## C Insightful call accounting reports

Get dedicated call accounting reports based on individuals or departments. Detailed information about the total number of calls, total call duration, average call duration, and total billing gives you deeper insights into the calling patterns and activity of employees.

# E Improve telecom budget planning

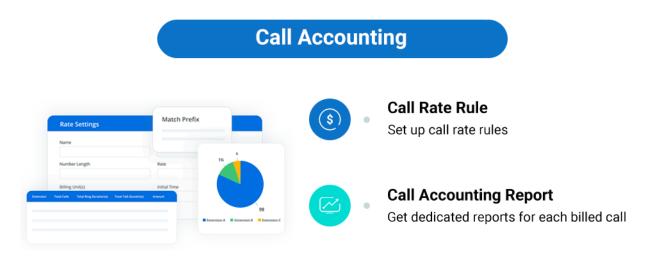
Tracking and analyzing telecom usage by individuals or departments help you manage and control telecommunication expenses, making the budgeting more accurate and efficient.

# A quick glance at Call Accounting

We provide a thumbnail for you to glance at the WebGUI and get to know the workflow of call accounting.

### 👔 Tip:

You can click on the text on the right of the thumbnail to quickly redirect to the corresponding topic.



1. Add a Call Rate Rule

2. Extension Call Accounting Report

# Call Rate

# Add a Call Rate Rule

To monitor telecommunication costs for groups and individuals and prevent from potential fraudulent use of resources, you can add a call rate rule for outbound calls, such as local, long-distance, or international calls.

# Restrictions

• A maximum number of 30,000 call rate rules is supported on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports.
- 2. Under Rate tab, click Add.
- 3. Set up a call rate rule:

* Name	Match Prefix
Local_Outbound	8
Number Length	* Rate
7	0.5
* Billing Unit (s)	<ul> <li>Initial Time (s)</li> </ul>
60	120

- Name: Enter a name to help you identify the call rate rule. For example, enter Local\_Outbound.
- Match Prefix: Optional. Define the prefix of outbound number to match the call rate rule.

#### Note:

The system matches call rate rules based on the outbound number instead of the dialed number.

- $\circ$  If you leave this field blank, then all the outbound numbers will apply this rule.
- If you set a specific value, then only outbound numbers starting with the prefix will apply this rule.
- Number Length: Optional. Define the length of the outbound number to match the call rate rule.
  - If you leave this field blank, then all the outbound numbers will apply this rule.
  - If you set a specific value, then only the outbound number whose length is shorter than or equal to the value will apply this rule.
- Rate: Enter a call rate. After the initial time, each billing unit will be charged with this rate.
- Billing Unit (s): Define the time increment (in seconds) that will be used to calculate the fee for a call after the initial time. The default value is 60 seconds.

For example, if you set Rate to 0.5 and Billing Unit to 60 seconds, then the fee for a call will increase by 0.5 every 60 seconds.

• Initial Time (s): Define the initial period of time (in seconds) during which the call will not be charged.

For example, if you enter 120, outbound calls will be charged with this rate only when talk duration reaches 2 minutes.

#### - Note:

The default value is 0, which means that an outbound call will be charged with this rate as soon as it is answered.

4. Click Save and Apply.

# Result

• The call rate rule is created. Any outbound calls matching the rule will be charged with the call rate as the following formula from now on.

Amount = Talk Duration - Initial Time Billing Unit X Rate

- Note:

If the value to be multiplied by rate has decimals, it will be rounded upwards to the nearest integer.

• If you create more than one call rate rules in the list, the system will match outbound calls with these rules from the top down.

## What to do next

You can check the call accounting fee for extensions, extension groups, or departments in call reports.

For more information, see <u>Extension Call Accounting Report</u> and <u>Extension Call Accounting</u> <u>Details Report</u>.

# Manage Call Rate Rules

This topic describes how to edit and delete call rate rules.

# Edit a call rate rule

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports.
- 2. Under Rate tab, click *d* beside a call rate rule.
- 3. Edit the call rate rule.

#### Important:

Modifying the rate would affect the newly generated call billing statistics.

4. Click Save and Apply.

### Delete call rate rules

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports.
- 2. Click Rate tab.
- 3. To delete a call rate rule, do as follows:
  - a. On the right of a desired call rate rule, click  $\square$ .

b. In the pop-up window, click OK.

- 4. To bulk delete call rate rules, do as follows:
  - a. Select the checkboxes of desired call rate rules, then click Delete.
  - b. In the pop-up window, click OK.

# Export and Import Call Rate Rules

The call rate rules configured on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can be exported and saved as a template. You can fill in desired call rate rules in the exported file, and import the file to PBX again. This topic describes how to export and import call rate rules.

### Export all the call rate rules

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports.
- 2. Under Rate tab, click Export.

A CSV file is saved to your computer. To check and edit parameters in the CSV file, see <u>Rate Parameters</u>.

#### Import call rate rules

We recommend that you export call rate rules to a CSV file first, and use the file as a template to start with. In this way, you can save time and effort.

#### Important:

Take note that the order of call rate rules in .csv is contrary to that on PBX, which means that the first call rate rule in .csv would be the last one on PBX.

#### Prerequisites

Requirements of an imported file:

- Format: UTF-8 .CSV
- Size: Less than 50 MB
- File name: Less than 127 characters
- Import parameters: Ensure that the imported parameters meet requirements. For more information, see <u>Rate Parameters</u>.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Reports and Recordings > Call Reports.
- 2. Under Rate tab, click Import.
- 3. In the pop-up window, click Browse, and select your CSV file.
- 4. Click Import.

The call rate rules in the CSV file will be displayed in reverse order in the Rate list.

# **Call Accounting Report**

# **Extension Call Accounting Report**

Extension Call Accounting Report provides you with an overview of bills of outbound calls that have been made by a specific extension or extensions within a specific group/organization via a specific trunk. The report allows you to track calling activities and monitor telecommunication usage within your company, eliminating the physical workload of tracking bills.

### Prerequisites

• You have set up at least one call rate rule, or the system wouldn't know how to charge outbound calls.

For more information, see <u>Add a Call Rate Rule</u>.

### Get the report

You can get Extension Call Accounting Report in either of the following ways:

• Get instant report on PBX web portal (Path: Reports and Recordings > Call Reports > Call Reports).

For more information, see <u>View Call Reports</u>.

• Get scheduled report via mailbox.

#### 👔 Tip:

To achieve this, you need to schedule reports on PBX web portal (Path: Reports and Recordings > Call Reports > Scheduled Reports). For more information, see <u>Schedule</u> <u>Call Reports</u>.

# **Report details**

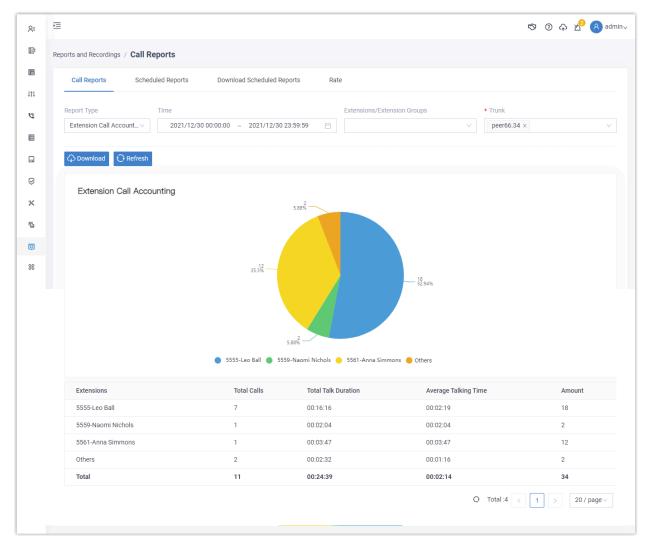
The following table lists the related parameters for Extension Call Accounting report.

Parameter	Description			
Extensions	The extension number and extension name of the user who made outbound calls.			
	Note: Others indicates that the outbound calls were not made by extensions.			
Total Calls	The total number of outbound calls made where a call rate rule is applied.			

Parameter	Description
Total Talk Dura- tion	The total time between calls answered and calls ended.
Average Talking Time	The average time between calls answered and calls ended.
Amount	The call cost.

# Report example

The following report provides an overview of accounting statistics of outbound calls made by all the extensions through trunk peer 66.34 during 2021/12/30 00:00:00-2021/12/30 23:59:59.



#### **Related information**

**Extension Call Accounting Details Report** 

# **Extension Call Accounting Details Report**

Extension Call Accounting Details Report provides you with detailed information about bills of every outbound calls that have been made by a specific extension or extensions within a specific group/organization via a specific trunk. The report allows you to track calling activities and monitor telecommunication usage within your company, eliminating the physical workload of tracking bills.

### Prerequisites

• You have set up at least one call rate rule, or the system wouldn't know how to charge outbound calls.

For more information, see Add a Call Rate Rule.

### Get the report

You can get the Extension Call Accounting Details Report in either of the following ways:

 Get instant report on PBX web portal (Path: Reports and Recordings > Call Reports > Call Reports).

For more information, see <u>View Call Reports</u>.

• Get scheduled report via mailbox.

#### 🕜 Tip:

To achieve this, you need to schedule reports on PBX web portal (Path: Reports and Recordings > Call Reports > Scheduled Reports). For more information, see <u>Schedule</u> <u>Call Reports</u>.

# **Report details**

The following table lists the related parameters for Extension Call Accounting Details report.

Parameter	Description		
Extensions	The extension number and extension name of the user who made outbound calls.		
	Note: Others indicates that the outbound calls were not made by extensions.		
Time	When the outbound call was made.		
Call To	The callee number.		
Talk Duration	The time between calls answered and calls ended.		

Parameter	Description
Amount	The call cost.

# Report example

The following report shows detailed accounting statistics of outbound calls made by all the extensions through trunk peer 66.34 during 2021/12/30 00:00:00-2021/12/30 23:59:59.

Керо	rts and Recordings / Call Reports				
	Call Reports Scheduled Report	s Download Scheduled Reports F	tate		
F	Report Type Time		Extensions/Extension Groups	* Trunk	
	Extension Call Account V 2021	(12/30 00:00:00 ~ 2021/12/30 23:59:59		v peer66.3	4 ×
li	🗘 Download 🕑 Refresh				
	Extensions	Time	Call To	Talk Duration	Amount
	5555	2021/12/30 09:42:20	3333	00:03:17	4
		2021/12/30 10:06:12	3333	00:00:56	0
		2021/12/30 10:29:37	3333	00:01:07	0
		2021/12/30 11:40:52	4333	00:03:54	4
		2021/12/30 11:45:37	43333	00:00:58	0
		2021/12/30 15:52:47	3333	00:03:05	б
		2021/12/30 15:57:26	33	00:02:59	4
	Total			00:16:16	18
	5564	2021/12/30 10:01:13	3333	00:00:28	0
		2021/12/30 10:02:18	3333	00:02:04	2
	Total			00:02:32	2
	5559	2021/12/30 13:36:28	3333	00:02:04	2
	5561	2021/12/30 13:44:07	2222	00:03:47	12
	Total for All			00:24:39	34

### Related information Extension Call Accounting Report

# Integration

# Speech to Text (STT)

# Speech to Text (STT) Overview

Speech to Text, also known as speech recognition, enables transcription of audio messages into texts. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to use a third-party transcription service to implement the audio transcription.

### Restriction

This integration is NOT supported on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition that can not <u>access</u> <u>Google service</u>.

### Supported Service Platform

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports the following third-party transcription service:

### 🚽 Note:

The Speech to Text feature on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is free. However, you will need to pay for the Speech-to-Text service of the third-party platforms.

Google Cloud Speech-to-Text API

For more information about the integrations, see <u>Integrate Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edi-</u> tion with Google Cloud Speech-to-Text Service.

# Applications

After STT integration is set up on the PBX, the speech recognition can be applied to <u>Voice-mail Transcription</u>. Users can receive voicemails in the form of text on different platform:

Linkus Web Client and Linkus Mobile Client

Users can check the transcribed text for each voicemail on Linkus Web Client and Linkus Mobile Client.

Email Client

If <u>Voicemail to Email</u> feature is enabled, the transcribed text will be displayed in the email content for received voicemails.

**Related information** 

Enable or Disable Voicemail Transcription

# Integrate with Speech to Text (STT) API

# Integrate Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition with Google Cloud Speech-to-Text Service

Before using Voicemail Transcription feature, you need to integrate Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition with a third-party Speech-to-Text service. This topic describes how to configure the integration of Google Cloud Speech-to-Text (STT) service with Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

### Limitations

#### **Region restriction**

This integration is NOT supported on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition that can not <u>access Google service</u>.

#### Audio length: 1 minute

The integration of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition with Google Cloud Speechto-Text service uses the Synchronous Recognition method for speech recognition, which can process up to 1 minute of speech audio data.

#### Service cost

Google Cloud Speech-to-Text service provides a free amount of 60 minutes per month, you will be charged if the minutes of audio processed per month exceeds the free amount. For more information about the pricing, see <u>Google</u> <u>Cloud Speech-to-Text Pricing</u>.

#### Prerequisites

- You need to create a Google Cloud billing account.
- Make sure the Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition can access Google services.
  - 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Maintenance > Troubleshooting > IP Ping.
  - 2. In the Target Host field, enter www.google.com.
  - 3. Click Start.
  - 4. Check the Result box to see if the packet transmission is normal.
  - 5. Click Stop to stop pinging.

#### Procedure

- 1. Get the API key from Google Cloud Platform
- 2. Enable Speech to Text (STT) integration on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

# Get the API key from Google Cloud Platform

Step1. Create a project on Google Cloud Platform

- 1. Log in to Google Cloud Platform.
- 2. In the top bar, click My First Project to open the project list.

3. On the Select a project page, click NEW PROJECT in the top-right corner.

Select a project	NEW PROJECT
Search projects and folders	
RECENT STARRED ALL	
Name	ID
🗸 🏠 🐌 My First Project 🚱	durable-surfer-315608

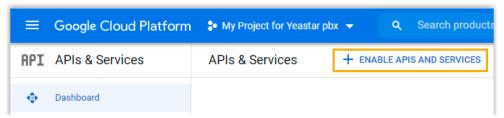
4. On the New Project page, set a project name, and click CREATE.

≡ Google Cloud	Platform	٩	Search products and re				
New Project	New Project						
delete projects		a. Requ	est an increase or				
Project name * My Project for Yeastar pl			0				
Project ID: my-project-for-yeastar-pbx. It cannot be changed later. EDIT  Location *  BROWSE BROWSE							
Parent organization or folder							
CREATE CANCEL							

A new project is created, you can select the new project in the project list.

Step2. Enable Speech-to-Text API service on Google Cloud Platform

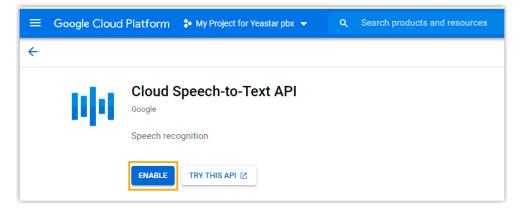
- 1. In the top-left conner, click ≡ to open the navigation menu, and go to API & Services > Dashboard.
- 2. Click ENABLE APIS AND SERVICES.



3. In the API Library, enter speech in the search box and select Cloud Speech-to-Text API.

=	Google Cloud Plat	form 💲 My I	Project for Yeastar pbx 👻 🔍 🔍 Search produc	ts and resources	× 1
÷	Search		Q speech	×	
		3 results			
		uļu.	Cloud Speech-to-Text API Google Speech recognition		
			Cloud Text-to-Speech API Google Synthesizes natural-sounding speech by applying power	iul neural network models.	
		٢	Cloud Video Intelligence API Google Detects objects, explicit content, and scene changes in v	ideos. It also specifies the region for	

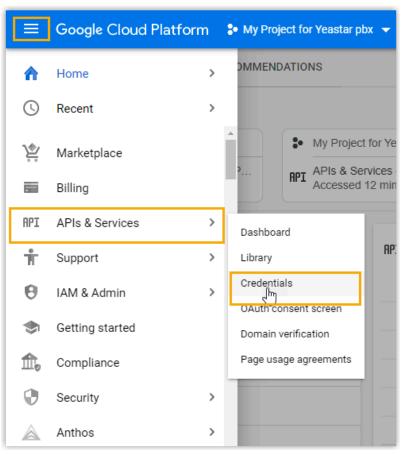
4. Click ENABLE button for the Cloud Speech-to-Text API.



The Speech-to-Text service is enabled.

Step3. Create API credentials on Google Cloud Platform

1. In the left navigation panel, go to API & Services > Credentials.



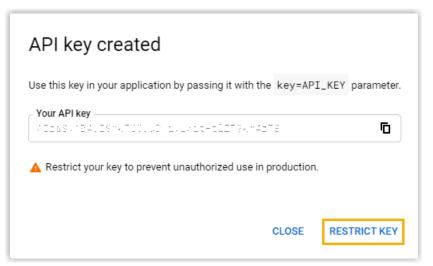
2. Click CREATE CREDENTIALS and select API key.

≡	Google Cloud Platform	My Project for Yeas	astar pbx 👻 Q Search products and resources	
API	APIs & Services	Credentials	+ CREATE CREDENTIALS	
٠	Dashboard	Create credentials to ac	API key ac Identifies your projecosing a simple API key to check quota and access	
Ш	Library		OAuth client ID Requests user consent so your app can access the user's data	
0+	Credentials		Service account	
92	OAuth consent screen	API Keys	Enables server-to-server, app-level authentication using robot accounts	
	Domain verification Name		Help me choose	
≡¢	Page usage agreements	No API keys to displa	Asks a few questions to help you decide which type of credential to use	

3. In the pop-up window, click RESTRICT KEY.

#### ! Important:

For security purpose, you need to restrict your API key, ensuring only authorized requests are made with your API key.



- 4. On the Restrict and rename API key page, complete the following configurations.
  - a. In the Name field, specify the API key name.
  - b. In the Application restrictions section, select None.
  - c. In the API restrictions section, select Restrict key.
  - d. Enter speech in the search box below to search and select the Cloud Speech-to-Text API, then click OK.
  - e. Click Save to apply your configuration.

API restrictions
API restrictions specify the enabled APIs that this key can call
O Don't restrict key This key can call any API
Restrict key
1 API 🗸
Selected APIs:
Cloud Speech-to-Text API
Note: It may take up to 5 minutes for settings to take effect
SAVE CANCEL

The API key is only allowed to call the Cloud Speech-to-Text API.

5. Go back to the Credentials page, in the API key section, click <sup>1</sup> to copy the restricted API key.

API Ke	eys					
	Name	Creation date $~~ igstarrow$	Restrictions	Key		
	API key for Yeastar test	Jun 22, 2021	Cloud Speech-to-Text API	AIzaSyByav957ju7ytVY	б	/ 1

Enable Speech to Text (STT) integration on Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Integrations > Speech to Text.
- 2. In STT API Integration section, fill in the required API credentials.
  - Service: Select Google Cloud.
  - API Key: Paste the restricted API key copied in the former procedure.

STT API Integration			
Status		Service	
• Disabled		Google Cloud	
* API Key			
	کہرڈ		

3. In Settings section, select the transcription language.

The audio messages will be transcribed to text in the selected language.

- Note:

If the language of voicemail is different from the selected language, the transcribed text will be inaccurate.

4. Click Save.

If the integration succeeds, the Status in the STT API Integration section will display Connected.

STT API Integration		Disconnect
Status	Service	
Connected	Google Cloud	~
* API Key		
······		

#### What to do next

After the STT API integration succeeds, go to Call Features > Voicemail > Voicemail Settings to enable the Voicemail Transcription feature. For more information, see Enable or Disable Voicemail Transcription.

Related information <u>Speech to Text (STT) Overview</u> Disconnect Speech to Text (STT) API Integration

# Disconnect Speech to Text (STT) API Integration

After the STT API integration is connected, you can directly disconnect the API service on PBX if you don't need the Speech to Text feature any more, or want to pause the API service.

# Procedure

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Integrations > Speech to Text.
- 2. In the STT API Integration section, click Disconnect in the top-right corner.

STT API Integration			Disconnect
Status		Service	
Connected		Google Cloud	~
* API Key			
	5 <sub>77</sub> 4		

3. In the pop-up dialog box, click Confirm to disconnect the API service.

The API integration is disconnected, and the Status displays Disabled.

### Result

The Voicemail Transcription feature is unavailable.

# Asterisk Manager Interface (AMI) Overview

The Asterisk Manager Interface (AMI) is a system monitoring and management interface provided by Asterisk. Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports AMI that allows you to connect an AMI client to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

# What is Asterisk Manager Interface (AMI)

Asterisk Manager Interface (AMI) is a standard management interface into Asterisk server. It is a client/server model over TCP that allows a client program to connect to an Asterisk server and issue commands or read events over a TCP/IP stream. With the manager interface, you can control the PBX, originate calls, check mailbox status, monitor extensions and so on.

### Connect to Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition via AMI

- 1. Enable AMI on PBX.
  - a. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Integrations > AMI.
  - b. Enable AMI.
  - c. In the AMI section, configure the connection authentication.

- Username: Enter the username that can be used by third party to access the AMI of PBX.
- Password: Enter the password that can be used by third party to access the AMI of PBX.
- d. In the Permitted IP section, set which clients are allowed to access the AMI of PBX.
  - i. In the IP Address field, click Add.
  - ii. Enter the IP address or IP section that is allowed to access the AMI of PBX.

The input format should be XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX.

For example: IP address 216.207.245.47 with subnet mask 255.255.255.255 means that only the device with IP address 216.207.245.47 is allowed to access the PBX via AMI.

Pote:

You can add up to 4 permitted IP addresses.

e. Click Save and Apply.

The Server Address and Port of the PBX will be displayed on the web page and can NOT be modified.

* Username	* Password	
3rdparty		<u>بہ</u> د
Server Address	Port	
.proxy1.ptestsg.yeastarcloud.com	15018	

2. Configure AMI client with the authentication information provided on PBX, and connect client to PBX.

# **Database Grant**

# **Database Grant Overview**

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition is based on MySQL database. Database Grant is a feature that allows you to grant permissions for a third-party software to access the PBX database.

#### **Applications**

Database Grant is usually applied in the following scenarios:

Billing System

By accessing the PBX database, you can get CDR and save it to the local database of billing software. Then you can charge calls by CDR.

Call Center

Get CDR and save it to the local database of call center software.

#### Limitation

After accessing the PBX database, only cdr data is available to be checked and downloaded, other data cannot be accessed.

# Get CDR Data from Database of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to access the system database and get CDR data. This topic describes how to get CDR data from the PBX database via Navicat software.

### Procedure

- 1. Grant access to the PBX database
- 2. Access the PBX database via Navicat software

### Grant access to the PBX database

- 1. Log in to PBX web portal, go to Integration > Database Grant.
- 2. Turn on Database Grant option and configure the authentication information for the third-party software to access the PBX database.

mQRpgU7N Yduge	ei296kd ©
Database Address Port	

- User Name: Use the randomly generated user name or change the name.
- Password: Use the randomly generated password or change password.
- 3. In the Permitted IP section, configure which IP addresses are allowed to access the database.

IP Address					
* IP Address	* Subnet Mask	Operations			
110.80.36.162	255.255.255.0	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>			
	+ Add				

- a. Click Add.
- b. Enter the permitted IP address and subnet mask.

In this example, enter the public IP address of the current network 110.80.36.162 and subnet mask 255.255.0 to allow all IP addresses in the current network to access the database.

F Note: Restricted from MySQL database, only the two subnet masks are allowed to be filled in: 255.255.255.255 and 255.255.0.

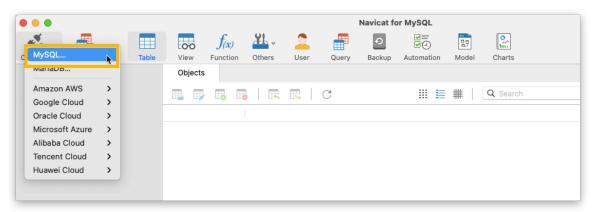
4. Click Save and Apply.

The Database Address and Port of the PBX will be displayed on the web page and can not be modified.

* User Name mQRpgU7N	* Password Ydugei296kd	0
Database Address	Port	
n.proxy1.ptestsg.yeastarcloud.com	15023	

#### Access the PBX database via Navicat software

- 1. Launch <u>Navicat for MySQL</u> on the PC.
- 2. On the Navicat for MySQL, click Connection and select MySQL.



3. In the pop-up window, enter the following information:

• • •	New Connection — MySQL	
	Seneral Advanced Databases SSL SSH HTT	P
	Navicat Server	
Connection Name:	PBX	
Host:	.proxy1.ptestsg.yeastarcloud.com	
Port:		
Password:	mQRpgU7N	
	✓ Save password	
Test Connection		Cancel Save

- Connection Name: Enter a connection name to help you identify it.
- Host: Enter the database address of PBX
- Port: Enter 15023.
- User Name: Enter the user name that is configured on the PBX. In this example, enter mQRpgU7N.
- Password: Enter the password that is configured on the PBX. In this example, enter Ydugei296kd.
- 4. Click Save.
- 5. To check CDR data, double click the new connection, and select cdr table.

For more information about the cdr table, see <u>cdr Table in the PBX Database</u>.

) 🔴 🔍							Navicat f	or MySQL	
Connection New Query	Table	View	$f_{(x)}$ Function	Others	2 User	Query	ව Backup	₩ 	E Mode
V 📐 PBX		Objects		🛄 cdr(	@cdr (PBX)				
cdr		<b>F</b>	<b>I</b>	🖪	<b>I</b>	C			#
cdr		Name		Rows	Data Length	Eng	ine	Created Date	
dueue_log		📰 cdr		824	384.	00 KB Inn	oDB	2021-03-18 16	6:00:06
> 💀 Views		🔛 que	ue_log	399	80.	UU KB INN	орв	2021-03-03 1	7:07:09
<i>f<sub>x</sub></i> Functions									
> 🕙 Events									
> 💼 Queries									
> 🖸 Backups									
information_schema									
									_

# cdr Table in the PBX Database

This topic describes details of cdr table stored in the database of Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition.

Field	Descriptions
id	System internal flag
datetime	Date and time
timestamp	System internal flag
uid	System internal flag
clid	System internal flag
src	Caller's number
srcname	Caller's name
srcaddr	System internal flag
dst	Callee's number
dstname	Callee's name
dcontext	System internal flag
channel	System internal flag
dstchannel	System internal flag
srctrunk	Source trunk

Field	Descriptions
dsttrunk	Destination trunk
lastapp	System internal flag
lastdata	System internal flag
duration	Total duration of the call (calculates from the begin- ning of the call)
ringduration	Ringing duration of the call
talkduration	Talk duration of the call (calculates after the call is answered)
disposition	Call status:
	<ul> <li>NO ANSWER</li> <li>FAILED</li> <li>BUSY</li> <li>ANSWERED</li> <li>VOICEMAIL</li> <li>CONGESTION</li> </ul>
amaflags	System internal flag
calltype	Communication Type
	<ul> <li>Internal</li> <li>Inbound</li> <li>Outbound</li> <li>Callback</li> </ul>
accountcode	System internal flag
uniqueid	System internal flag
didnumber	DID number
dodnumber	DOD number
recordfile	Recording file name
recordpath	Recordings path (with file name)
srcchanurl	Caller's SIP URI
dstchanurl	Callee's SIP URI
reasonpartya	System internal flag
reasonpartyb	System internal flag

Field	Descriptions
reasonpartyc	System internal flag
reasonpartyd	System internal flag
reasonpartye	System internal flag
reasonpartyf	System internal flag
displayonweb	System internal flag
src_del_cdr	System internal flag
dst_del_cdr	System internal flag
src_del_recording	System internal flag
dst_del_recording	System internal flag
srcnameprefix	System internal flag
dstnameprefix	System internal flag
misscall_isread	System internal flag
in2outbound	System internal flag
concurrentcalls	System internal flag
videocall	System internal flag
rascall	System internal flag
tryvideocall	System internal flag

# Refereneces

# Import and Export Parameters Overview

Check the required parameters, optional parameters, and restrictions in the import and export files.

## **Background information**

CSV (comma-separated values) files can expedite the bulk creation of various settings. A CSV file is a plain text file that stores tabular data from database-style tools, such as Excel.

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition allows you to export data as a CSV file, specify data in the CSV file, and import the file to PBX to modify settings in bulk, such as creating extensions in bulk using CSV file.

## Which features support importing and exporting data

Yeastar P-Series Cloud Edition supports importing and exporting data of the following modules:

- Note:

The supported parameters are different depending on firmware version.

- Extension Parameters
- Organization Parameters
- <u>Contacts Parameters</u>
- <u>Speed Dial Number Parameters</u>
- <u>Emergency Number Parameters</u>
- Trunk Parameters
- <u>Trunk DIDs/DDIs Parameters</u>
- <u>Trunk Outbound Caller ID Parameters</u>
- Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rule Parameters
- Inbound Route Parameters
- <u>Outbound Route Parameters</u>
- Outbound Call Frequency Restriction Rule Parameters
- <u>Rate Parameters</u>
- <u>Allowed Numbers Parameters</u>
- Blocked Numbers Parameters

# **Extension Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Extension CSV file.

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
First Name	The first name of extension user.	At lease one is re- quired	The maximum character length is 63.	Extension number
Last name	The last name of extension user.		Note: First Name will be filled with a value of Extension Number if you leave these fields empty.	N/A
Email Ad- dress	The email ad- dress of exten- sion user.	Optional	Only numbers, letters, and char- acters @ are allowed. Must start with a number, letter, or character _ and follow the email address format XXX@XXX.XX. Extension's email address can-	N/A
			not be duplicated. The maximum character length is 255.	
Mobile Number	The mobile number of ex- tension user.	Optional	Numbers, letters, and charac- ters ()+* # are allowed. The maximum character length is 31.	N/A
User Pass- word	The password for extension user to log in to Linkus client and PBX web portal.	Required	Must contain numbers, upper- case, and lowercase letters. Restriction: Do not allow four consecutive digits, four same digits, exten- sion number, first name, or last name. The minimum character length is 10 and the maximum is 63. Note:	Generate Randomly
			User Password will be gener- ated randomly if you leave this field empty.	
Organiza- tion	The organiza- tion to which	Optional	Permitted value: The organiza- tion names that existed in PBX.	Root orga- nization, name-

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
	the extension user belongs.		<ul> <li>• Organization will be filled with default value if you leave this field empty.</li> <li>• When entering the orga- nization name, it must be the full path of parent organization, connected by /. For multiple organi- zations, please use &amp; to separate.</li> </ul>	ly the Company Name.
			<ul> <li>Examples are given below:</li> <li>If belong to root organization "Yeastar", enter Yeastar.</li> <li>If belong to first-layer organization "Marketing Center", enter Yeastar/Marketing Center.</li> <li>If belong to second-layer organization "Support Team", enter Yeastar/Marketing Center/Support Team.</li> <li>If belong to multiple organizations, enter Yeastar/Marketing Center&amp;Yeastar/Product Management Center.</li> </ul>	
User Role	The role for ex- tension user with PBX man- agement per- mission.	Required	Permitted value: 0 or one of the role names defined in the PBX. 0 means [None].  Provide the role of the role of the PBX. 0 means [None].  Provide the role of the	0

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Extension Number	The exten- sion's number.	Required	Extension Number cannot be duplicated, and only numbers are allowed.	N/A
			The maximum character length is 7.	
Caller ID	The caller ID that is dis- played on the callee's device.	Required	Numbers, letters, and special characters ()+* # are al- lowed. The maximum character length is 31.	Extension Number
			Note: Caller ID will be filled with de- fault value Extension Number if you leave this field empty.	
Registra- tion Name	The registra- tion name that is used to vali- date extension registration.	Required	The maximum character length is 63.	Generate Randomly
			Note: Registration Name will be gen- erated randomly if you leave this field empty.	
Registra- tion Pass- word	The password for the user to register the SIP extension.	Required	Must contain numbers, upper- case, and lowercase letters.	Generate Randomly
			Restriction: Do not allow four consecutive digits, four same digits, exten- sion number, first name, or last name.	
			The minimum character length is 10 and the maximum is 63.	
			Note: Registration Password will be generated randomly if you leave this field empty.	

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
IP Phone Concurrent Registra- tions	How many SIP phones are al- lowed to regis- ter with the ex- tension.	Required	<ul> <li>Permitted value:</li> <li>1: Allow one phone to register with the extension.</li> <li>2: Allow two phones to register with the extension.</li> <li>3: Allow three phones to register with the extension.</li> <li>3: Allow three phones to register with the extension.</li> </ul>	1
Emergency Outbound Caller ID	The outbound Caller ID for the extension when it makes emergency calls.	Optional	Numbers, letters, and charac- ters ( ) + * # are allowed. The maximum character length is 31.	N/A
Enable Voicemail	Whether to en- able or disable voicemail fea- ture.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Prote: Enable Voicemail will be filled with default value 1 if you leave this field empty.	1
Voicemail PIN Au- thentica- tion	Whether to en- able or disable voicemail PIN authentication.	Required if Enable Voicemail = 1	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable For Note:	1

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
			Voicemail PIN Authentication will be filled with default value 1 if you leave this field empty.	
Voicemail Access PIN	The PIN for au- thentication when access- ing voicemail box.	Required if Enable Voice- mail = 1 & Voice- mail PIN Authenti-	Only numbers are allowed. The minimum character length is 3 and the maximum is 15. Note: Voicemail Access PIN will be	Generate Randomly
		cation = 1	generated randomly if you leave this field empty.	
New Voice- mail Notifi- cation	The notifica- tion type for new voicemail.	Required if Enable Voicemail = 1	<ul> <li>Permitted value:</li> <li>no: No Email Notifications</li> <li>with_attach: Send Email Notifications with Attachment</li> <li>without_attach: Send Email Notifications without Attachment</li> <li>Without_attach: Send Email Notifications without Attachment</li> <li>Imail Notifications without Attachment</li> <li>Imail Notification will be filled with default value no if you leave this field or Email Address empty.</li> </ul>	no
After Notification	The way to handle voice- mail message in mailbox af- ter receiving the message notification via email.	Required if Enable Voicemail = 1 & New Voice- mail No- tification = with_at- tach	Permitted value: • no: Do Nothing • mark_read: Mark as read • delete: Delete Voicemail Prote: After Notification will be filled with default val- ue no if you leave these fields empty.	no

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
		Required if Enable Voicemail = 1 & New Voice- mail Noti- fication = without attach	Permitted value: • no: Do Nothing • mark_read: Mark as read Permitted val: • mark_read: Mark as read • mark as re	no
Play Date and Time	Whether to an- nounce arrival time of the message be- fore playing the voicemail mes- sage.	Required if Enable Voicemail = 1	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Play Date and Time will be filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	0
Play Caller ID	Whether to an- nounce caller ID of the par- ty that left the message be- fore playing the voicemail mes- sage.	Required if Enable Voicemail = 1	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Play Caller ID will be filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	0
Play Mes- sage Dura- tion	The duration of the mes- sage (in min- utes) will be announced be- fore playing the voicemail mes- sage.	Required if Enable Voicemail = 1	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Play Message Duration will be filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	0

<b>.</b> .		Impor-		Default
Parameter	Description	tance	Restriction	Value
Send email notifica- tion when the User Password is changed	Whether to send email notification when the User Password is changed.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Prote: Send email notification when the User Password is changed will be filled with default value 1 if you leave this field empty.	1
Send email notifica- tions on missed calls	Whether to send email no- tifications on missed calls.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 0: D	0
Allow the extension to view recordings	Whether to al- low users to view and man- age their own recordings.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Provide the extension to view Provide the ext	1
Recording operation	Whether to al- low users to switch their own recording status during a call.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: No permission • 1: Pause/Resume • 2: Start/Pause/Resume	0

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
			Recording operation will be filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	
All Busy Mode for Endpoints	Whether to for- ward a new in- coming call to the Busy des- tination when one of the end- points with ex- tension regis- tered is busy in a call.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable	0
Call Popup URL	Whether to automatical- ly open a cus- tom URL (web page) upon re- ceiving an in- coming call.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable The second state of the second state of	0
Popup URL	The address of third-party URL, followed by the variables that you want to pass.	Required if Call Popup URL = 1	The maximum character length is 255.	http:// exam- ple.com/somepage.php? num- ber={{.Caller- Num- ber}}&name={{- .Caller- Display- Name}}
Communi- cation type	The types of calls that will trigger the call popup.	Required if Call Popup URL = 1	<ul> <li>Permitted value: Internal and Inbound.</li> <li>For multiple types, enter values in order and use &amp; as a separator, e.g. Internal &amp; Inbound.</li> </ul>	Inbound

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
			<ul> <li>If the value you enter is not permitted, it will be skipped.</li> </ul>	
Trigger Event	When the call popup will be automatically triggered.	Required if Call Popup URL = 1	Permitted value: Ringing, An- swered, and Call End. Prigger Event will be filled with default value Ringing if you leave the field empty.	Ringing
Allow Be- ing Moni- tored	Whether to al- low the user's calls to be monitored.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable •	1
DTMF Mode	The mode for sending DTMF tones.	Required	Permitted value: rfc4733, info, inband or auto. Prote: DTMF Mode will be filled with default value rfc4733 if you leave this field empty.	rfc4733
Transport	The protocol for transport.	Required	Permitted value: udp, tcp, or tls. Pote: Transport will be filled with default value udp if you leave these fields empty.	udp
Qualify	Whether to send the SIP OPTIONS pack- et periodically to the SIP de- vice to check	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable For Note:	1

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
	if the device is online.		Qualify will be filled with de- fault value1 if you leave this field empty.	
T.38 Sup- port	Whether to support T.38 fax for this ex- tension.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable T.38 Support will be filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	0
SRTP	Whether to encrypt RTP packets.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 0:	0
Disable Outbound Calls	Whether to re- strict the user from making outbound calls.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Prote: Disable Outbound Calls will be filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	0
Disable Outbound Calls out- side Busi- ness Hours	Whether to re- strict the user from making outbound calls outside busi- ness hours.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable F Note: Disable Outbound Calls outside Business Hours will be filled	0

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction with default value 0 if you leave	Default Value
			this field empty.	
Disallow In- ternational Calls	Whether to re- strict the user from making international calls.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Prote: Disable International Calls will be filled with default value 1 if you leave this field empty.	1
Outbound Route Per- mission	Specify the outbound routes that this extension is al- lowed to use.	Optional	<ul> <li>Permitted value: one or more outbound route names existed in PBX.</li> <li>► Note:</li> <li>• If the outbound route name you enter does not exist in PBX, it will be skipped.</li> <li>• For multiple outbound routes, please enter outbound route names and use a s a separator, e.g. name1&amp;name2.</li> </ul>	N/A
Max Out- bound Call Duration (s)	The maximum call duration in seconds for making out- bound calls from this ex- tension.	Required	Only numbers are allowed. Specially, -1 means follow sys- tem and 0 means unlimited. The maximum character length is 7. Note: Max Outbound Call Duration (s) will be filled with default value -1 if you leave these fields emp- ty.	-1

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Outbound Call Fre- quency Re- striction	The restric- tion rule(s) that used to limit the extension outbound call frequency with- in specified time period.	Optional	<ul> <li>Permitted value: One or more Outbound Call Frequency Re- striction names existed in PBX.</li> <li>Is Note:</li> <li>Use &amp; to separate multiple names, e.g. name1&amp;name2.</li> <li>If you leave this field empty, it will be filled with default value.</li> <li>If the names you entered are not existing in PBX, it will be skipped.</li> </ul>	Default Ext_Out- bound Call Fre- quency
Linkus Mo- bile Client	Whether to al- low the exten- sion user to log in to Linkus Mobile Client.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 1: Enable • 1: Enable	1
Linkus Desktop Client	Whether to al- low the exten- sion user to log in to Linkus Desktop Client.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Prote: Linkus Desktop Client will be filled with default value 1 if you leave this field empty.	1
Linkus Web Client	Whether to al- low the exten- sion user to	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable	1

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
	log in to Linkus Web Client.		Note: Linkus Web Client will be filled with default value 1 if you leave this field empty.	

Export and Import SIP Extensions

# **Organization Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Organization CSV file.

Parameter	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Organization Name	Required	The maximum character length is 127.	N/A
Parent Organization	Required	<ul> <li>Permitted value: The full path of parent organization.</li> <li>For multiple organizations, please use &amp; to separate.</li> <li>Examples are shown as below: <ul> <li>If belong to root organization "Yeastar", enter Yeastar.</li> <li>If belong to first-layer organization "Marketing Center", enter Yeastar/Marketing Center.</li> <li>If belong to second-layer organization "Support Team", enter Yeastar/Market-ing Center/Support Team.</li> <li>If belong to multiple organizations, enter Yeastar/Marketing Center%</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	N/A

Related information

**Export and Import Organizations** 

### **Contacts Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Company Contacts CSV file and Personal Contacts CSV file.

Parameter	Importance	Restriction	
First Name	At lease one	The maximum character length is 127 (63 for first	
Last Name is required		name and 63 for last name).	
Company Name	Optional	The maximum character length is 127.	
Email	Optional	Only numbers, letters, and characters @ are al- lowed. Must start with a number, letter, or character _ and follow the email address format XXX@XXX.XX.	
		The maximum character length is 255.	
Business Num- ber	At lease one is required	Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	
		The maximum character length is 31.	
Business Num- ber 2		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	
		The maximum character length is 31.	
Business Fax		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	
		The maximum character length is 31.	
Mobile		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	
		The maximum character length is 31.	
Mobile 2		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	
		The maximum character length is 31.	
Home		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	
		The maximum character length is 31.	
Home 2		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	
		The maximum character length is 31.	
Home Fax		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	

Parameter	Importance	Restriction
		The maximum character length is 31.
Other		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.
		The maximum character length is 31.
ZIP Code	Optional	The maximum character length is 255.
Street	Optional	The maximum character length is 255.
City	Optional	The maximum character length is 255.
State	Optional	The maximum character length is 255.
Country	Optional	The maximum character length is 255.
Remark	Optional	The maximum character length is 1024.
Phonebook	Optional	Permitted value: One or more phonebook names ex- isted in PBX. For multiple phonebooks, enter the names and use & as a separator, e.g. phonebook_name1&phonebook name2.
		<ul> <li>Phonebook will be filled with default value Default_All_Contacts if you leave these fields empty.</li> <li>System will create new phonebook(s) if you fill in a name that doesn't exist.</li> </ul>

Export and Import Company Contacts Linkus Web Client Guide - Export personal contacts Linkus Web Client Guide - Import personal contacts

#### **Speed Dial Number Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Speed Dial Number CSV file.

Parameter	Importance	Restriction
Speed Dial Number	Required	The maximum character length is 4.

Parameter	Importance	Restriction	
		Only numbers and characters * # are allowed.	
		Speed dial number cannot be duplicated.	
Phone Number	Required	The maximum character length is 31.	
		Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	

Export and Import Speed Dial Numbers

# **Emergency Number Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Emergency Number CSV file.

Parameter	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Name	Re- quired	The maximum character length is 63. Characters ; " , \ are not allowed. Emergency number's name cannot be duplicated.	N/A
Emergency Number	Re- quired	The maximum character length is 31. Numbers, letters, and characters () + * # are allowed. Emergency number cannot be dupli- cated.	N/A
Emergency Outbound Caller ID Priority	Re- quired		
		will be filled with default value emer- gency_first if you leave this field emp- ty.	

Parameter	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Trunk	Re- quired	Permitted value: one of trunks' name existed in PBX.	N/A
Trunk's Emergency Out- bound Caller ID	Option- al	The maximum character length is 31. Numbers, letters, and characters ( ) + * # are allowed.	N/A

Export and Import Emergency Numbers

## **Trunk Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Trunk CSV file.

Note: Only SIP Peer Trunk and Register Trunks can be exported and imported.

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
Name	The trunk name.	Required	The maximum character len
			Space and special character
			Trunk's name cannot be dup
Trunk Status	Whether to enable or disable the trunk.	Required	Permitted value:
			• 0: Disable
			• 1: Enable
			Pote:
			Trunk Status will be filled wir field empty.
Trunk Type	Trunk type.	Required	Permitted value:
			•
			• register
			• did_based
			port_based
			<ul> <li>private_network</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
			<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>Importing Account Tru</li> <li>Trunk Typewill be filled leave this field empty.</li> </ul>
Transport	The transport protocol that is provided by the ITSP.	Required	<ul> <li>Permitted value:</li> <li>If Trunk Type is port_bate</li> <li>If Trunk Type is did_bate</li> <li>If Trunk Type is private</li> <li>ported.</li> <li>If Trunk Type is registed</li> </ul>
Hostname/IP	The IP address or the domain	Required	Transport will be filled with of fields empty. The maximum character len
Port	of the ITSP. The trunk port.	Required	Only numbers between 0 and
Domain	The domain in SIP URI of a specific header like From, To header.	Required	The maximum character len
	If the domain is not provided by ITSP, enter the same value as Hostname/IP.		
Username	The username to register to the ITSP.	Required if Trunk Type = register	The maximum character len
Password	The password that is associ- ated with the username.	Required if Trunk Type = register	The maximum character len
Authentication Name	The authentication name to register to the ITSP.	Optional	The maximum character len
Enable Out- bound Proxy	Whether to enable or disable outbound proxy.	Required if Trunk Type = register	Permitted value: • 0: Disable

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
			• 1: Enable
			Note: Enable Outbound Proxy will I leave this field empty.
Outbound Proxy Server	The address of outbound proxy server.	Required if Enable Out- bound Proxy = 1	The maximum character len
Port of Out- bound Proxy Server	The port of outbound proxy server.	Required if Enable Out- bound Proxy = 1	Only numbers between 1 and
Codec Setting	The audio codec for trunk.	Required	Permitted value: ulaw, alaw, g722, g726, speex, adpcm, v
			For multiple Codec, please e separator, e.g. first_value1&
			Note: If the value you enter is not p skipped.
DTMF Mode	The default mode for sending DTMF tones.	Required	Permitted value: rfc4733, inf
			Note: DTMF Mode will be filled wit this field empty.
DTMF FMTP	The value of the DTMF fmtp attribute when the DTMF	Optional	Permitted value: 0-16, 0-15.
	mode is rfc4733.		Note: This field will be filled with d field empty.
Qualify	Whether to send SIP OPTION packet to check if the SIP de- vice is up.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
			Note: Qualify will be filled with def empty.

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
Enable SRTP	Whether to enable or disable SRTP (encrypted RTP) for the trunk.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable SRTP will be filled with
			field empty.
T.38 Support	Whether to enable or disable T.38 fax.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
			Note: T.38 Support will be filled will field empty.
Inband Progress	Whether to enable or disable inband progress.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
			Note: Inband Progress will be filled field empty.
Ignore 183 Message with- out SDP	Whether to ignore 183 mes- sages without SDP.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
			Note: Ignore 183 Message without 0 if you leave this field empt
Maximum Concurrent	Specify the maximum number of concurrent calls allowed in	Required	Only numbers are allowed.
Calls	the trunk.		Specially, 0 means unlimited The maximum character length
			Prote:

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
			Maximum Concurrent Calls you leave this field empty.
Call Restric- tion Type	Specify based on which type of calls to define the maxi-	Required	Permitted value: outbound o
	mum number of concurrent calls for this trunk.		Note: Call Restriction Type will be you leave this field empty.
Default Out- bound Caller ID	The caller ID that is displayed on the callee's device.	Optional	Numbers, letters, and charac The maximum character len
			F Note: The outbound caller ID shou
Default Out- bound Caller ID Name	The caller ID name that is displayed on the callee's device.	Optional	The maximum character len
Get Caller ID From	Decide from which header field will the trunk retrieve Caller ID.	Required	Permitted value: • follow_system: [Follow • from: From • contact: Contact • rpid: Remote-Party-ID • pai: P-Asserted-Identit • ppi: P-Preferred-Identit
			Note: Get Caller ID From will be fill if you leave this field empty.
Get DID From	Different devices or providers may contain DID numbers in different SIP headers. When an inbound call through a SIP trunk reaches the PBX, the PBX needs to retrieve a cor- rect DID number, or the call will fail. Adjust the setting after analy- sis of the SIP packets sent from the trunk provider.	Required	Permitted value: • follow_system: [Follow • to: To • invite: Invite • diversion: Diversion • rpid: Remote-Party-ID • pai: P-Asserted-Identit • ppi: P-Preferred-Identit • pcpid: P-Called-Party-II

Parameter	Description	Importance	
			Get DID From will be filled w leave this field empty.
From User Part	A From header contains caller ID and caller ID name.	Required	Permitted value:
	From User Part indicates caller ID.		<ul> <li>default: [Default]</li> <li>ext_cid: Extension Call</li> <li>trunk_user: Trunk User</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Note:</li> <li>Only available when Tr</li> <li>trunk_def_outbcid: Tru</li> <li>ext_outbcid: Extension</li> <li>outrounter_outbcid: Ou</li> <li>originator_cid: Originat</li> <li>A customized value.</li> </ul>
			Fill in a desired value c Fill in a desired value c length is 31. Only num *, # are allowed.
			➡ Note: From User Part will be filled this field empty.
From Display Name Part	A From header contains caller ID and caller ID name.	Required	Permitted value:
	From Display Name Part indi- cates caller ID name.		<ul> <li>default: [Default]</li> <li>ext_cid_name: Extension</li> <li>trunk_def_outbcid_name</li> <li>ext_outbcid_name: Ext Trunk</li> <li>originator_cid_name: Construction</li> <li>A customized value.</li> </ul>
			Note: Fill in a desired value of length is 63.
			Pote:

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
			From Display Name Part will you leave this field empty.
Diversion	Define the parameters included in the Diversion SIP header.	Optional	Permitted value: • default: [Default] • ext_cid: Extension Call • trunk_user: Trunk User Prunk_der: Trunk User • trunk_def_outbcid: Tru • ext_outbcid: Extension • outrounter_outbcid: Out • originator_cid: Originat • A customized value. • A customized value. • Fill in a desired value of length is 31. Only num *, # are allowed. • Note: Leave Diversion field empty meter with SIP INVITE packet
Remote-Par- ty-ID	Define the parameters includ- ed in the Remote-Party-ID SIP header.	Optional	Permitted value: • default: [Default] • ext_cid: Extension Call • trunk_user: Trunk User Provide the set of the set o

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
			Fill in a desired value of length is 31. Only num *, # are allowed. FNote: Leave Remote-Party-ID field this parameter with SIP INVI
P-Assert- ed-Identity	Define the parameters includ- ed in the P-Asserted-Identity SIP header.	Optional	Permitted value: • default: [Default] • ext_cid: Extension Call • trunk_user: Trunk User Ponly available when Tr • trunk_def_outbcid: Tru • ext_outbcid: Extension • outrounter_outbcid: Out • originator_cid: Originat • A customized value. Pote: Fill in a desired value of length is 31. Only num *, # are allowed. Note: Leave P-Asserted-Identity fie this parameter with SIP INVI
P-Pre- ferred-Identity	Define the parameters includ- ed in the P-Preferred-Identity SIP header.	Optional	Permitted value: • default: [Default] • ext_cid: Extension Call • trunk_user: Trunk User Provide the set of the set o

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
			<ul> <li>A customized value.</li> <li>Note: Fill in a desired value of length is 31. Only num *, # are allowed.</li> <li>Note: Leave P-Preferred-Identity fill this parameter with SIP INVI</li> </ul>
User Agent	If the ITSP requires User Agent for authentication, en- ter the User Agent information that is provided by the ITSP.	Optional	The maximum character len
Realm	Realm is a string displayed to users so they know which username and password to use.	Optional	The maximum character len
Send Privacy ID	Whether to send the Privacy ID in SIP header or not.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
User Phone	Whether to add the parameter user=phone as a request line in the header field of the SIP INVITE packet.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
100rel	Whether to support 100rel or not.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
Maxptime	Select the value of the Max- ptime used when the PBX sends the INVITE packet.	Required	Permitted value: • default: PBX will send cording to the codec th • A customized value. Fill in a desired value of ple of 10 ranging from

Parameter	Description	Importance	F
			Note: Maxptime will be filled with field empty.
Support P-Ear- ly-Media	Set whether the P-Early-Media field is included in the INVITE packet.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable
DID/DDI	A virtual number that is used to identify which path of the trunk is passing the call.	Required if Trunk Type = register or did_based	The maximum character len Note: <ul> <li>If Trunk Type = regist and characters ()+</li> <li>If Trunk Type = port_b letters, and characters</li> </ul>
DID/DDI Name	The name of DID/DDI that is used to identify which path of the trunk is passing the call.	Optional	The maximum character len

#### Related reference

Trunk DIDs/DDIs Parameters Related information Export and Import SIP Trunks

#### **Trunk DIDs/DDIs Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Trunk DIDs/DDIs CSV file.

Parameter	Description	Importance	Restriction	Default Value
DID/DDI	A virtual num- ber that is used to identify which path of the trunk is passing the call.	Required if Trunk Type = register or did_based	The maximum character length is 31. Note: • If Trunk Type = register or did based: Numbers,	N/A

Parameter	Description	Importance	Restriction	Default Value
			<ul> <li>letters, and characters () + *# are allowed.</li> <li>If Trunk Type = port_based or private_network: Numbers, letters, and characters []</li> <li>* # () + ! are allowed.</li> </ul>	
DID/DDI Name	The name of DID/ DDI that is used to identify which path of the trunk is passing the call.	Optional	The maximum character length is 127.	N/A

Export and Import Trunk DIDs/DDIs Numbers

## Trunk Outbound Caller ID Parameters

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Trunk Outbound Caller ID CSV file.

Para- meter	Descrip- tion	Impor- tance	Restriction	De- fault Value
Create Method	The way to add outbound caller ID.	Required	Permitted value: <ul> <li>single: Shared Outbound Caller ID</li> <li>range: Outbound Caller ID Range</li> </ul> F. Note:	single
			Create Method will be filled with default value single if you leave this field empty.	
Outbound Caller ID	ID that is	Required	Numbers, letters, characters []()+*#, and placeholder {{.Ext}} are allowed.	N/A
displayed on the	displayed on the		The maximum character length is 31(for each caller ID).	

Para- meter	Descrip- tion	Impor- tance	Restriction	De- fault Value
	callee's de- vice for specif- ic exten- sions.		<ul> <li>For outbound caller id range:</li> <li>Only numbers and character + (before numbers) are allowed. Fill in the start caller ID and the end caller ID with separator -, e.g. 5503301-5503310.</li> <li>The start number and the end num- ber must have the same amount of digits and both contain character + or neither. The range of start number and end number cannot exceed 500.</li> <li>Then fill the extension range in As- sociated Extensions. The extension range and the outbound caller ID range must have the same amount of numbers.</li> </ul>	
Outbound Caller ID Name	The caller ID that is displayed on the callee's de- vice for specif- ic exten- sions.	Optional	The maximum character length is 127.	N/A
Associat- ed Exten- sions	The ex- tensions that are associat- ed with the Outbound Caller ID and Out- bound Caller Name.	Required	<ul> <li>Permitted value: one or more extension numbers and extension group names exist- ed in PBX.</li> <li>For multiple extensions or groups, please enter the numbers or names and use &amp; as a separator, e.g. ex- tension_number1&amp;extension_num- ber2&amp;extension_group_name3.</li> <li>If the extensions or groups you en- ter are not existing in PBX, it will be skipped.</li> <li>For extension range, please fill in the start extension number and the end extension number with separator -,</li> </ul>	N/A

	Para- meter	Descrip- tion	Impor- tance	Restriction	De- fault Value
Ì				e.g. 1001-1010. The maximum num- ber length is 7 (for each number).	

Export and Import Trunk Outbound Caller IDs

### Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rule Parameters

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported 'Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rule' CSV file.

Para- meter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	De- fault Value
Patterns	The inbound caller ID that matches this pat- tern will be reformat- ted.	Required	Numbers, letters, and charac- ters [] * # () + ! are allowed. The maximum character length is 31.	N/A
Strip	Specify how many digits will be stripped from the beginning of the inbound caller ID.	Optional	Only numbers are allowed. The maximum character length is 2.	N/A
Prepend	Specify the digits that will be prepended to the inbound caller ID.	Optional	Numbers, letters, and charac- ters ()+* # are allowed. The maximum character length is 31.	N/A

**Related information** 

Export and Import Inbound Caller ID Reformatting Rules

### **Inbound Route Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in imported and exported Inbound Route CSV file.

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Name	The name of in- bound route.	Required	Space and special characters are not allowed.	N/A
			Inbound route's name cannot be duplicated.	
_			The maximum character length is 63.	
Inbound Alert Info	The Alert Info field is used to	Optional	Only numbers and letters are allowed.	N/A
	configure dis- tinctive ring tones for in- coming calls.		The maximum character length is 31.	
DID Matching Mode	The DID match- ing mode.	Optional	Permitted value: • patterns: DID Patterns • pattern_to_ext: DID Pat- tern to Extensions • range_to_ext: DID Range to Extension Range	patterns
			Note: DID Matching Mode will be filled with default value pat- terns if you leave these fields empty.	
DID Pattern	The DID pattern that is used to match callee number. On- ly when the callee number is matched will the inbound call go through this route.	Required if DID Matching Mode ≠ patterns	<ul> <li>If DID Matching Mode = patterns, you can enter one or more patterns.</li> <li>Numbers, letters X Z</li> <li>N, and characters []*</li> <li># ()+! are allowed.</li> <li>The maximum character length is 31 (for each DID). Please use &amp; as a separator for multiple patterns, e.g. pattern1&amp;pattern2.</li> <li>If DID Matching Mode = pattern_to_ext, only numbers, letters X Z N,</li> </ul>	N/A

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
			characters [] * # () - +, and placeholder {{.Ext}} are allowed. The maxi- mum character length is 31.	
			<ul> <li>The Default Destination must be pattern_to_ext, then fill multiple exten- sion numbers with sepa- rator &amp; in Number.</li> <li>If DID Matching Mode</li> <li>range_to_ext, only numbers and charac- ter + (before numbers) are allowed. The maxi- mum character length is 16 (for each DID). Please enter the start DID and the end DID with separator -, e.g. 5503301-5503305.</li> </ul>	
			The Default Destination must be range_to_ext, then fill the start num- ber and the end number with separator - in Num- ber, e.g. 1001-1005.	
Caller ID Matching Mode	The Caller ID matching mode.	Required	<ul> <li>Permitted value:</li> <li>patterns: Caller ID Matching Settings</li> <li>phonebook: Match Con- tacts' Caller ID in Specif- ic Phonebooks</li> </ul>	patterns
			➡ Note: Caller ID Matching Mode will be filled with default val- ue patterns if you leave this fields empty.	

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Caller ID Pat- tern	The pattern used to match caller ID. Only when the caller ID matches the pattern can user dials in	Optional	<ul> <li>If Caller ID Matching Mode = patterns, the maximum character length is 31 (for each pattern). Numbers, let- ters, characters [] * # ()  + ! are allowed.</li> </ul>	N/A
	through this route.		<ul> <li>For multiple patterns, enter patterns and use &amp; as a separator, e.g. pat- tern1&amp;pattern2.</li> <li>If Caller ID Matching Mode = phonebook, the permitted value is one or more phonebook names existed in PBX.</li> </ul>	
			For multiple phonebook names, enter names and use & as a separator, e.g. name1&name2.	
			If the phonebook you enter does not exist in PBX, it will be skipped.	
Trunks	The trunks that incoming calls will be rout- ed by this in- bound route. The PBX will route inbound calls through this route when external users call the select- ed trunk num- ber.	Required	Permitted value: one or more trunk names existed in PBX. For multiple trunks, please enter trunk names and use & as a separator, e.g. name1&name2. Note: If the trunks you enter are not existing in PBX, Trunks will be skipped.	N/A
Default Desti- nation	The default destination to receive in- bound calls.	Required	Permitted value: • end_call: Hang up • extension: Extension	end_call

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
			<ul> <li>range_to_ext: Match extension Range (DID Matching Mode = range_to_ext)</li> <li>pattern_to_ext: Match selected Extension (DID Matching Mode = pat- tern_to_ext)</li> <li>ext_vm: Extension Voicemail</li> <li>group_vm: Group Exten- sion</li> <li>ivr: IVR</li> <li>ring_group: Ring Group</li> <li>queue: Queue</li> <li>conference: Conference</li> <li>fax_to_email: Fax to Email</li> </ul>	
Number of De- fault Destina- tion	The destination number to re- ceive inbound calls.	Required if Default Desti- nation ≠ end_call	<ul> <li>Permitted value:</li> <li>If Default Destination <ul> <li>Extension, Extension</li> <li>Email, Group Voicemail,</li> <li>IVR, Ring Group, Queue,</li> <li>Conference, or Fax to</li> <li>Email, please fill in a</li> <li>number.</li> </ul> </li> <li>If Default Destination <ul> <li>Match extension</li> <li>Range, please fill in a</li> <li>range of extension, e.g.</li> <li>1000-1010.</li> </ul> </li> <li>The maximum number length is 7 (for each number).</li> </ul>	N/A

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
			<ul> <li>If Default Destination = Match selected Exten- sion, please fill in num- bers or names and use &amp; as a separator, e.g. ex- tension_number1&amp;ex- tension_number2&amp;ex- tension_group_name3.</li> </ul>	
			F Note: If the numbers or names you enter are not existing in PBX, Number of Default Destina- tion will be skipped.	
Enable Fax De- tection	Whether to en- able or disable FAX detection.	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable • 1: Enable	0
			filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	
Fax Destina- tion	The destination to receive fax.	Required if Enable Fax De- tection = 1	Permitted value: • end_call: Hang Up • extension: Extension • fax_to_email: Fax to Email	exten- sion
			F Note: Fax Destination will be filled with default value extension if you leave this field empty.	
Number of Fax Destina- tion	The destination number to re- ceive fax.	Required if Fax Desti- nation ≠ end_call	Permitted value: extension numbers existed in PBX. • If Fax Destination = Ex- tension, fax will be sent to extension number.	N/A

	Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
_				<ul> <li>If Fax Destination = Fax to Email, fax will be sent to extension's email ad- dress.</li> </ul>	

Related information Export and Import Inbound Routes

## **Outbound Route Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Outbound Route CSV file.

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Name	The name of out- bound route.	Required	Space and special charac- ters are not allowed.	N/A
			Outbound route's name cannot be duplicated.	
			The maximum character length is 63.	
Outbound Caller ID	The caller ID that is displayed on the callee's device.	Optional	Numbers, letters, and char- acters [] () + * # and placeholder {{.Ext}} are al- lowed.	pat- terns
			The maximum character length is 31.	
Pattern	The pattern used to match a callee number. Only when the callee number is matched will the	Required	Numbers, letters X Z N, and characters [] * # ( ) + ! are allowed. The maximum character length is 31.	Х.
	outbound call go through this route.		Note: Pattern will be filled with default value X. if you leave these fields empty.	
Strip	The number of digits that will be stripped from the	Optional	Only numbers 1 - 16 are al- lowed.	N/A

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
	front of callee num- ber before the call is placed.			
Prepend	The digits that will be prepended to the callee number	Optional	Numbers, letters, and char- acters ( ) + * # are al- lowed.	N/A
	before the call is placed.		The maximum character length is 31.	
Trunks	The trunks that can be used to dial out. The PBX will route	Required	Permitted value: one or more trunk names existed in PBX.	N/A
	outbound calls through this trunk when the dialed number matches the outbound route.		For multiple trunks, please enter trunk names and use & as a separator, e.g. name1&name2.	
			Note: If the trunk you enter does not exist in PBX, it will be skipped.	
Rrmemory Hunt	Whether to remem- ber which trunk was used last time, and then use the next available trunk	Required	Permitted value: • 0: Disable • 1: Enable	0
	to call out.		Note: Rrmemory Hunt will be filled with default value 0 if you leave this field empty.	
Extensions	The extensions that are allowed to make outbound calls through this route.	Optional	Permitted value: one or more extension numbers, extension group names, or organization names existed in PBX. Format:	exten- sion
			<ul> <li>When entering the or- ganization name, you must enter the com-</li> </ul>	

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
			<pre>plete path with par- ent organization(s) connected by char- acter /, and with the prefix Organiza- tion_, i.e. Organiza- tion_{Parent Or- ganization}/{Or- ganization Name}. For example, Orga- nization_Yeast- ar/Marketing Cen- ter/Training Team.</pre> For multiple exten- sions, extension groups, or organi- zations, please en- ter the numbers or names and use & as a separator, e.g- . extension_num- ber1&extension number2&extension group_name3&Orga- nization/Organization Name4.	
			Note: If the extensions, groups, or organizations you en- tered are not existing in PBX, it will be skipped.	
Outbound Route Pass- word	Whether to require users to enter the same PIN to make outbound calls through this route.	Required	Permitted value: disable, single_pin, or pin_list. Note: Outbound Route Password will be filled with default value disable if you leave these fields empty.	disable

Parameter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
PIN	The PIN is required to make outbound calls through this route.	Required if Out- bound Route Pass- word is single pin	Only numbers are allowed. The minimum character length is 3 and the maxi- mum is 15.	N/A
PIN List	The PIN codes in the selected PIN list are required to make outbound calls through this route.	Required if Out- bound Route Pass- word is pin_list	Permitted value: The name of a PIN list existed in PBX. PNote: If the PIN list name you en- tered is not existing in PBX, it will be skipped.	N/A

Export and Import Outbound Routes

### **Outbound Call Frequency Restriction Rule Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' CSV file.

Ta	ble	57.

Para- meter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	De- fault Value
Name	The name of Out- bound Call Fre- quency Restric- tion rule.	Required	The maximum character length is 127. P Note: The name of an Outbound Call Fre- quency Restriction cannot be dupli- cated.	N/A
Restric- tions	How many out- bound calls users can make within a	Required	Format: {number_of_calls_lim- it}/{time_limit}/{time_unit} Example: 200/10/second	N/A

Para- meter	Description	Impor- tance	Restriction	De- fault Value
	specific time period.		<ul> <li>Note: Use &amp; to separate multiple re- strictions, e.g. 200/10/sec- ond&amp;3000/1/minute.</li> <li>Variables: {number_of_calls_limit}: • Only numbers are allowed. • The maximum character length is 5.</li> <li>{time_limit}: • Only numbers are allowed. • The maximum character length is 5.</li> <li>{time_unit}: Permitted value: second or minute.</li> </ul>	

Table 57. (continued)

Export and Import 'Outbound Call Frequency Restriction' Rules

#### **Rate Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Rate CSV file.

Parameter	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Name	Required	The maximum character length is 127.	N/A
Match Prefix	Optional	The maximum character length is 31.	N/A
		Numbers, letters, and characters []*#()+! are allowed.	
Number Length	Optional	The maximum character length is 2.	N/A

Parameter	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
		Only numbers are allowed.	
Rate	Required	The maximum character length is 7.	0
		Only numbers and characters . are allowed.	
Billable	Required	The maximum character length is 3.	60
Unit(s)		Only numbers are allowed.	
Initial Time(s)	Required	The maximum character length is 3.	0
		Only numbers are allowed.	

Export and Import Call Rate Rules

#### **Allowed Numbers Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Allowed Numbers CSV files.

Table Jo.			
Para- meter	Importance	Restriction	Default Value
Name	Required	The maximum character length is 127.	N/A
Туре	Required	<ul> <li>Permitted value:</li> <li>inbound: Allow the number(s) to call into the PBX.</li> <li>outbound: Allow PBX extensions to call the number(s).</li> <li>both: Allow the number(s) to call into the PBX and allow PBX extensions to call the number(s).</li> </ul>	inbound
		Type will be filled with default value inbound if you leave this field empty.	

Table 58.

Para-	Importance	Restriction	Default Value
meter	importance	Restriction	Default value
Number	Required	Numbers, letters, and characters [ ] * # ( ) + ! are allowed.	N/A
		For multiple numbers or number pat- terns, use & as a separator, eg. num- ber1&number2.	

Table 58. (continued)

#### **Blocked Numbers Parameters**

Descriptions for parameters in exported and imported Blocked Numbers CSV files.

Para- meter	Impor- tance	Restriction	Default Value
Name	Required	The maximum character length is 127.	N/A
Туре	Required	<ul> <li>Permitted value:</li> <li>inbound: Block the number(s) from calling into the PBX.</li> <li>outbound: Block the PBX extensions from calling the number(s).</li> <li>both: Block the number(s) from calling into the PBX and block the PBX extensions from calling the number(s).</li> </ul>	inbound
		Note: Type will be filled with default value in- bound if you leave this field empty.	
Number	Required	Numbers, letters, and characters [] * # () + ! are allowed. For multiple numbers or number pat- terns, use & as a separator, eg. num- ber1&number2.	N/A